





No. Trent **DEFOE 27.38**

Treadwell · Elizabeth · Phillips · Kirstein ·



THE  
WILLIAM P. TRENT COLLECTION  
WORKS RELATING TO  
DANIEL DEFOE  
AND HIS TIME



THE PUBLIC LIBRARY  
OF THE CITY OF  
BOSTON

*Purchased from the Income of*  
SUNDRY TRUST FUNDS

Clement · Charlotte Harris · Whitney ·

Hude · Bigelow · Skinner · Center · Knapp · Billings · Sewall ·

Wales · Bradlee · Stewart · Cutter · Kimball · Ford · Reed ·













To Face & Title.

J. Clark sc.

A NEW  
VOYAGE  
ROUND THE  
WORLD,

BY A

COURSE never failed before.

BEING

A VOYAGE undertaken by  
some MERCHANTS, who afterwards  
proposed the Setting up an *East-India*  
Company in FLANDERS.

---

Illustrated with COPPER PLATES.

---

L O N D O N:

Printed for A. BETTESWORTH, at the  
*Red-Lyon*, in *Pater - Noster - Row*; and  
W. MEARS, at the *Lamb*, without *Tem-  
ple-Bar*. M.DCC.XXV.

WORLD

MORNING

Published every day except on Sundays and public holidays.

Printed and Published by the Proprietor, at the Press of the Proprietor, No. 1, Cross Street, Singapore.

Subscription price, 10/- per annum in advance.

Single copies, 1/6 each.

Advertisements, 1/6 per line per week.

138



A NEW  
VOYAGE  
ROUND THE  
WORLD.



It has for some Ages been thought so wonderful a thing to sail the Tour or Circle of the Globe, that when a Man has done this mighty Feat, he presently thinks it deserves to be recorded like Sir *Francis Drake's*. So as soon as Men have acted the Sailor, they come a-shore and write Books of their Voyage, not only to make a great Noise of what they have done themselves, but pretending to show the way to others to come after them, they set up for Teachers and Chart Makers to Posterity. Tho' most of them have had this Misfortune, that whatever Success they have had in the Voyage, they have had very little in the Relation; except it be to tell us, that a Seaman when he comes to the Press, is pretty much out of his Element, and a very good Sailor may make but a very indifferent Author:



I do not in this, lessen the Merit of those Gentlemen who have made such a long Voyage, as that round the Globe ; but I must be allow'd to say, as the way is now a common Road, the Reason of it thoroughly known, and the Occasion of it more frequent than in former Times ; so the World has done wondering at it ; we no more look upon it as a mighty thing, a strange and never heard of Undertaking ; this cannot be now expected of us, the thing is made familiar, every ordinary Sailor is able to do it, if his Merchants are but qualified to furnish him for so long a Voyage ; and he that can carry a Ship to *Lisbon*, may with the same Ease carry it round the World.

Some tell us, it is enough to wonder at a thing nine Days, one would reasonably then conclude, that it is enough that sailing round the World has been wondered at above a Hundred Years : I shall therefore let the Reader know, that it is not the Rarity of going round the World that has occasion'd this Publication, but if some Incidents have happened in such a Voyage, as either have not happened to others, or as no other People, tho' performing the same Voyage, have taken notice of, then this Account may be worth publishing, tho' the thing, *viz.* The Voyage round the World, be in it self of no Value.

It is to be observ'd, of the several Navigators whose Voyages round the World have been publish'd, that few, if any of them, have diverted us with that Variety which a Circle of that Length must needs offer. We have very little account of their Landings, their Diversions, the Accidents which happen'd to them, or to others by their Means ; the Stories of their Engagements, when they have had any Scuffle either with Natives, or *European* Enemies, are told superficially and by  
Halves ;



Halves ; the Storms and Difficulties at Sea or on Shore, have no where a full Relation ; and all the rest of their Accounts are generally fill'd up with Directions for Sailors coming that way, the Bearings of the Land, the Depth of the Channels, Entrances, and Barrs, at the several Ports, Anchorage in the Bays, and Creeks, and the like Things, useful indeed for Seamen going thither again, *and how few are they ?* but not at all to the Purpose when we come expecting to find the History of the Voyage.

Another sort of these Writers have just given us their long Journals, tedious Accounts of their Log-work, how many Leagues they sail'd every Day ; where they had the Winds, when it blew hard, and when softly ; what Latitude in every Observation, what Meridian Distance, and what Variation of the Compass. Such is the Account of Sir *John Narbrough's* Voyage to the *South Seas*, adorn'd with I know not how many Charts of the famous Streight of *Magellan*, a place only now famous for showing the Ignorance of Sir *John Narbrough*, and a great many wise Gentlemen before him, and for being a Passage they had no need to have troubled themselves with, and which no Body will ever go through any more.

Such also are the Voyages of Captain *John Wood*, to *Nova Zemla*, at the Charge of the Publick, in King *Charles* the 11<sup>d</sup>'s time, and *Martin Forbisher* to the North West Passages, in Queen *Elizabeth's* time ; all which, are indeed full of their own Journals, and the Incidents of sailing, but have little or nothing of Story in them, for the use of such Readers who never intend to go to Sea, and yet such Readers may desire to hear how it has far'd with those that have, and how Affairs stand in those remote Parts of the World.

For these Reasons, when first I set out upon a cruising and trading Voyage to the *East*, and resolv'd to go any where, and every where that the Advantage of Trade or the Hopes of Purchase should guide us, I also resolv'd to take such exact notice of every thing that pass'd within my Reach, that I would be able, if I liv'd to come home, to give an Account of my Voyage, differing from all that I had ever seen before, in the nature of the Observations, as well as the manner of relating them: And as this is perfectly new in its Form, so I cannot doubt but it will be agreeable in the Particulars, seeing either no Voyage ever made before, had such Variety of Incidents happening in it, so useful and so diverting, or no Person that sail'd on those Voyages, has thought fit to publish them after this manner.

Having been fitted out in the River of *Thames* so lately as the Year 1713. and on a Design perhaps not very consistent with the Measures taking at that time for the putting an End to the War, I must be allowed to own I was at first oblig'd to act not in my own Name, but to put in a *French* Commander into the Ship, for the Reasons which follow, and which those who understand the manner of Trade upon closing the late War, I mean the Trade with *Spain*, will easily allow to be just and well grounded.

During the late War between *Great Britain* and her Confederates on one side, and the united Crowns of *France* and *Spain* on the other side, we all know the *French* had a free Trade into the *South Seas*; a Trade carried on with the greatest Advantage, and to the greatest Degree, that any particular Commerce has been carried on in the  
World

World for many Ages past; infomuch that we found the Return of Silver that came back to *France* by those Ships, was not only the enriching of the Merchants of *St. Malo*, *Rochell*, and other Ports in *France*, some of whom we saw get immense Estates in a few Years, even to a Million *Sterling* a Man. But it was evident, the King of *France* himself was enabled by the Circulation of so much Bullion thro' his Mints, to carry on that War with very great Advantage.

It was just at the Close of this War, when some Merchants of *London* looking with Envy on the Success of that Trade, and how the *French*, notwithstanding the Peace, would apparently carry it on, for some Years at least, to infinite Advantage, began to consider whether it might not be possible to come in for a Snack with *France*, as they were ally'd to *Spain*, and yet go abroad in the Nature of a private Cruiser.

To bring this to pass, it was thought proper in the first place, to get a Share, if possible, in a new Design of an *East India* Trade in *Flanders*, just then intended to be set up by some *British* Merchants, by the Assistance of an Imperial Charter, or at least under Colour of it; and so we might go to Sea in a threefold Capacity, to be made use of as Occasion might present; viz. when on the Coast of *New Spain* we sought to trade, we were *French* Men, had a *French* Captain, and a sufficient Number of *French* Seamen, and *Flemish* or *Walloon* Seamen, who spoke *French*, so to appear on all proper Occasions. When at Sea we met with any *Spanish* Ship worth our while, we were *English* Cruisers, had Letters of Mart from *England*, had no Account of the Peace, and were fitted for the Attack. And when in the *East Indies* we had occasion to trade, either at the

*English* or *Dutch* Settlements, we should have Imperial Colours, and two *Flemish* Merchants at least in Appearance, to transact every thing as we found Occasion. However, this last part of our Project fail'd us, that Affair not being fully ripe.

As this mysterious Equipment may be liable to some Exceptions, and perhaps to some Enquiries, I shall for the present conceal my Name, and that of the Ship also: By Enquiries, I mean Enquiries of private Persons concern'd; for as to publick Enquiries, we have no Uneasiness, having acted nothing in Contradiction to the Rules and Laws of our Country; but I say, as to private Persons, it is thought fit to prevent their Enquiries, to which end, the Captain in whose Name I write this, gives me leave to make use of his Name, and conceal my own.

The Ship sail'd from the River the 20th of *December* 1713. and went directly over to the Coast of *Flanders*, lying at an Anchor in *Newport Pitts*, as they are call'd, where we took in our *French* Captain *Jean Michael Mirlotte*, who with 32 *French* Seamen, came on board us in a large Snow from *Dunkirk*, bringing with them 122 small Anchors or Rundlets of Brandy, and some Hampers and Casks of *French* Wine in Wicker'd Bottles: While we were here, we lay under *English* Colours, with Pendants flying, our Ship being upwards of 500 Tun, and had 46 Guns mounted, mann'd with 356 Men: We took the more Men on board because we resolv'd as Occasion should present, to fit our selves with another Ship, which we did not question we should meet with in the *South Seas*.

We had also a third Design in our Voyage, tho' it may be esteem'd an Accident to the rest, *viz.* We were resolv'd to make some Attempts



tempts for new Discoveries, as Opportunity offered; and we had two Persons on board who were exceedingly well qualified for our Direction in this part, all which was deriv'd from the following Occasion;

The Person who was principally concern'd in the Adventure, was a Man not only of great Wealth, but of great Worth; he was particularly addicted to what we call New Discoveries, and it was indeed upon his Genius to such Things, that the first Thought of the Voyage was founded: This Gentleman told us, that he had already sent one Ship fully equipt and furnish'd for a new Attempt, upon the *North West* or *North East* Passages, which had been so often in vain tried by former Navigators; and that he did not question the Success, because he had directed them by new Measures, and to steer a Course that was never attempted yet; and his Design in our Voyage was to make like Discoveries towards the *South Pole*; where, as he said, and gave us very good Reasons for it, he did not doubt but we might discover even to the Pole itself, and find out New Worlds and new Seas, which had never been heard of before.

With these Designs, this Gentleman came into the other part of our Project, and contributed the more largely, and with the more Freedom, to the whole, upon that Account; in particular, all the needful Preparations for such Discoveries, were made wholly at his Expence, which I take Notice of here, as being most proper in the Beginning of our Story, and that the Reader may the less wonder at the odd way we took to perform a Voyage which might with much more Ease have been done by the usual and ordinary way.

We sail'd from the Coast of *Flanders* the second of *January*, and without any extraordinary Incident made the Coast of *Galloway* in *Ireland* the tenth, where we stay'd and took in a very extraordinary Store of Provisions, three times as much as usual; the Beef being also well pickled or double pack'd, that we might have a sufficient Reserve for the Length of our Voyage, resolving also to spare it as much as possible.

We had a very rich Cargo on board, consisting of all sorts of *British* Manufactures suitable for the *Spanish* Trade in their *West Indies*; and as we aim'd at nothing of Trade till we came to the *Spanish* Coast, we sail'd directly for the *Canary* Islands; having not fully resolv'd whether we would make our Voyage to the *South Seas* first, and so round the Globe by the *East Indies*, as has been the ordinary way, or whether we would go first by the *East Indies*, and upon the Discoveries we were directed to, and then cross the great *Pacifick* Ocean to the *West* Coast of *America*, as was at last resolv'd.

We made the *Canaries* the eleventh of *February*, and coming to an Anchor there to take in some fresh Water, we put out *French* Colours, and sent our Boat on Shore, with a *French* Boatswain and all *French* Seamen, to buy what we wanted: They brought us on board five Butts or Pipes of Wine, and some Provisions, and having fill'd our Water, we set Sail again the thirteenth: In this time we call'd a Council among our selves, by which way we should go as above.

I confess, I was for going by the Cape of *Good Hope* first, and so to the *East Indies*, then keeping to the *South* of *Java*, go away to the *Moluccoes*, where I made no doubt to make some Purchase among the *Dutch* Spice Islands, and so go away

to the *Philippines*; but the whole Ships Company, I mean of Officers, were against me in this Scheme, altho' I told them plainly that the Discoveries which would be made in such a Voyage as that, were the principal Reasons why our chief Owner embark'd in the Adventure, and that we ought to regard the End and Design of our Voyage; that it would certainly in the Close of things amount to the same, as to Trade, as if we went the usual way, seeing the Places we were to go to, were the same one way as the other, and it was only putting the Question which we should go to first; that all the Navigators on such Voyages as these, went by the *South Seas* first, which would be no Honour to us at all; but if we went by the *East Indies* first, we should be the first that ever went such a Voyage, and that we might make many useful Discoveries and Experiments in trying that Course; that it would be worth our while, not only to go that way, but to have all the World take notice of it, and of us for it.

I used a great many Arguments of the like Nature, but they answer'd me most effectually, with laying before me the Difficulties of the Voyage, and the contrary Methods of Trade, which, in a Word, made the going that way impracticable: First, the Difficulty of the Voyage, over the vast Ocean call'd the *Pacifick Sea*, or *South Sea*, which, if we kept a *Southern* Latitude, and took the variable Winds as we should find them, as I propos'd to do, might very well be a Voyage of six or eight Months, without any sight of Land, or supply of Provisions or Water, which was intolerable; that as to Trade, it was preposterous, and just setting the Voyage with the Bottom upward; for as we were loaden with Goods, and had no Money, our first Business was to go to the

*South*

*South Seas*, where our Goods were wanted, and would sell for Money, and then to the *East Indies*, where our Money would be wanting, to buy other Goods to carry home, and not to go to the *East Indies* first, where our Goods would not sell, and where we could buy no other for want of Money.

This was so strong a way of reasoning, that they were all against me, as well *French* as *English*, and even the two Agents for Discoveries, submitted to it; and so we resolv'd to stand away from the *Canaries*, to the Coast of *Brasil*, thence upon the *Eastern* Coast of *South America* to Cape *Horn*, and then into the *South Seas*; and if we met with any thing that was *Spanish* by the way, we resolv'd to make Prize of it, as in a time of War.

Accordingly we made the Coast of *Brasil* in about twenty six Days, from the *Canary* Islands, and went on Shore at Cape St. *Augustine*, for fresh Water, afterwards we put into the Bay of *All Saints*, got some fresh Provisions there, and about an Hundred very good Hogs, some of which we kill'd and pickled up their Flesh, and carried the rest on board alive, having taken on board a great Quantity of Roots, and *Maiz*, or *Indian* Corn, for their Food, which they thriv'd on very well.

It was the last of *March* when we came to the Bay, and having stay'd there fourteen Days, to furnish our selves with all Things we wanted, we got Intelligence there, that there were three Ships at the *Buenos Ayres*, in the *Rio de la Plata*, which were preparing to go for *Europe*, and that they expected two *Spanish* Men of War to be their Convoy, because of the *Portuguese* Men of War which were in *Brasil*, to Convoy the *Brasil* Fleet.

Their



Their having two *Spanish* Men of War with them for their Convoy, took away a great deal from the Joy we had entertain'd at the News of their being there, and we began to think we should make little or nothing of it: However, we resolv'd to see the utmost of it, and particularly if our double Appearance would not now stand us in some stead.

Accordingly we went away for the River of *Plate*, and as usual, spreading *French* Colours, we went boldly up to *Buenos Ayres*, and sent in our Boat, mann'd with *French* Men, pretending to be homeward bound from the *South Seas* and in want of Provisions. The *Spaniards* receiv'd us with Civility enough, and granted us such Provisions as we wanted; and here we found, to our great Satisfaction, that there was no such thing as any *Spanish* Man of War there; but they said they expected one, and the Governor there for the King of *Spain* asked our *French* Officer if we would take one of their Ships under our Convoy; Monsieur *Mirlotte* answer'd him warily, that his Ship was deep laden, and foul, and he could not undertake any thing, but if they would keep him Company, he would do them what Service he could; but that also, as they were a rich Ship, they did not design to go directly to *France*, but to *Martinico*, where they expected to meet with some *French* Men of War to Convoy them home. This Answer was so well manag'd, tho' there was not one Word of Truth in it, that one of the three Ships, for the other two were not ready, resolv'd to come away with us, and, in an evil Hour for them, they did so.

To be short, we took the innocent *Spaniard* into our Convoy, and sail'd away to the *Northward* with them, but were not far at Sea, before we  
let

let them know what Circumstances they were in, by the following Method : We were about half a League a Head of them, when our Captain bringing too, and haling up our Courses, made a Signal to the *Spaniards* for the Captain to come on board, which he very readily did ; as soon as he was on board, our Captain let him know that he was our Prisoner, and all his Men, and immediately manning their Boat with thirty of our own Men, we sent them on board their Ship, to take Possession of her, but order'd them that they should behave civilly to the Men on board, and plunder nothing : For we made a Promise to the *Spanish* Captain, that his Ship should not be plunder'd, upon Condition he would give us a just Account of his loading, and deliver peaceably to us what Riches he had on board ; then we also agreed, that we would restore him his Ship, which by the way we found was chiefly loaden with Hides, Things of no Value to us, and that the Ship also, was an old Vessel, strong, but often doubled, and therefore a very heavy sailer, and consequently not at all fit for our purpose, tho' we greatly wanted a Ship to take along with us, we having both too many Men, and being too full of Goods, as I have said above.

The *Spanish* Captain, tho' surpriz'd with the Stratagem that had brought him thus into the Hands of his Enemies, and greatly enrag'd in his Mind at being circumvented, and trapann'd out of his Ship, yet shew'd a great Presence of Mind under his Misfortune ; and, as I verily believe, he would have fought us very bravely, if we had let him know fairly what we were, so he did not at all appear dejected at his Disaster, but capitulated with us as if he had been talking Sword in Hand. And one time when

when our Captain and he could not agree, and the *Spanish* Captain was a little threatned, he grew warm; told the Captain that he might be ill us'd, being in his Hands, but that he was not afraid to suffer whatever his ill Fortune had prepar'd for him, and he would not, for fear of ill Usage, yield to base Conditions; that he was a Man of Honour, and if he (our Captain) was so too, he demanded to be put on board his own Ship again, and he should see he knew how to behave himself. Our Captain smil'd at that, and told him, he was not afraid to put him on board his own Ship and fight for her again, and that if he did so, he was sure he could not escape him; the *Spanish* Captain smil'd too, and told him he should see (if he did) that he knew the way to Heaven from the Bottom of the Sea, as well as any other Road, and that Men of Courage were never at a loss to conquer their Enemy one way or other; intimating, that he would sink by his Side rather than be taken, and that he would take care to be but a very indifferent Prize to him, if he was conquered.

However, we came to better Terms with him afterward; and in short, having taken on board all the Silver, which was about 200000 Pieces of Eight, and whatever else we met with that was valuable, among the rest, his Ammunition, and six Brass Guns. We perform'd Conditions, and sent him into the *Rio de la Plata* again with his Ship, to let the other *Spanish* Captains know what scouring they had escaped.

We got a good Booty here indeed, but were disappointed of a Ship; however, we were not so sensible of that Disappointment now, as we were afterwards: For as we depended upon going to the *South Seas*, we made no doubt of meet-  
ing

ing with Vessels enough for our purpose; what followed, we shall soon see.

We had done our Work here, and had neither any Occasion or any Desire to lie any longer on this Coast, where the Climate was bad, and the Weather exceeding hot, and where our Men began to be very uneasy, being crowded together so close all in one Ship; so we made the best of our way *South*.

We met with some stormy Weather in these Seas, and particularly a *North West* Blast, which carried us for eleven Days, or thereabouts, a great way off to Sea: But as we had Sea Room enough, and a stout strong built Ship under us, perfectly well prepar'd, tite and firm, we made light of the Storms we met with, and soon came into our Voyages way again; so that about the fourth of *May* we made Land in the Latitude of 45 Degrees 12 Minutes *South*.

We put in here for fresh Water, and finding nothing of the Land mark'd in our Charts, we had no knowledge of the place, but coming to an Anchor at about a League from the Shore, our Boat went in quest of a good watering place; in pursuit of this, they went up a Creek about two Leagues more, where they found good Water, and fill'd some Casks, and so came on Board to make their Report.

The next Day we came into the Creeks Mouth where we found six to eight Fathom Water within Cables Length of the Shore, and found fresh Water enough, but no People or Cattle, tho' an excellent Country for both.

Of this Country, I made many Observations, suitable to the Design and Desire of our ingenious Imployer and Owner, and which are one end of publishing this Voyage: I shall mention  
only



only one here, because I shall come to speak it again on another Occasion more largely. My Observation here, is as follows :

*An Observation concerning the Soil and Climate of the Continent of America, South of the River De la Plata; and how suitable to the Genius, the Constitution, and the Manner of living of Englishmen, and consequently for an English Colony.*

THE particular Spot which I observe upon, is that part of the Continent of *America* which lies on the Shore of the *North Seas*, as they are call'd, tho' falsly; for they are more properly the *East Seas*, being extended along the *East Shores* of *South America*. The Land lies on the same *East side* of *America*, extended *North and South* from *Coasta Deserta*, in 42 Degrees, to *Port St. Julian*, in 49 Degrees and a half, being almost 500 Miles in Length, full of very good Harbours, and some navigable Rivers; the Land is a Plain for several Scores of Miles within the Shore; with several little rising Hills, but no where mountainous or stony; well adapted for enclosing, feeding, and grazing of Cattle; also for Corn, all sorts of which would certainly not only grow, but thrive very well here; especially Wheat, Rye, Pease, and Barley, Things which would soon be improv'd by *Englishmen*, to the making the Country rich and populous, the raising great Quantities of Grain of all Sorts, and Cattle in Proportion. The Trade which I propose for the Consumption of all the Produce, and  
the

the place whither to be carried, I refer to speak of by it self, in the further Pursuit of this Work.

I return now to the Pursuit of our Voyage. We put to Sea again the tenth of *May*, with fair Weather and a fair Wind ; tho' a Season of the Year, 'tis true, when we might have Reason to expect some Storms, being what we might call the Depth of their Winter. However, the Winds held *Northerly*, which there are to be esteem'd the warm Winds, and bringing mild Weather ; and so they did till we came into the Latitude of 50 Degrees, when we had strong Winds and squally Weather, with much Snow and Cold, from the *S. W.* and *S. W. by W.* which blowing very hard, we put back to *Port St. Julian*, where we were not able to stir for some time.

We weigh'd again the 29th and stood *South* again past the Mouth of the Streights of *Magellan*, a Streight famous for many Years, for being thought to be the only Passage out of the *North Seas* into the *South Seas*, and therefore I say famous some Ages ; not only in the Discovery of it by *Magellan*, a *Spanish* Captain, but of such Significance, that for many Years it was counted a great Exploit to pass this Streight, and few have ever done it of our Nation but that they have thought fit to tell the World of it, as an extraordinary Business, fit to be made publick as an Honour to their Names. Nay King *Charles* the 1<sup>st</sup> thought it worth while to send Sir *John Narbrough* on purpose to pass and take an exact Survey of this Streight, and the Map or Plan of it has been publish'd by Sir *John* himself, at the publick Expence, as a useful thing.

Such a mighty and valuable thing also was the passing this Straight, that Sir *Francis Drake's* going thro' it, gave birth to that famous old

Wives

Wives Saying, viz. That Sir Francis Drake shot the Gulph; a Saying that was current in England for many Years, I believe near a Hundred after Sir Francis Drake was gone his long Journey of all; as if there had been but one Gulph in the World, and that passing it had been a Wonder next to that of Hercules cleansing the Egean Stable.

Of this famous place I could not but observe on this Occasion, that as Ignorance gave it its first Fame, and made it for so many Ages the most eminent part of the Globe, as it was the only Passage by which the whole World could be surrounded, and that it was every Man's Honour that had pass'd it, as above; so now it is come to the full End or Period of its Fame, and will in all Probability never have the Honour to have any Ship, Vessel, or Boat, go through it more, while the World remains, unless (which is very improbable) that part of the World should come to be fully inhabited. I know some are of Opinion, that before the full Period of the Earth's Existence, all the remotest and most barren Parts of it shall be peopled; but I see no Ground for such a Notion, but many Reasons which would make it appear to be impracticable, and indeed impossible; unless it should please God to alter the Situation of the Globe as it respects the Sun, and place it in a direct, as it now moves in an oblique Position; or that a new Species of Mankind should be produced, who might be as well qualified to live in the Frozen Zone, as we are in the Temperate, and upon whom the Extremity of Cold could have no Power. I say, as there are several Parts of the Globe where this would be impracticable, I shall say no more than this, that I think 'tis a groundless Suggestion.

But to return to our Voyage; we pass'd by the Mouth of this famous Streight *De Magellan*, and those others which were pass'd thro' by *Le Maire* the *Dutch* Man afterwards; and keeping an offing of six or seven Leagues, went away *South*, till we came into the Latitude of 58. when we would, as we had tried three Days before, have stretched away *South West*, to have got into the *South Seas*, but a strong Gale of Wind took us at *W. N. W.* and tho' we could (lying near to it) stretch away to the *Southward*, yet as it overblow'd, we could make no *Westward* way; and tho' we had under us an excellent strong built Vessel, that valued not the Waves, and made very good work of it, yet we went away to Leeward in spite of all we could do, and lost Ground amain. We held it out however, the Weather being clear, but excessive cold, till we found our selves in the Latitude of 64.

We call'd our Council several times, to consider what we should do, for we did but drive to Leeward; the longer we strove with it, the Gale held still, and to our Apprehensions it was set in; blowing like a kind of *Monson*, or *Trade Wind*, tho' in those Latitudes I know there is no such thing properly call'd, as a *Trade Wind*.

We tried (the Wind abating) to beat up again to the *North*, and we did so; but it was by running a great way to the *East*; and once I believe we were in the Longitude of *St. Helena*, tho' so far *South*, but it cost us infinite Labour, and near six Weeks time, at length we made the Coast, and arrived again at the Port of *St. Julian* the 20th of *June*, which, by the way, is the Depth of their Winter.

Here we resolv'd to lay up for the Winter, and not attempt to go so far *South* again at that  
time



time of Year, but our eager Desire of pursuing our Voyage prevail'd, and we put out to Sea again, having taken in fresh Provisions, such as are to be had there; that is to say, Seals, Penguins, and such like Trade, and with this Recruit we put to Sea, I say, a second time.

We had this time worse Luck than we had before, for the Wind setting in at *South West*, blew a Storm, and drove us with such Force away to Sea *Eastward*, that we were never able to make any way to the *Southward* at all, but were carried away with a continued Storm of Wind, from the same Corner, or near it, our Pilot, or Master, as we call'd him, finding himself often obliged to go away before it, and it kept us out so long at Sea, and we were gone so far to the *North East, Eastward*, that he advised us to stand away for the Cape of *Good Hope*; and accordingly we did so, and arriv'd at the Cape the last Day of *July*. We were now dead hearted indeed, and I began to revive my Proposal of going to the *East Indies*, as I had at first intended; and to answer the Objection which they made against it, as being against the Nature of Trade, and that we had nothing on board but *European* Goods, which were not fitted for the *East Indies*, where Money only was suitable to the Market we were to make. I say to answer this Objection, I told them I would engage that I would sell our whole Cargo at the *Phillipine* Islands, as well as on the Coast of *America*; for that those Islands being *Spanish*, our Disguise of being *French* would serve us as well at the *Phillippines*, as it would in *New Spain*; and with this particular Advantage, that we should sell here for four times the Value as we should on the Coast of *Chili*; or *Péru*; and that when we had done; we

could load our Ship again there, or in other Places in the *Indies*, with such Goods as would come to a good Market again in *New Spain*.

This I told them was indeed what had not been practis'd, nor at any other time would it be practicable: For as it was not usual for any Ships to go from the *East Indies* to the *Phillippines*, so neither was it usual for any *European* Ships to trade with Freedom to the *South Seas*, till since the late War, when the *French* had the Priviledge: and I could not but be amaz'd that the *French* had never gone this way, where they might have made three or four Voyages in one, and with much less Hazard of meeting with the *English* or *Dutch* Cruisers; and have made twice the Profits which they made the other way, where they were frequently out three or four Years upon one Return; whereas here they might make no less than three Returns, or perhaps four, in the same Voyage, and in much less time.

They were now a little surprized, for in all our first Debates we had nothing of this Matter brought in Question; only they entertain'd a Notion that I was going upon strange Projects, to make Discoveries, search for the *South Pole*, plant new Colonies, and I know not how many Whims of their own, which were neither in my Design, or in my Instructions. The Person therefore who was our *Supra Cargo*, and the other Captain whose Name I have not mentioned, together with the *French* Captain *Mirlotte*, and the rest who had all oppos'd me before, came chearfully into my Proposal, only the *Supra Cargo* told me in the Name of the rest, that he began to be more sensible of the Advantages of the Voyage I had propos'd, than he was before; but that as he was entrusted, together with me, in the Govern-  
ment

ment of the trading part, for I was empower'd equally with him too, he begg'd I would not take it ill, that he desir'd I would let him farther into that Particular, and explain my self at least as far as I thought fit.

This was so just a Request, and so easy for me to do, and above all, was made with so much good Manners and Courtesy, that I told him, if I had been otherwise determin'd, the courteous and good humour'd way, with which he requir'd it, would constrain me to it; but that however I was very ready to do it, as he was entrusted with the Cargo equally with me, and that it was a piece of Justice to the Owners, that who they thought fit to trust, I should trust also; upon this I told him. My Scheme was as follows:

First, I told him, that as the *Phillipine* Islands receiv'd all their *European* Goods from *Acapulco* in *America* by the King of *Spain's* Ships, they were oblig'd to give what Price was impos'd upon them by the Merchants, who brought those Goods by so many Stages to *Acapulco*. For Example; the *European* Goods, or suppose *English* Goods in particular, with which they were loaden, went first from *England* to *Cadiz*, from *Cadiz* by the Galloons to *Porto Belo*, from *Porto Belo* to *Panama*, from *Panama* to *Acapulco*; in all which Places, the Merchants had their several Commissions and other Profits upon the Sale; besides the extravagant Charges of so many several ways of Carriage, some by Water, some by Land, and besides the King's Customs in all those Places; and that after all this, they were brought by Sea from *Acapulco* to the *Phillipine* Islands, which was a prodigious Voyage, and were then generally sold in the *Phillipine* Islands at three Hundred *per Cent.* advance.

That in the Room of all this, our Cargo being well bought and well sorted, would come to the *Phillippine* Islands at once, without any landing or relanding, and without any of all the Additions of Charge to the first Cost, as those by the way of *New Spain* had upon them; so that if we were to sell them at the *Phillippine* Islands a Hundred *per Cent.* cheaper than the *Spaniards* usually sold, yet we should get abundantly more than we could on the Coast of *Peru*, tho' we had been allow'd a free Trade there.

That there was but two Objections to this Advantage, and these were, our Liberty of trading, and whether the place would consume the Quantity of Goods we had: And to this I had much to answer; First, That it was well known at the *Phillippine* Isles, that the Kings of *France* and *Spain* were united firmly together; that the King of *Spain* had allowed the King of *France's* Subjects a free Trade in his *American* Dominions, and consequently that it would not be denied there; but on the other hand, that if it was deny'd by the Governor, yet there would be room to find out a Trade with the Inhabitants, and especially with the *Chinese* and *Japan* Merchants, who were always there, which Trade, the Governor could not prevent; and thus we could not fear a Market for all our Cargo, if it was much greater than it was.

That as to the Returns, we had the Advantage either way: For First, We should be sure to receive a great part of the Price of our Goods in *Chinese* or *Japan* Gold and Silver, or in Pieces of Eight; or if we thought fit to trade another way, we might take on board such a Quantity of *China* Damasks, and other wrought Silks, *Mullins*, and *Chints*, *China* Ware, and *Japan* Ware;



Ware; all which, would be immediately sold in *America*; that we should carry a Cargo of these Goods to *New Spain*, infinitely to our Advantage, being the same Cargo which the four great *Acapulco* Ships carry back with them every Year: That when we had gone to the *South Seas* with this Cargo, of which we knew we should make a good Market, we had nothing to do but to come back, if we thought fit, to the *East Indies* again, where we might load for *England* or *Flanders*, such Goods as we thought proper; or if we did not think fit to take so great a Run, we might go away to the *South*, and round by *Cape Horn* into the *Atlantick* Ocean, and perfect those Discoveries, which we made part of, in the beginning of our Voyage.

This was so clear a Scheme of Trade, that he seem'd surpriz'd with it, and fully satisfied in every part of it. But the Captain then objected against the Length of the Voyage to the *South Seas* from the *Phillipines*, and rais'd several Scruples about the Latitude which we should keep in such a Voyage; that we should not be able to carry any Provisions which we could take on board in those hot Countries, that would keep for so long a Run, and several other Difficulties; to all which, I made answer, that when we had sold our Cargo at the *Phillipines*, and found our Advantages there to answer our Desires, I would not oppose our returning from thence directly to *England*, if they found it needful; or if they thought a farther Adventure would not answer the Risques we were to expect in it; and that we would never have any Dispute about that.

This satisfied them fully, and they went immediately with the News to the Men, as what they thought would please them wonderfully,

seeing they were mighty uneasy but two or three Days before, about their being to go back again to the *South of America*, and the Latitude of 64, where we had not only been twice driven back, as if Heaven had forbidden us to pass that way, but had been driven so far to the *South*, that we had met with a most severe Cold, and which pinched our Men exceedingly, who being come, as we might say, a hot Weather Voyage, were but ill furnish'd for the Weather usual in the Latitudes of 64.

But we had a harder Task to go through than we expected, upon this Occasion; and it may stand here upon Record, as a Buoy or Beacon to warn Officers and Commanders of Ships, *Supra Cargoes*, and such as are trusted in the Conduct of the Voyage, never to have any Disputes among themselves (I say not among themselves) about the Course they shall take, or whither they shall go; for it never fails to come among the Men after them, and if once the Debate is but named on the out-side of the Great Cabin Door, it becomes immediately a Dispute among the Officers upon the Quarter Deck, the Lieutenants, Mates, Purser, &c. from thence it gets afore the Mast, and into the Cook Room, and the whole Ship is immediately divided into Factions and Parties; every Foremast Man is a Captain, or a Director to the Captain; every Boatswain, Gunner, Carpenter, Cockswain, nay, and even the Cook, sets up for a Leader of the Men; and if two of them join Parties, 'tis ten to one but it comes to a Mutiny, and perhaps to one of the two last Extremes of all Mutinies, *viz.* running away from the Ship, or running away with the Ship.

Our Case was exactly thus, and had issued accordingly for ought I know, if we had not been  
in

in a Port, where we got immediate Assistance; and that by a more than ordinary Vigor in the Management too.

I have mentioned the first time when we call'd a Council about our Voyage at the *Canaries*, and how it was carried against my Opinion not to go to the *East Indies*, but to go to the *South Seas*, about by Cape *Horn*: As the Debate of this was not at all conceal'd, the Officers of the Ship, *viz.* the two Lieutenants and two Mates, the Purser, and others, came in, and went out, and not only heard all we said, but talk'd of it at Liberty on the Quarter Deck, and where they pleas'd, till it went among the whole Ship's Crew. It is true, there came nothing of all this at that time, because almost all the Votes being against my Opinion, as I have said already, the Ship's Company seem'd to join in naturally with it, and the Men were so talk'd into the great Prospects of Gain to themselves, by a Voyage to the *South Seas*, that they look'd upon me, who at the Bottom had the chief Direction of Things, to be no body, and to have only made a ridiculous Proposal, which was against all their Interest; and I perceiv'd clearly after this, that they look'd upon me with an evil Eye, as one that was against their Interest; Nay and treated me with a sort of Contempt too, as one that had no Power to hurt them, but as one, that if Things were left to me, would carry them on a Wild Goose Chase they knew not whither.

I took no Notice of this at first, knowing that in the Process of Things I should have Opportunity enough to let them know I had Power to oblige them many ways; as also, that I had Authority sufficient to command the whole Ship, and that the Direction of the Voyage was principally

cipally in me, tho' I being willing to do every thing friendly, had too easily, and I may say, too foolishly, put that to the Vote, which I had a right to have commanded their Compliance with. The ill Consequences of which, appear'd not, for some time, but broke out upon the Occasion of our new Measures, as you shall hear.

As soon as we had determin'd, *as you have heard*, our Voyage among our selves, in the great Cabbin, the *Supra Cargo* and Captain *Mirlotte*, as above, went out upon the Quarter Deck, and began to talk of it among the Officers, Midshipmen, &c. and to give them their Due, they talk'd of it very honestly, not with any Complaint of being over-rul'd; or over-perswaded, or the like, but as a thing that was fully agreed to among us in the great Cabbin.

The Boatswain, a blunt, surly, bold Fellow, as soon as he heard of it, *very well, says he*, so we are all come back into Captain-----'s blind Proposal; why this is the same that every body rejected at the *Canaries*; and now because we are driven hither by contrary Winds, those Winds must be a Reason why we must undertake a preposterous, ridiculous Voyage, that never any Sailor would have propos'd, and that Man never went before. What does Captain ----- think that we can't find our way to the Coast of *America* again? and because we have met with cross Winds, we must never meet with fair ones? I warrant him, let us but go up the Height of *St. Helena*, we will soon reach the *Rio de la Plata* and Port *St. Julian* again, and get into the *South Seas* too, as others have done before us.

The Gunner took it from the Boatswain, and he talks with one of the Midship Men in the same Dialect. For my part, says he, I shipt my self  
for



for the *South Seas* when I first came aboard the Ship, and in hopes of good Booty, and if we go thither, I know nothing can hinder us, Wind and Weather permitting : But this is such a Voyage, as no Man ever attempted before ; and whatever he proposes can have nothing in it for the Men, but horrid Fateague, violent Heats, Sickness, and starving.

One of the Mates takes it from him, and he says as openly, I wonder what a *Plague* the rest of the Gentlemen mean, they were all against Captain ----- when he started this whimsical Voyage before, and now they come ail into it of a sudden, without any Consideration ; and so the Project of one Man must ruin the most promising Voyage in the World, and be the Death of above two Hundred as stout Fellows as ever were together in one Ship in this part of the World.

One of the Midshipmen follow'd the Mate, and said we were all promis'd that another Ship should be gotten, either purchas'd or taken, and that the first Ship we took, should be mann'd and victualled out of this Ship, where we were double mann'd and crowded together enough to bring an Infection among us, in such hot Climates as we are going into ; and if we were in the *South Seas*, we should easily buy a Ship, or take a Ship for our Purpose, almost where we would ; but in all this part of the World there is no such thing as a Ship fit for an *English* Man to set his Foot in. We were promis'd too, that when we got into such a Ship, we that enter'd as Midshipmen should be preferr'd to Offices as we were qualified, and as our Merit should recommend us. What they are going to do with us now, I can't imagine, unless it be to turn us a-fore the Mast  
when

when half the Foremast Men are dead, and thrown over Board.

The Master, or Pilot of the Ship, heard all these Things, and sent us word into the great Cabbin, of all that pass'd, and, in short, assured us, that if these Things went a little farther, he was afraid they would come up to a Mutiny; that there was great Danger of it already, and that we ought to apply some immediate Remedy to it, or else he thought it would be too late: He told me the Particulars also, and how the whole Weight of their Resentment seem'd to tend to a quarelling at my Command, as believing that this Project of going to the *East Indies*, was wholly mine; and that the rest of the Officers being a little influenc'd by the Accident of our being driven so far out of our way, were only bias'd in the rest by my Opinion; and as they were all against it before, would have been so still if it had not been for me; and he fear'd, if they went on, they might enter into some fatal Measures about me, and perhaps resolve to set me a shore in some barren, uninhabited Land or other, to give me my Belly full of New Discoveries, as it seems some of them had hinted, and the second Mate in particular.

I was far from being insensible of the Danger I was in, and indeed of the Danger the whole Voyage, Ship and all, was in; for I made no Question, but that if their brutish Rage led them to one villainous Action, they would soon go on to another; and the Devil would take hold of that Handle to represent the Danger of their being punish'd for it when they came home; and so, as has been often the Case, prompt them to Mutiny against all Command, and run away with the Ship.

However,

However, I had presence of Mind enough to enter into proper Measures for our general Safety, and to prevent the worst in case of any Attempt upon me, first I represented the Case to the rest of the Gentlemen, and ask'd if they would stand by me, and by the Resolutions which we had taken for the Voyage; then I call'd in to our Assistance, the chief Mate, who was a Kinsman of one of our Owners, a bold, resolute Gentleman, and the Purser, who we knew was faithful to us; as also, the Surgeon, and the Carpenter: I engag'd them all to give me first their Opinions whether they were convinc'd of the Reasonableness of my Scheme for the Voyage I had propos'd; and that they might judge for themselves, laid it all before them again, arguing every part of it so clearly to them, that they were convinc'd entirely of its being the most rational Prospect of the Voyage for us, of any we could go about.

When I had done this, I recommended it to them to expostulate with the Men, and, if possible, to keep them in Temper, and keep them to their Duty; but at the same time, to stand all ready, and upon a Signal which I gave them, to come all to the Steerage, and defend the great Cabbin Door with all the other Hands, who they could be sure of; and in the mean time, to be very watchful over the Motions of the Men, and see what they drove at.

At the same time, I fortified my self with the *French* Captain, and the *Supra Cargo*, and the other Captain; and by the way, all the *French* Captain's Men were true to him (and he true to us) to a Man. We then brought a sufficient Store of Ammunition and small Arms into the great Cabbin,

bin, and secur'd the Steerage, as also the Round House, so that we could not possibly be surpriz'd.

There was nothing done that Night, but the next Morning I was inform'd, that the Gunner and second Mate were in a close Cabal together, and one or two of the Midshipmen, and that they had sworn to one another, not that they would not go the Voyage as was propos'd, for that might have ended in their running away, which I should not have been sorry for; but in short, their Oath was, that the Ship should not go the Voyage; by which I was presently to understand, that they had some Measures to take to prevent my Design of the Voyage to the *Phillipines*, and that perhaps this was to run away with the Ship to *Madagascar*, which was not far off.

I had however, this apparent Encouragement in this Case, *viz.* that as the Contrivance was yet but two Days old, for it was but two Days since they had any Notice of our Intentions to go, they would be some Days caballing and forming an Interest among the Men, to make up a Party strong enough to make any Attempt; and that as I had a strong Set of Men who would be as diligent the other way, they would be heaving and contriving one way and the other way to get the Men over to their Opinion, so that at least it would be some time before they could make their Party up.

The thing was rightly conjectured, and the three Men above who had made themselves the Head of the Mutineers, went on a pace, and my Men encreas'd too, as much as could be desired for the time; but the *Friday* after, which was about five Days from the first Discovery, one of the Midshipmen came and desir'd to speak with me, and desir'd it might not, if possible, be known that



that he was with me. I ask'd him if he desir'd to be alone, he said no, I might appoint who I thought convenient that I could trust, but that what he had to say, was of the last Importance to all our Lives, and that therefore he hop'd I would be very sure of them who I trusted in such a Case. Upon this I told him, I would name the chief Mate, the *French* Captain, and the *Supra Cargo*, and in the mean time, I bid him not be too much surpriz'd, for that I had already some Warning of the thing which I believ'd he had to tell me of, and that I was preparing all *Things* to disappoint it: That however I should not value his Fidelity the less, and that he might speak freely his Mind before those Men, for they were all in the Secret already, and he might be sure both of Protection and Reward.

Accordingly, I bid him go out upon the Quarter Deck, and walk there, and that when the chief Mate went off into the Round House, he should go down between Decks as if he was going into his Cabbin to sleep, and that when he heard the chief Mate call the Cabbin Boy, a Black of mine, whose Name was *Spartivento*, he should take that for a Signal that the Steerage was clear, and he might come up, and should be let into the great Cabbin; all which, was so manag'd, and in so short a time, that he was with us in the great Cabbin in a Quarter of an Hour after the first Conference, and none of the Men perceiv'd it.

Here he let me into the whole Secret, and a black Project it was; *viz.* That the second Mate, the Gunner, three Midshipmen, the Coxswain, and about six and thirty of the Men, had resolv'd to mutiny and seize upon all us who were in the new Project, as they call'd it; and to confine



us first, then to set us on Shore, either there where we were, or some where else, and so carry the Ship away to the *South Seas*, and then to do as they found convenient; that is to say, in a Word, to seize upon me, the other Captain, the *French* Captain, the *Supra Cargo*, chief Mate, Doctor, and Carpenter, with some others, and run away with the Ship.

He told me, that they had not fully consulted all their Measures, nor gain'd so many of the Men as they intended; that they were to sound some more of the Men the next Morning, and as soon as they had made their Number up fifty, they were resolv'd to make the Attempt, which they did not question would be by *Thursday*, and this was *Monday* Morning; and that if they were then ready, they would make the Onset at changing the Watch the same Evening. He added, that as they were to go on Shore the next Morning for fresh Water, I should know the Truth of it by this; that the second Mate would come to me, and tell me that they wanted more Water, and to know if I pleas'd the Boats should go on Shore, and that if I pleas'd he would go with them, or any else who I pleas'd to appoint; and that upon Supposition that I would leave it to him, to take who he thought fit to go with him, he would then take Occasion to choose the principal Conspirators, that they might when they were on Shore, consult their Measures for good and all.

I had all that Day (*Monday*) to order my Preparations, and upon this plain Intelligence, I resolv'd to lose no time, nor was it long before I resolv'd what to do; for as their Design was desperate, so I had nothing but desperate Remedies to provide. Having therefore, as I say, settled  
my

my Measures, I call'd for the Cockswain, and bid him man the Pinnace, for that I was to go on Shore, and I appointed only the *Supra Cargo*, and the Surgeon, and the *French Captain*, to go with me.

There were no *English Ships* in the Road, but there were about five *Dutch Ships* homeward bound waiting for more, and three outward bound. As I pass'd by one of the outward bound *East India Ships*, the *French Captain*, as we had agreed before, pretended to know the Ship, and that the Commander was his old Acquaintance, and ask'd me to give him leave to visit him, and told me he was sure he would make us all welcome. I seem'd unwilling at first, telling him, I intended to go on Shore and pay my Respects to the Governor, and, as was usual, to ask him leave to buy some Provisions, and that the Governor would take it very ill if I did not go: However, upon his alledging that we would not stay, and that the *Dutch Captain* upon his going on board, would, he was sure, give us a Letter of Recommendation to the Governor, by which we should have every thing granted that we could desire. Upon this, and his Importunity, I seem'd to consent, and we went all on board:

Captain *Merlotte*, who spoke *Dutch* very well, hal'd the Ship, ask'd the Captain's Name, and then ask'd if he was on Board; they answer'd yes, then he bid them tell him the Captain of the *English Ship* was come to visit him; upon which, immediately their chief Mate had them man the side, and stood at the side to receive us, and before we could get up, the *Dutch Captain* came upon the Quarter Deck to meet me, and with great Civility invited me into his Cabin; and while

we were there, the chief Mate, by the Captain's Order, entertain'd the Boats Crew with like Civility.

When we were in the Cabbin, Captain *Merlotte* told the *Dutch* Captain that we came indeed to him in the Form of a Visit, but that our Business was of the greatest Importance, and begg'd we might speak to him of it in the hearing of none but such as he could trust: The Captain told us with the greatest open-heartedness imaginable, that tho' we were Strangers to him, yet we look'd like honest Men, and he would grant our Desire; we should speak it in the hearing of none but those we could trust, for there should be no body by but our selves.

We made him fully sensible that we knew how obliging that Compliment was, but begg'd he would admit any who he thought worthy to be trusted with a Secret of the last Importance. He then carried it as far t' other way, and told us, that then he must call in the whole Ship's Company, for that there was not a Man in the Ship but he could trust his Life in his Hands. However, upon the whole, he sent every Body out of the Cabbin but us three and himself, and then desir'd we would speak our Minds freely.

Captain *Merlotte*, who spoke *Dutch*, began, but the Captain interrupted him, and ask'd if the *English* Captain, (meaning me) spoke *Dutch*; he said no, upon which he ask'd Captain *Merlotte* if he spoke *English*, and he said yes, upon which he let me know that he understood *English*, and desir'd I would speak to him in *English*.

I was heartily glad of this, and began immediately with the Story, for we had time little enough. I told him that he was particularly  
happy,

happy, that as he said, could put his Life in the Hand of any Man, the meanest in his Ship; that my Men were unhappily the reverse of his; and then beginning at the first of the Story, I gave him a full Account of the whole, as related above.

He was extremely affected with it, and ask'd me what he could do to serve me, and assur'd me that he would not only do what in him lay, but would engage all the Ships in the Road to do the like, and the Governor also on Shore. I thanked him very sincerely, and told him, that what at present was the thing I thought lay before me, was this, *viz.* that the chief Conspirators would be on Shore to morrow, with one, or perhaps two, of our Boats, to fetch Water, and get some fresh Provisions, and I would be very glad to have them seiz'd upon by Surprize, when they were on Shore, and that then I thought I could master the rest on Board well enough.

Leave that to me, says he, I'll give the Governor Notice this Evening, and as soon as they come on Shore they shall be all seiz'd; but, says he, if you think they may incline to make any Resistance, I'll write a Line to the Governor, and give it you now; then when your Men go on Shore, order one or two of the principal Rogues to go and wait on the Governor with the Letter from you, and when he receives it, he shall secure them there; so they will be divided and taken with the more Ease.

In the mean time, adds he, while this is doing on Shore, I'll come on board your Ship, with my Long Boat and Pinnace, and as many Men as you please, to repay you the Compliment of this Visit, and assist you in reducing the rest.



This was so kind, and so compleatly what I desir'd, that I could have asked nothing more or less; and I accepted his Visit in his Barge, which I thought would be enough, but was afraid that if more came, our Men might be alarm'd, and take Arms before I was ready; so we agreed upon that, and that if I desir'd more Help, I should hang out a Signal, *viz.* a Red Antient on the Mizen Top.

All Things being thus consulted, I return'd on Board, pretending to our Men that I had spent so much time on Board the *Dutch* Ship, that I could not go on Shore; and indeed some of my Men were so drunk, that they could scarce fit to their Oars; and the Cockswain was so very drunk, that I took Occasion to ask Leave publicly, to leave him on Board till the next Day, giving the *Dutch* Captain also, a Hint that he was in the Conspiracy, and I should be glad to leave him on that Account.

The next Day about nine a Clock, the second Mate came to me, and told me they wanted more Water, and if I pleas'd to order the Boat on Shore, he would go, if I thought fit, and see if he could get any fresh Provisions, the Purser being indisposed: I told him yes, with all my Heart, that the *Dutch* Captain last Night had given me a Letter to the Governor, to desire we might be furnish'd with whatever we had Occasion for, and that I had Thoughts of calling for him to go on Shore and deliver it, and that perhaps the Governor might make him some Present in Compliment to the *English* Nation.

He seem'd extremely pleas'd at this, and even elevated, and going out to give Orders about the Boat, order'd the Long Boat and the Shallop, and  
came



came in again, and ask'd me who I pleas'd to have go along with him; I answer'd, smilingly to him, pick and choose them your self, only leave the Pinnaces Crew that went with me yesterday, because they must go on Board again to carry the *Dutch* Captain a little Present of *English* Beer that I am going to send him, and fetch a board their drunken Cockswain, who was so drunk, we was fain to leave him behind us.

This was just what he wanted; and we found he chose all the chief Rogues of the Conspiracy; such as the Boatswain, the Gunner, the Midshipmen we spoke of, and such of the Foremost Men as he had secur'd in his Design, and of the rest, we judg'd they were in the Plot, because he took them with him; and thus having the Long Boat and the Shallop, with about six and thirty Men with them, away they went to fill Water.

When they came on Shore, they had presently three *Dutch* Men, set by the *Dutch* Captain, unperceiv'd by them, to be Spies upon them, and to mark exactly what they did; and at the same time, they found three Boats of *Dutch* Men at the watering place, for the Captain had gotten two Boats to go on Shore from two other Ships, full of Men also, having acquainted them with the Design. As soon as our Boats came on Shore, the Men appear'd to be all very much engag'd in something more than ordinary, and in stead of separating, as it was expected they should, they went all into one Boat, and there they were mighty busy engag'd in Discourse one with another.

The *Dutch* Captain had given the Charge of these Things to a brisk, bold Fellow, his Mate, and he took the Hints the Captain gave him, so

well, that nothing could have been better; for finding the Men thus in a kind of a Cabal, he takes four of his Men with Muskets on their Shoulders, like the Governor's Men, and goes with them to the *English* Mens Boat, and asks for their Officer, the second Mate, who upon this appears: He tells them he comes from the Governor, to know if they were *English* Men, and what their Business was on Shore there: The Mate answer'd, they came from on board the *English* Ship, that they were driven there by stress of Weather, and hoped they might have Leave to fill Water and buy Necessaries for their Money. He told them he suppos'd the Governor would not refuse them when he knew who they were, but that it was but good Manners to ask leave: The *English* Man told him, that he had not yet fill'd any Water, or bought any Provisions, and that he had a Letter to the Governor, from the Captain, which he suppos'd was to pay the usual Civilities to him, and to give him the Civility of asking leave, as was expected.

The *Dutch* Man answer'd, that was *Hael weel*, that he might go and carry it if he pleas'd then, and if the Governor gave them Leave, all was right and as it should be; but that the Men could not be admitted to come on Shore till his Return. Upon this, away goes the second Mate of our Ship, and three of the Men with him, whereof the Gunner was one; for he had ask'd the *Dutch* Man how many he might carry with him, and he told him three or four; and those he took, you may be sure were of the particular Men, who he had a Confidence in, because of their conversing together by the way.

When

When they came to the Governor, the Mate sent in a Message first, *viz.* That he was come from on board the *English* Ship in the Road, and that he had a Letter from the Captain to his Excellence. The Governor, who had Notice given him of the Business, sends out word, that the Gentlemen should send in the Letter, and the Governor would give them an Answer: In the mean time, there appear'd a Guard of Soldiers at the Governor's House, and the four *English* Men were let into the outer Room, where the Door was shut after them, and the Soldiers stood without the Door, and more Soldiers in another Room between them and the Parlour which the Governor sat in.

After some time, the Mate was call'd in, and the Governor told him, that he had read the Letter which he brought, and ask'd him, by an Interpreter, if he knew the Contents of it; he answer'd No: The Governor replied, he suppos'd not, for if he had, he would scarce have brought it; at the same time told him, he was oblig'd to make him and all his Men Prisoners, at the Request of their own Captain, for a Conspiracy to raise a Mutiny and run away with the Ship. Upon which, two great fat *Dutch* Men came up to him and bid him deliver his Sword, which he did with some Reluctance; for he was a stout, desperate, and strong Fellow; but he saw it all to no purpose to dispute or resist.

At the same time, the three Men without were made Prisoners also, by the Soldiers. When the Governor had thus secur'd these Men, he call'd them in and enquir'd the Particulars of the Case, and expostulated with them very courteously upon such a horrid, villainous Practise, and enquir'd

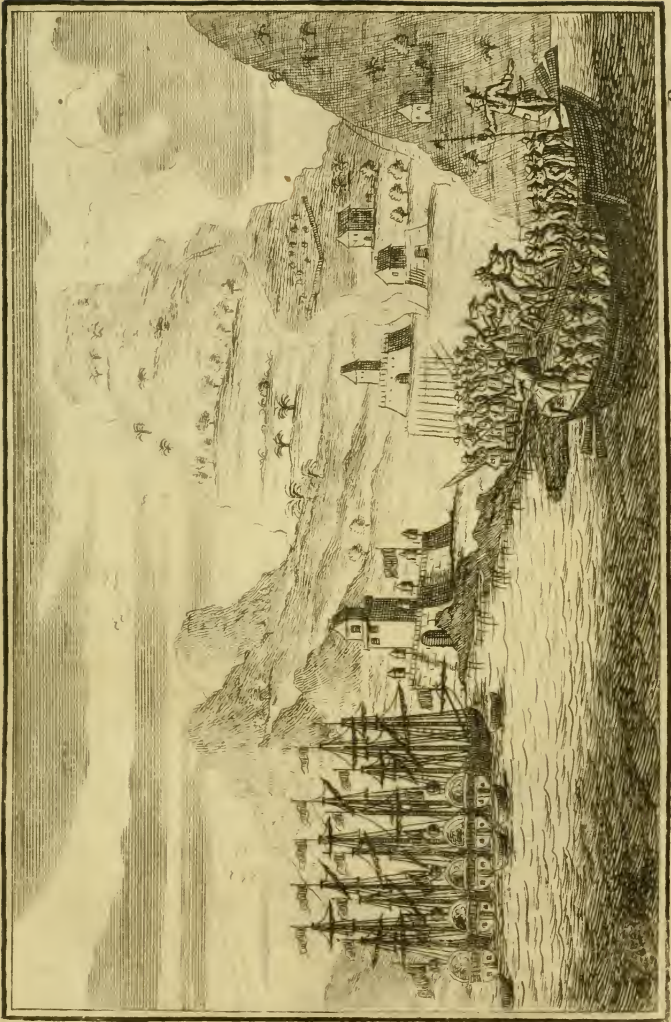
of them what the Occasion could be; and hearing all they had to say in their Defence, told them he could do nothing in it more, till their Captain came on Shore, which would be in a Day or two, and that in the mean time, they must be content to remain in Custody, which they did, separated from one another. They were very civilly treated, but strictly kept from speaking with one another, or sending any Messages to one another, or to the Boats.

When this was done, the Governor sent six Files of Musqueteers down to the watering place, with Order to secure all the *English* Men in the two Boats, which was done. They pretended to make some Resistance at first, being all very well arm'd; but the Seamen of the three *Dutch* Long Boats, joining themselves to the Soldiers, and Notice being given the *English* Seamen, that if they fir'd one Gun, they should have no Quarter, and especially their two principal Men, the chief Mate, and the Gunner, being absent, they submitted, and were all made Prisoners also.

When this was done, of which the *Dutch* Captain had Notice, by a Signal from the Shore, he came off in his Shallop, with about sixteen Seamen, and five or six Gentlemen and Officers, to pay his Visit to me. I receiv'd him with all the Appearance of Ceremony imaginable, caus'd a handsome Dinner to be prepar'd for him, and caus'd his Men to be all treated upon the Deck, and made mighty Preparation for a Feast.

But in the Middle of all this, Captain *Merlotte*, with all his *French* Men, being thirty two, appear'd in Arms on the Quarter Deck; the *Dutch* Captain's Attendants stood to their Arms on the Main Deck, and I, with the *Supra*  
Carga,









*Cargo*, the Doctor, and the other Captain, leaving the *Dutch* Captain and some Men in the great Cabbin as a Reserve, came to the Steerage Door, clear'd the Steerage behind me, and stood there with a Cutlash in my Hand, but said nothing; neither was there a Word spoke any where all the while.

In this Juncture, the chief Mate, the faithful Midshipmen, the Carpenter, and the Gunner's Mate, with about twenty Men, who they could trust, went fore and aft between Decks, and secur'd all the particular Men that we had the least Suspicion of, being no less than thirty five more: These they secur'd, bringing them up into the Steerage, where their Hands were tyed behind them, and they were commanded not to speak one Word to one another, upon pain of present Death.

When this was done, the chief Mate came to me to the Steerage Door, and passing by, went forward on with his Men, enter'd the Cook Room, and posted himself at the Cook Room Door. There might be still about eighty Men upon the Forecastle, and Midships upon the open Decks; and there they stood staring, and surpriz'd at what was doing, but not being able to guess in the least what was meant, what was the Cause of it, or what was intended to be done farther.

When I found all Things ready, I stept forward a Step or two, and beckoning to the Mate to command Silence, I told the Men, that I was not dispos'd to hurt any Man, nor had I done what I now did, but by Necessity, and that I expected they should all submit; that if any one of them made the least Resistance, he was a dead Man,

Man, but that if they would be easy and quiet, I should give a very good Account to them all, of every part of the Voyage, or Scheme of a Voyage which I had laid, and which had been so ill represented to them.

Then I caused my Commissionor Letter of Mart to be read to them all, by which it appear'd, that I was really chief Commander of the Ship, and had a right to direct the Voyage as I thought best; with a Paper of written Instructions, sign'd by the Owners and Adventurers, and directed to me, with another Paper of Instructions to all the Officers, to be directed by me in all Things; which indeed, was all News to them, for they did not think I was the chief Captain or Commander of the Ship and Voyage.

When I had done this, I gave them a long and full Account of the Reasons why I thought it best as our present Circumstances were stated, not to go to the *South Seas* first, but to go away to the *Philippine* Islands, and what great Prospect of Advantage to the Owners there was, as well as to the Men; and that I wondered much that such Measures were taking in the Ship as I heard there were; and that I was not, they might see, unprovided of Means to reduce every one of them to their Duty by Force, and to punish those that were guilty as they deserv'd; but that I rather desir'd to win them by Kindness; and that therefore I had resolv'd, that if any of them had any reason to dislike the Voyage, they should be fairly set on Shore, and should go to the second Mate and his Comrades: And as I named the second Mate, I told them what Circumstances they were in, and how effectually they were secur'd.

This

This astonish'd them, and surpriz'd them exceedingly, and some of them enquir'd more particularly into the Circumstances of the said second Mate and his Fellows: I told them they were safe enough, and should remain so: For as I could prove they had all a villainous Design to run away with the Ship, and set me on Shore, either here, or in a worse place, I thought that only upon account of my own Safety, such Men were not fit to go in the Ship, being once capable to entertain such horrid, mischievous Thoughts, or that could be guilty of such a Villany; and that if any of them were of their Minds, they were very welcome, if they thought fit, to go to them. At this Word, some bold Rogues upon the Fore-castle, which I did not discern, by reason of the Number that stood there, cried out *One and all*, which was a Cry at that time of Mutiny and Rebellion, that was certain, and in its kind very dangerous.

However, to let them see I was not to be daunted with it, I call'd out to one of the Men among them, who I saw upon the Forecastle; you *Jones*, says I, tell me who that was, and come away from them, for I'll make an Example of him whoever 'tis, *Will. Jones* slunk in among the rest, and made me no Answer, and immediately *One and all* was cried again, and a little Huzza with it, and some of the Men appear'd to have some Fire Arms with them. There was a great many of them, and I presently foresaw, that if I went to the Extremity, I should spoil the Voyage, tho' I conquer'd them; so I bridled my Passion with all my Might, and said calmly, very well Gentlemen, let me know what it is you mean by *One and all*; I offered any of you that  
did



did not like to go the Voyage, might quit the Ship, is that it you intend by *One and all*? If so, you are welcome, and pray take care to do it immediately; as for what Chests or Clothes you have in the Ship, you shall have them all with you. Upon this I made the chief Mate, who was now come to me again, advance a little with some more Men, and get between the Men upon the Forecastle, and those who were upon the Main Deck; and, as if he had wanted Room, when he was gotten between them, he said to them, stand aft a little Gentlemen, and so crowded them towards me:

As they came nearer and nearer to where I stood, I had Opportunity to speak to them singly, which I did calmly and smiling: *Why how now Tom*, says I to one of them, what are you among the Mutineers? *Lord Sir*, says Tom, *not I, they are mad I think, I have nothing to say to them; I care not where I go, not I; I'll go round the Globe with you, its all one to me.* Well Tom, says I, but what do you do among them then? come away into the Steerage, and show your self an honest Man. So Tom comes in, and after him another, and then two more; upon my saying to Tom what do you do among them, one of the Fellows says to one of the Officers that stood at a little Distance from me, *what does the Captain mean by saying among them, what does he reckon us to be in the Plot?* He is quite wrong, we are all ignorant, and surpriz'd at it. He immediately tells me this, and I was glad, you may be sure, to hear it, and said aloud to the Man he spoke to, If they are honest Men and would not appear in this Villany, let them go down between Decks and get out of the way, that they may have no Share  
in



in the Punishment, if they have none in the Crime. *With all my Heart*, says one, *God bless you Captain*, says another, and away they dropt one by one in at the Steerage Door, and down between Decks, every one to his Hammock or Cabbin, till there was not above five or six of them left.

By this time, our two Boats appear'd from the Shore, being both mann'd with *Dutch Men*, viz. the *Dutch Captain's Mate* and about twenty of his Men, all the Water Casks full, but not a Man of mine with them, for they were left a Shore in safe Custody.

I waited till they came on Board, and then turning to the Men on the Forecastle, I told them they should go on Board the Boats immediately, as soon as the Buts of Water were hoisted in. They still said *One and all*, they were ready, desir'd they might go and fetch their Clothes: No, no, says I, not a Man of you shall set your Foot any more into the Ship; but go get you into the Boats, and what is your own, shall be given you into the Boat.

As I spoke this in an angry Tone, and with a kind of Passion, that look'd provok'd to a high Degree, they began to see they had no Room to choose; and some of them slipt down the Scuttle into the Cook Room. I had order'd the Officer who was there, who was one of the Midshipmen, to wink at it, and let as many come down as offer'd it, and the honest Man did more than that; for he went to the Scuttle himself, and as if he had whisper'd, so that I should not hear him, call'd them one by one by their Names, and argued with them: *Prithee Jack*, says he to one of them, don't you be distracted and ruin your  
self

self to gratify a rash drunken Humour; if you go into the Boat you are undone, you will be seiz'd as soon as you come a Shore as the rest are, and will be sent to *England* in Irons, and there you will be infallibly hang'd; why you are certainly all mad. *Jack* replies, he had no design to mutiny, but the second Mate drew him in, and he did not know what to do, he wish'd he had not meddled, but he was undone, now what could he do? *Do*, says the the Midship-man, leave them for Shame, and slip down here, and I'll see and get you off if I can. Accordingly he pull'd him down, and after him so many got out of Sight the same Way that there was not above Seventeen or Eighteen left upon the Fore-castle.

I seem'd to take no Notice of that, till at last one of the Men that was left there with his Hat or Cap in his Hand, stepping just to the Edge of the Fore-castle which was next to me, said, with a very respectful Manner, That I saw how many had slunk away and made their Peace, or at least obtained Pardon, and that I might, perhaps, know that they who were left were only such as had their Duty there, being placed there of Course before the Mutiny began, and that they had no Hand in it, but abhorr'd it with all their Hearts, which he hoped I would consider and not joyn them with those that had offended, meerly because they came upon the Fore-castle and mix'd there with the Men who had the Watch.

I told him if that was true it would be in their Favour, but I expected he would prove it to my Satisfaction before I accepted that for an Excuse. He told me it might, perhaps, be  
hard

hard to prove it, seeing the Boatswain and his Mate, and the second Mate were gone, but the rest of the Ship's Crew could all testify that they were a Part of the Men whose Watch it was, and that they were upon the Forecastle by the Necessity of their Duty and no otherwise, and call'd such and such Men who were upon Duty with them to witness it, who did confirm it.

Upon this, I found my self under a Necessity, in Justice to the Men, to approve it: But my own Management was a Bite upon my self in it; for tho' I did allow the Midship-men to wink at their slipping away as before, yet I made no Question but I should have some left to make Examples of; but as I could not go back from the Promise of Mercy which I had allow'd the Midship-man to offer in my Name: So I trick'd my self by their Mistake into a Necessity of pardoning them all, which was very far from my Design; but there was no Remedy.

However, the Men, when they were so happily escaped, desired the Midship-men, who had been instrumental to deliver them, to assure me, that as they were sensible they had deserved very ill at my Hands, and that yet I had treated them thus kindly, they would not only reveal to me all the Particulars of the Conspiracy and the Names of those principally concern'd in it, but that they would assure me, they would never more dispute any of my Measures, but were very ready to do their Duty as Seamen to what Part of the World soever I might think fit to go, or which Way I thought fit to carry them; whether outward or homeward, and that they gave me the tender of their Duty in this Man-  
ner

ner with the utmost Sincerity and with Thankfulness for my having forgiven them that Conduct which was the worst that a Seaman could be guilty of.

I took this very kindly, and sent them Word I did so, and that they should find they had taken the wiser Course, that I had an intire Confidence in their Fidelity, and that they should never find I would reproach them with, or use them the worse for what had past.

I must confess, I was very glad of this Submission of the Men; for tho' by the Measures I had taken I was satisfied I should conquer them, and that I was safe from their Attempts; yet carrying it on by Resentment, and doing Justice upon the Offenders, whatever Advantage it had one Way, had this Disadvantage in the Consequence; (*viz.*) that it would ruin the Voyage, for at least half the Men were in the Plot.

But having thus conquer'd them by good Usage, I thought my next Work was to enquire into the Mistakes which had been the Foundation of all this: So before I parted with the Men who had returned to their Duty, I told them, that as I had freely forgiven what was past, so I would keep my Word with them, that I would never reproach them with it; but that I thought it was necessary their Judgments should be convinc'd how much they were impos'd upon, as well as their Tempers be reduced by my Kindness to them. That I was of the Opinion that they had been abused in the Account given them of what I had design'd to do, and of the Reasons I had to give for doing it; and I would desire them to let me know afterwards, whether they had been faithfully inform'd



form'd of Things or not; and whether in their own Judgment, now when they were freed from the Prepossessions they were under, they could object any Thing against it or no.

This I did with Respect to the other Men who I had made Prisoners in the Steerage, who I had the same Design to be kind to as I had to these; but upon whom I resolv'd to work this Way, because, after all, I might have this Work to do over again if I should meet with any Disappointment or Miscarriage in the Voyage; or especially if we should be put to any Straits or Distress in the pursuing it.

In order to this, I caus'd the Voyage it self, and the Reasons of it, the Nature of the Trade I was to carry on by it, the Pursuit of it to the *South-Seas*; and in a Word, every Thing just as we had argued and settled it in the great Cabbin, to be put into Writing and read to them.

The Fellows, every one of them, declar'd they were fully satisfi'd in the Voyage it self; and that my Reasons for it were perfectly good; and that they had received a quite different Account of it; as that I would carry them into the Island of the *Moluccas*, which was the most unhealthy Part of the *East-Indies*; that I would go away to the *South* for new Discoveries; and that I would go away thence to the *South-Seas*; which was a Voyage of such a Length that no Ship could victual for; that it was impossible to carry fresh Water such a Length; and in a Word, that it was a Voyage that would destroy us all.

It was the chief Mate and the Midship-man who took them all down the Scuttle, that



brought me this Account from them; so I made him take two of those penitent Mutineers with him, and go to the Men in the Steerage, who he had made Prisoners at first, and see whether their Delusions were of the same Kind, and what kind of Temper they were in: Accordingly he went to them directly, for this was not a Business that admitted giving them Time to club and Cabal together, and form other Societies or Combinations which might have Consequences fatal to us still.

When he came to them, he told them, the Captain was willing to do all the Justice possible to his Men, and to use them on all Occasions with Equity and Kindness; I ordered him to enquire calmly what it was had mov'd them to these Disorders, and what it was which they had been made to believe was doing, that they could enter into Measures so destructive to themselves, and to those who had entrusted them all with the Ship and Cargo; for that in a Voyage every Foremast-man, in his Degree, is trusted with the Safety of the whole Ship.

They answered it was the Mate; that they had never shewn themselves discontented, much less disorderly in the Ship; that they had on all Occasions done their Duty thro' the whole Voyage till now, and that they had no ill Design upon any one, much less had they any Design to destroy the Voyage or injure the Captain; but that they were all told by the second Mate, that the Captain had impos'd upon them, that he had propos'd a mad Voyage to the *South Pole* that would murder them all, and that they were to lay aside the Trading and Cruising Voyages which they came out upon, and were

NOW

now to spend the whole Voyage in new Discoveries ; by which the Men could propose nothing to themselves but Hardships, and perhaps perishing with Hunger and Cold ; whereas, had they gone to the *South-Seas* as was intended, they might all have been made ; and that the Hazards with that Prospect, had some Sense in them ; whereas in this Project, there was nothing but certain Destruction.

The Mate deliver'd them a Copy of the Scheme I had propos'd, the Reasons of it, the Trade I had design'd, the Return I was to make, and every Thing as I have already mention'd it, and bid them take it and consider of it.

As I was justly provok'd to see how I had been abused and misrepresented to the Men, so they were astonish'd when they read my Scheme and saw what Mischiefs they had been led into for they know not what, and without any Reason or just Consideration : And after they had debated Things a while among themselves, they desir'd the chief Mate might come to them again, which he did : Then they told him, that as they had been thus grossly abus'd and drawn into mischiefs which they never design'd, by such plausible Pretences, and by being told such a long Story full of Lies, and to carry on a hellish Project of the second Mates ; they hoped then, being so much impos'd upon, would a little extenuate their Fault ; that they were convinc'd, that the Captain had propos'd nothing but what was very rational, and a Voyage that might be very profitable to the Owners and to themselves ; and they entirely threw themselves upon the Captain's Mercy, and humbly begg'd Pardon ; that if I pleas'd to forgive them, they

would endeavour to merit such Forgiveness by their future Behaviour; and that in the mean Time, they submitted to what Punishment I pleas'd to lay upon them: And particularly, that as they had forfeited, by their Conspiracy, all the Claim they had upon the Ship, and might justly have been turn'd a-shore at the first Land they came to, they were willing to fine a Discharge for all their Wages due to them, which was now near eight Months a Man, and to be considered for the rest of the Voyage as they deserv'd: That they would all take a Solemn Oath of Fidelity to me to do their Duty, to go wherever I would carry them, and to behave with the greatest Submission and Diligence, in Hopes to regain my Favour by their future Behaviour, and to shew their Gratitude for the Pardon I should grant them.

This was indeed just as I would have it, for I wanted nothing more than to have something offered, which I might give them back again; for I ever thought, and have found it by Experience to be the best Way; and Men were always secured in their Duty by a generous Kindness, better than by absolute Dominion and Severity: Indeed my Opinion was justified in all the Measures I took with these Men; for as I found they were sufficiently humbled, and that I had brought them low enough, I let them know, that it was not their Punishment but their Amendment that I desired; that I scorn'd to make a Prey of them, and take that Forfeiture they had offer'd, so putting the Wages due to them for their Labour in my Pocket. But I sent them Word, I was very glad to hear that they were sensible how much they had been impos'd

impos'd upon; that as it was not my Design to offer any Thing to them, which they or any honest Men ought to refuse, so it was not my Desire to make any Advantages of their Follies, but what might tend to bringing them back to their Duty; that as I had no Prospect that was inconsistent with their Safety and interest, so I scorn'd to make a Profit of their Submission; that as to their Wages, tho' they had forfeited it by their Mutiny, yet God forbid I should make it my Profit: and since forgiving their Offence was in my Power, the Crime being in one Particular an Offence against me, they should never be able to say I made a Gain of their Submission, and like the Pope should sell them my Pardon; that upon their solemn engaging to me never to offer the least Disturbance of any Kind in the Ship for the future, but to do their Duty faithfully and Chearfully, I would forget all that was past; only this I expected, (*viz.*) that two of them who were particularly guilty of threat'ning the Life of Captain *Merlotte*, should be punish'd as they deserv'd.

They could not deny but this was most just; and they did not so much as offer to intercede for those two: But when one of the two mov'd the rest, they answer'd they could not do it, for they had received Favour enough for themselves, and they could not desire any Thing of the Captain for their Sakes, for they had all deserv'd Punishment as well as they.

In a Word, the two Men were brought to the Geers, and soundly whipp'd and pickl'd; and they all prov'd very honest ever after: And these, as I said at first were two and thirty in all.



All this while Captain *Merlotte* with his *French* Men were in Arms, and had Possession on the Quarter Deck to the Number of 23 stout Men; I had Possession of the Main-deck with 18 Men and the 16 *Dutch* Men, and my chief Mate, with the Midship-man had Possession of the Cook-room and the Quarter-deck; the *Dutch* Captain, our *Supra Cargo*, the Surgeon, and the other Captain kept the Great Cabbin, with a Guard of 12 Musqueteers without the Door, and about 8 more within, besides Servants. Captain *Merlotte's* Man also had a Guard of eight Men in the Round-house. I had now nothing to do but with my Men who were on Shore; and of these, six of them were indifference, being Men not embark'd in the Design, but carried on Shoar by the chief Mate, with a Design to engage them with him; so that indeed they fell into a Punishment before they fell into the Crime; and what to do with these Men was the Case.

The first Thing I did, was to dismiss my Visitor the *Dutch* Captain, who I had a great deal of Reason to think my self exceedingly oblig'd to: And first I handsomely rewarded his Men, to whom I gave four Pieces of Eight a Man; and having waited on the Captain to the Ship's Side and seen him into his Boat, I fired him 21 Guns at his going off; for which he fired 25 when he came on board his Ship. The same Afternoon I sent my Pinnace on board him for my drunken Cockswain, and with the Pinnace I sent the Captain three dozen Bottles of *English* Beer, and a Quarter-cask of Canary, which was the best Present I had to make him; and sent every one of his other Seamen a Piece of Eight

*per* Man; and indeed the Assistance I had from the Ship deserv'd it; and to the Mate who acted so bravely with my Men on Shore I sent 50 Pieces of Eight.

The next Day I went on Shore to pay my Respects to the Governour, when I had all the Prisoners deliver'd up to me; the six Men I caused to be immediately set at Liberty, as having been innocent, and brought all the rest on board tied Hand and Foot as Prisoners, and continued them so a great while afterward as you shall hear: As for the second Mate, I tryed him formally by a Council of War, as I was empower'd by my Commission to do, and sentenced him to be hang'd at the Yard Arm: And tho' I suspended the Execution from Day to Day, yet I kept him in Expectation of the Halter every Hour; which, to some, would have been as grievous as the Hanging it self.

Thus we conquered this desperate Mutiny, all principally proceeding from suffering the private Disputes among our selves, which ought to have been the *Arcana* of the whole Voyage, and kept as secret as Death it self could have kept it, I mean so, as not to come among the Seamen afore the Mast.

We lay here 12 Days, during which Time, we took in fresh Water as much as we had Casks for, and was able to stow. On the 13th Day of *August* we weighed and stood away to the *East*, designing to make no Land any more till we came to *Java-Head*, and the *Streights* of *Sunda*; for that Way we intended to sail: But the Wind sprung up at *E.* and at *E. S. E.* and blew so fresh, that we was oblig'd, after two

Days beating against it, to bear away afore it, and run back to the Cape of *Good-Hope*.

While we were here, there came in two *Dutch East-India Men* more, homeward bound, to whom had happened a very odd Accident; *as follows*: They had been attack'd by a large Ship of 44 Guns, and a stout Sloop of 8 Guns; the *Dutch Ships* resolving to assist one another, stood up to the *French Man*, for such it seems he was, and fought him very warmly. The Engagement lasted six or seven Hours; in which the Privateer had kill'd them some Men; but in the Heat of the Fight, the Sloop receiv'd a Shot, which brought her Main-mast by the Board; and this caus'd the Captain of the Frigate to sheer off, fearing his Sloop would be taken; but the Sloop's Men took Care of themselves, for halling a little out of the Fight, they got into their own Boats, and a Boat which the Frigate sent to their Help, and abandon'd the Sloop; which the *Dutch Men* perceiving, they mann'd out their Boats, and sent and took the Sloop with all that was in her, and brought her away with them.

The *Dutch Men* came into the Road at the Cape with this Prize while our Ship was there the second Time; and we saw them bringing the Sloop in a Tow, having no Mast standing but a little Pole-mast set up for the present, and her Mizzen; which was also disabled and of little Use to her.

I no sooner saw her, but it came into my Thoughts, that if she was any Thing of a Sea-Boat, she would do our Business to a Tittle; and as we had always resolv'd to get another Ship, but had been disappointed, this would  
answer

answer our End exactly : Accordingly I went with my chief Mate in our Shallop, on board my old Acquaintance the *Dutch* Captain, and enquiring there, was inform'd of the Case, that it was a Prize taken as above, and that in all Probability the Captain that took her would be glad to part with her ; and the Captain promised me to go on board the Ship that brought her in, and enquire about it, and let me know.

Accordingly the next Morning, the Captain sent me Word I might have her ; that she carried eight Guns, had good Store of Provisions on board, with Ammunition sufficient, and I might have her, and all that was in her for 1200 Pieces of Eight. In a Word, I sent my chief Mate back with the same Messenger and the Money ; giving him Commission to pay the Money and take Possession of her if he lik'd her, which he did ; and the *Dutch* Captain, my Friend, lent him 12 Men to bring her off to us ; which they did the same Day.

I was a little put to it for a Mast for her, having not any Thing on board that we could spare that was fit for a Main-mast : But resolving at last to mast her not as a Sloop, but as a Brigantine, we made shift with what spare Pieces we had, and a spare Fortop-mast, which one of the *Dutch* Ships help'd me to, so we fitted her up very handsomely, made her carry twelve Guns, and put 60 Men on board. One of the best Things we found on board her, was Cask, which we greatly wanted, especially for Barrelling up Beef and other Provisions, which we found very difficult ; but our Cooper eked them out with making some new ones out of her old ones.

After



After staying here 16 Days more, we sail'd again indeed, I thought once we should never have gone away at all; for it is certain above half the Men in the Ship had been made uneasy, and there remained still some mis-understanding of my Design, and a Supposition of all the frightful Things the second Mate had put into their Heads; and by his Means the Boatswain and Gunner: As these three had the principal Management of the Conspiracy, and that I had pardon'd all the rest, I had some Thoughts of making an Example of these; I took Care to let them know it too, in a Manner, that they had no Room to think it was in jest, but that I intended to have them all three hang'd; and I kept them above three Weeks in Suspense about it: However as I had no Intention to put them to Death, I thought it was a Piece of Cruelty something worse than Death to keep them continually in Expectation of it, and in a Place to where they had but little more than Room to breath.

So having been 17 Days gone from the Cape, I resolv'd to relieve them a little; and yet at the same Time remove them out of the Way of doing me any capital Injury, if they should have any such Design still in their Heads: For this Purpose I caus'd them to be removed out of the Ship into the Brigantine, and there I permitted them to have a little more Liberty than they had on board the great Ship; and where two of them entered into another devilish Conspiracy, as wild and foolish as ever I heard of, or as, perhaps, was ever heard of; of which I shall say more in its Place.





We were now two Sail in Company, and we went away from the Cape the third of *September*, Anno. 1714. We found the Brigantine was an excellent Sea-boat, and could bear the Weather to a Miracle, and no bad Sailor; she kept Pace with us on all Occasions, and in a Storm we had at *S. S. E.* some Days after, she shifted as well as we did in the great Ship, which made us all in Love with her.

This Storm drove us away to the *Northward*; and I once thought we should have been driven back to the Cape again; which if it had happen'd, I believe we should never have gone on with the Voyage; for the Men begun to murmur again, and say we were bewitch'd, that we were beaten off first from the *South of America*, that we could never get round there, and now driven back from the *South of Africa*; so that in short it look'd as if Fate had determined this Voyage to be pursued no farther. The Wind continued and blew exceeding hard; and in short, we were driven so far to the *North*, that we made the *South Point* of the Island of *Madagascar*.

My Pilot knew it to be *Madagascar* as soon as he had a clear View of the Land, and having beaten so long against the Sea to no Purpose, and being in Want of many Things, we resolved to put in; and accordingly made for Port *St. Augustine*, on the *West Side* of the Island, where we came to an Anchor in eleven fathom Water, and a very good Road.

I could not be without a great many Anxious Thoughts upon our coming into this Island; for I knew very well that there were a Gang of desperate Rogues here, especially on the *Northern*



*thren* Coast, who had been famous for their Pyracies; and I did not know but that they might be either strong enough as Pyrates, to take us, or Rogues enough to entice a great many of my Men to run away: So I resolv'd neither to come near enough the Shore to be surprized, nor to suffer any of my Men to go on shore, such excepted as I could be very secure of.

But I was soon inform'd by a *Dutch* Man who came off to me with some of the Natives in a kind of Canvas Boat, that there were no *Europeans* there but himself, and the Pyrates were on the *North* Part of the Island; that they had no Ship with them of any Force, and that they would be glad to be fetch'd off by any Christian Ship; that they were not above 200 in Number, their chief Leaders, with the only Ships of Force they had, being out a Cruising on the Coast of *Arabia*, and the Gulph of *Persia*.

After this, I went on Shore my self with Captain *Merlotte*, and some of the Men who I could trust; and we found it true as the *Dutch* Man had related. The *Dutch* Man gave us a long History of his Adventures, and how he came to be left there by a Ship he came in from *Europe*, which, he running up into the Country for Sport, with three more of his Comrades went away without them, and left them among the Natives, who however used them very well, and that now he serv'd them for an Interpreter and a Broker, to bargain for them with the *European* Ships for Provisions. Accordingly he engag'd to bring us what Provisions we pleas'd, and propos'd such Trinkets  
in

in Return, as he knew the Natives desir'd, and as were of Value little enough to us, but he desir'd a Consideration for himself in Money, which tho' it was of no use to him there, he said, it might be hereafter; and as his Demand was but 20 Pieces of Eight, we thought he very well deserv'd it.

Here we bought a great Quantity of Beef, which having no Casks to spare, we salted, and then cur'd it in the Sun by the *Dutch* Man's Direction, and it prov'd of excellent Use to us thro' the whole Voyage, for we kept some of it, till we came to *England*, but it was then so hard, that a good Hatchet would hardly cut it.

While we lay here, it came into my Thoughts, that now was a good Time to execute Justice upon my Prisoners, so I call'd up the Officers to a Kind of Council of War, and propos'd it to them in general Terms, not letting them know my Mind, as to the Manner of it. They all agreed that it was necessary, and the second Mate, Boatswain and Gunner, had so much Intelligence of it from the Men, that they prepar'd for Death, as much as if I had sign'd a Dead Warrant for their Execution, and that they were to be hang'd at the Yard Arm. But in the Middle of those Resolves, I told the Council of Officers, my Design was, to the *North* Part of the Island, where a Gang of Pyrates were said to be settled, and that I was perswaded I might get a good Ship among them, and as many Men as we desir'd, for that I was satisfied the greatest Part of them were so wearied of their present Government, that they  
would

would be glad of an Opportunity to come away, and especially such as had either by Force, or rash hasty Resolutions been as it were surpriz'd into that sort of Life; that I had been inform'd they were very far from being in such a formidable Posture, as they had been represented to us in *Europe*, or any thing near so Numerous, but that on the contrary we should find them poor, divided, in Distress, and willing to get away upon any Terms they could.

Some of the Officers of the Ship differ'd from me in my Opinion; they had received such Ideas of the Figure those People made in *Madagascar*, from the common Report in *England*, that they had no Notion of them, but as of a little Common Wealth of Robbers; that they were immensely rich, that Captain *Avery* was King of the Island, that they were near 8000 Men, - that they had a good Squadron of stout Ships, and that they were able to resist a whole Fleet of Men of War, having a Harbour so well fortified at the Entrance into it, that there was no coming at them without a good Army for Land Service, and the like.

I convinc'd them how impossible this was to be true, and told them all the Discourse I had had with the *Dutch* Man, at the Place where I now was, who had had a full Account of it from several of them, who had come down to *St. Augustines* in little Boats, in order to make their Escape from them, and to get Passage for *Europe*; whom he had always assist-ed, and got them off, as any Ship touch at that Port; and who all agreed in their Relati-  
on

on of their Particulars, which were indeed miserable enough, saving that they wanted neither Viſtuals or Clothes.

In a Word, I ſoon brought them to enter into the Reason of it, and to be of my Opinion, and accordingly I ordered to get ready, and in 3 days Time weigh'd, and ſtood away for the *North* of the Island; for by the Way we did not now communicate our Debates or Resolves to the Men before the Mast, as had been done before, we had indeed had enough of that already.

While we were thus coasting the Island, to the *North* and in the Channel or Sea between the Island and the Main of *Africa*, it came into my Thoughts, that I might now make Use of my Traytors to my Advantage and their Own too, and that I might if they were honest gain my End, and get a full Intelligence of the People I had my Eye upon, and if they were still Traytors they would desert and go over to the Pyrates, and I should be well rid of them, without the Necessity of bringing them to the Yard Arm; for I was very uneasy in my Mind about hanging them too, nor could I ever have been brought to do it, I believe, whatever Risque I had run from their mutinous Disposition.

I was now got in the Latitude of 15 Degrees and a half, *South* of the Line, and began to think of standing in for the Shore; when I ordered the second Mate who lay in Irons in the Brigantine, to be brought on Board the great Ship, and to be call'd up into the great Cabin. He came in great Concern, tho' he was of himself a very bold and resolute Fellow, yet  
as



as he made no doubt, that he was sent for to Execution, he appear'd throughly soften'd, and quite another Man, than he was before.

When he was brought in, I caus'd him to be set down in a Nook of the Cabbin, where he could not stir to offer any Violence to me, if he had had any Will to it, two large Chests being just before him; and I order'd all my People to withdraw, except Captain *Merlotte* and the *Supra Cargo*; and then turning my self to the Criminal, I told him he knew his Circumstances, I need not repeat them, and the Fact for which he was brought into that Condition; that I had hitherto from time to time delay'd his Execution, contrary to the Opinion of the rest of the chief Officers, who in full Council had unanimously condemn'd him; that I had a sudden Thought came into my Head, which, if he knew how to merit Mercy, and to retrieve his Circumstances by his future Fidelity, might once again put it into his Power, not only to save his Life, but to be trusted in the Ship again, if he inclined to be honest; that however if he had no Inclination to merit by his Service, I would put it to his Choice, either to undertake with Courage and Fidelity what I had to propose to him, in which Case he might expect to be very well treated, or if not, I would pardon him as to the Death he had Reason to expect, and he, with his two Fellow Criminals, should be set on Shore to go whither they pleas'd.

He waited, without offering to speak a Word, till I made a full Stop, and then ask'd me if I gave him Leave to answer; I told him yes; then he ask'd if I gave him Leave to speak freely, and would not take Offence at what he might say; I told him he should speak as freely as if he had  
never

never offended ; and that as I had given him his Life, I now would give him my Word nothing he could say should revoke the Grant ; and that he should not only go freely on Shore, *for I expected by his Words that he had made that Choice*, but that I would give him the the Lives of his two fellow Prisoners ; and would give them Arms and Ammunition, and any Thing else that was reasonable for them to ask, or necessary to their subsisting on Shore in such a Country.

He told me then, that, had it been any other Part of the World than at *Madagascar*, he would readily have chosen to have gone on Shore ; nay, tho' the Place had been really desolate and uninhabited ; that he did not object because my Offer was not very generous and kind, and it would be always with regret that he should look back upon the Mercy he should have received, and how ill he had deserv'd it at my Hands.

But that as it was at this Place that I mentioned setting him at Liberty, he told me, that tho' he had been mutinous and disorderly, for which he acknowledg'd he had deserv'd to die, yet he hop'd I could not think so ill of him as to believe he could turn Pyrate ; and begg'd that rather than entertain such hard Thoughts of him, I would execute the worst Part of the Sentence and send him out of the World a Penitent, and an honest Man ; which he should esteem far better than to give him his Life in a Condition in which he could preserve it upon no other Terms than those of being the worst of Villains : He added, that if there was any Thing he could do to deserve so much Mercy as I intended him, he begg'd me that I would give him Room to

behave himself as became him, and he would leave it wholly to me, to use him as he should deserve, even to the recalling the Pardon that I had granted him.

I was extremely satisfied with what he said, and more particularly with the Manner of his Speaking it: I told him I was glad to see that he had a Principle of so much Honesty, at the Bottom of a Part so unhappy as he had acted; that I would be very far from prompting him to turn Pyrate, and much more from forcing him to do so; and that I would according to his Desire put an Opportunity into his Hands to shew himself a new Man; and by his Fidelity to wipe out all that was past: And then, without any more Ceremony, I told him my whole Design, which was to send him, and four or five more Men with him, on Shore among the pyrates as Spies, to see what Condition they were in, and to see whether there was any Apprehensions of Violence from them, or whether they were in the mean Circumstances that I had Reason to believe they were in; and lastly whether they had any Ship or Vessel which might be bought of them, and whether Men might be had to encrease our Company; that is to say, such Men as being penitent for their Rogueries, and tyred with their Miseries, would be glad of the Opportunity of turning honest Men before they were brought to it by Distress and the Gallows.

He embraced the Offer with the greatest readiness, and gave me all the Assurances that I could desire of his Fidelity. I then ask'd him whether he thought his two fellow Prisoners might be trusted upon the same Foot. He ask'd  
me

me if I would take it for a Piece of Sincerity; if after a Tryal, he should tell me his Mind, and would not be displeas'd if he declined speaking his Thoughts till he had talk'd with them: I told him he should be at Liberty to give his farther Answer after he had propos'd it to him; but I insist'd upon his Opinion first, because it was only his Opinion that I ask'd now; whereas if he reported it to them, then he had no more to do but to report their Answer. He then ask'd me if I would please to grant him one Thing; (*viz.*) that whatever his Opinion should be, that what he should say should be no Prejudice to them in their present Condition: I told him it was a reasonable Caution in him; and I would assure him, that whatever he said should not do them any Prejudice; and to convince him of it, I gave him my Word that I would not put them to Death on any Account whatsoever merely for his Sake: He bow'd and thank'd me very heartily for that Grant, which he said oblig'd him to be the plainer with me on that Head; and as he said, he would not deceive me in any Thing whatever, so he would not in this especially; and therefore told me, it was his Opinion they would not serve me faithfully; and he referr'd me to the Experience I should find of it; and added, that he would be so just to me in the beginning, as that while he begg'd me to be merciful to them, yet for my own Sake he would also beg me not to trust them.

I took the Hint, and said no more at that Time, but order'd his Irons to be taken off, and order'd him to have leave to go to his former Cabbin, and to have his Chests and Things re-



stored to him; so that he was at full Liberty in the Ship, tho' not in any Office, or appointed to any particular Business. A Day or two after this, we made Land, which appear'd to be the *North West* Part of the Island, in the Latitude of thirteen Degrees thirty Minutes; and now I thought it was Time to put our Design in Execution; for I knew very well that it could not be a great Way from this Part of the Island where the Pyrates were to be heard of: So I ordered the Boat on Shore, with about sixteen Men, to make Discoveries, and with them my new restored Man. I gave him no Instruction for any thing extraordinary at this Time; our Work now being only to find out where they were: The Boat came on board again at Night, for we had now stood in within two Leagues of the Shore, and brought us an Account, that there were no *English* or *Europeans* at all thereabouts, but that they were to be heard of a great Way farther: So we stood away to the *North* all the Night, and the next Day, the Wind being fair and the Sea smooth, and by our Reckoning we went in that Time about forty Leagues.

The next Evening, the same Company went on Shore again, and were shew'd by some of the Natives where the Pyrates inhabited; which in short, was about five or six and twenty Miles farther *North* still, in a River very commodious for Shipping, where they had five or six *European* built Ships, and two or three Sloops; but they were all laid up, except two Sloops, with which they cruised sometimes a great Distance off to the *North*, as far as the *Arabian* Gulph: He returned with this Intelligence the same Night; and

and by his Direction, we stood in as close under the Shore, as we could conveniently, about six Leagues farther *North*; here we found a very good Road under a little Cape, which kept us perfectly undiscovered; and in the Morning before Day, my Man went on Shore again with the Boat, and keeping only four Men with him, sent the Boat on board again, agreeing on a Signal for us to send the Boat for him again when he should return.

There was a pretty high Ledge of Hills to the *North* of the Place where he landed, and which running *West* made the little Cape under the Lee of which our Ship rode at an Anchor as above. As soon as he came to the top of those Hills he plainly discovered the Creek or Harbour where the Pyrate Ships lay, and where they had form'd their Encampment on the Shore. Our Men took such proper Observations of the Scituation of the Place they were in, upon the Hill, that they might not fail to find their Way back again, tho' it were in the Night; and having agreed in the Account they should give of themselves, so that they might be all found in the same Tale. They boldly went down the Hill, and came to the Edge of the Creek; the Pyrates Camp being on the other Shore.

Here they fir'd a Gun to raise a kind of Alarm among them, and then hanging out a white Cloth on the top of a Pole, a Signal of Peace, they Hail'd them in *English*, and ask'd them if they would send a Boat and fetch them over.

The Pyrates were surpriz'd at the Noise of the Piece, and came running to the Shore with all speed; but they were much surpriz'd when they  
heard

heard themselves Hail'd in *English*. Upon the whole, they immediately sent a Boat to fetch them over, and received them with a great deal of Joy.

Our Men pretended to be overjoy'd at finding them there, told them a long Story, that they came on Shore on the *West* Side of the Island where, not far off, there were two *English* Ships; but that the Natives quarrelling with their Men, upon some Rudeness offer'd to their Women; and they being separated from their Fellows, were oblig'd to fly, that the Natives had surrounded the rest, and they believ'd had kill'd them all; that they wandred up to the top of the hill, intending to make Signals to their Ship, to send them some Help; when seeing some Ships, they believed some *Europeans* were there, and so came down to take Shelter; and they begg'd of them a Boat to carry them round the Cape to their Comrades; unless they would give them Leave to stay with them, and do as they did, which they were very willing to do.

This was all a made Story; but however, the Tale told so well, that they believ'd it thoroughly, and received our Men very kindly, led them up to their Camp, and gave them some Victuals.

Our Men observ'd they had Victuals enough, and very good, as well Beef as Mutton; that is to say, of Goats Flesh, which was excellent good; also Pork and Veal, and they were tolerable good Cooks too; for they found they had built several Furnaces and Boilers, which they had taken out of their Ships, and dress'd a vast Quantity of Meat at a Time: But they observ'd they had no Liquor; upon which, the Mate pull'd

a large Bottle of good Cordial Waters out of his Pocket, and gave it about as far as it would go, and so did two others of the Men which their new Landlords took very kindly.

They spent good Part of the first Day in looking about them, seeing the Manner of the Pyrates Living there, and their Strength; and soon perceived that they were indeed but in a sorry Condition every Way, except that they had Cattle and Flesh Meat sufficient. They had a good Platform of Guns indeed, and a covered Place pallisado'd round where they lodg'd their Ammunition. But as for Fortifications to the Landward they had none, except a double Pallisado round their Camp, and a sort of a Bank thrown up within to fire from, and stand covered from the Enemies Lances, which was all they had to fear from the Natives. They had no Bread but what they made of Rice, and the Store they had of that was very small: They told our Men indeed, that they had two Ships Abroad, who they expected back every Day with a Quantity of Rice, and what else they could get; especially with some Arack, which they were to Trade for with the *Arabian* Merchants, or take it by Force, which should first offer.

Our Men pretended to like their Way of living mighty well, and talk'd of staying with them, if they would let them, and thus they pass'd the first Day of Conversation.

Our Men had two Tents or Hutts given them to lodge in, and Hammocks hung in the Hutts very agreeably, being such I suppose as belong'd to some of their Company that were dead, or were out upon Adventure, here they



slept very secure, and in the Morning walk'd about, as Strangers might be suffer'd to do to look about them, but my new Manager's Eye was chiefly here upon two Things, 1<sup>st</sup>. to see if they had any Shipping for our Purpose, and 2<sup>ly</sup>. to see, if he could pitch upon one Man more particular than the rest, to enter into some Confidence with, and it was not long before he found an Opportunity for both, the Manner was thus;

He was walking by himself, having ordered his other Men to straggle away, two and two, this way and that, as if they had not minded him, tho' always to keep him in Sight, I say, he walk'd by himself towards that Part of the Creek, where, as was said, three of their biggest Ships lay by the Walls, and when he came to the Shore right against them, he stood still looking at them very earnestly, while he was here, he observ'd a Boat put off from One of them, with four Oars and one Sitter onely, who they set on shore just by him, and then put off again; the Person, who they set on shore, was it seems, One, who had been without Men the evening before, but having some particular Office on board one of those Ships, lay on board every Night with about 10 or 12 Men, just to watch and guard the Ship, and so came on Shore in the Morning, as is usual in Men of War lay'd up.

As soon as he saw our Man, he knew him, and spoke very familiarly to him, and seeing he was looking so earnestly at the Ship, he ask'd him, if he would go on board, our Man faintly declin'd it, as on purpose to be ask'd again, and upon just as much farther pressing

as was sufficient to satisfy him, that the Gunner, for that was his Office, was in earnest, he yielded, so the Gunner call'd back the Boat, and they went on board.

Our Man view'd the Ship very particularly, and pretended to like every Thing he saw, but, after some Conversation, asks him this home Question, namely, why they did not go to Sea, and seek Purchase, having so many good Ships at their Command; he shook his Head, and told him very frankly, that they were in no Condition to undertake any thing, for that they were a Crew of unresolv'd divided Rogues; that they were never two Days of a Mind, that they had no Body to command, and therefore no Body to obey; that several Things had been offer'd, but nothing concluded, that in short they thought of nothing, but of shifting every one for themselves, as well as they could.

My Mate reply'd, he thought it had been quite otherwise, and that made him tell them last Night, that he had an Inclination to stay with them; I heard you say so, said the Gunner, and it made me smile; I thought in my self, that you would be of another Mind, when you knew us a little better, for in a Word said he, if they should agree to lend you a Boat to go back to your Ship, they would go together by the Ears, about who should go with you, for not a Man of them, that went with you, would ever come back again hither, if your Captain would take them on board, tho' the Terms were to be hang'd, when they came to *England*.

My Mate knew that this was my Opinion before, but he was really of another Mind himself, till he saw things, and till he talk'd with this Gunner, and this put new Things in his Head; so he entertain'd the Gunner with a Scheme of his own, and told him, if it was so as he related it, and that he had really a mind to come off from that Gang, he believ'd, that he could put him in a way how to do it to his Advantage, and to take a Set of his People with him, if he could pick out some of them that might be depended upon.

The Gunner reply'd, that he could pick out a Set of very brave Fellows, good Seamen, and most of them such, as having been forc'd into the Pyrates Ships, were drag'd into that wicked Life they had lived, not onely against their Consciences, but by a meer Necessity to save their Lives, and that they would be glad at any Price to come off: The Mate ask'd him, how many such he could answer for, he told him above a hundred; upon this the Mate told him the Circumstances we were in, the Voyage we were upon, that we were a Letter of *Mart* Ship of such a Force, but that we were over mann'd and double stor'd, in hopes of getting a good Ship upon our Cruise, to man out of the other, that we had been disappointed, and had only got the Sloop or Brigantine which we bought, as before, at the Cape, that if he could perswade the Men, to sell us one of their Ships, we would pay them for it in ready Money, and perhaps entertain 100 of their Men into the Bargain.

The Gunner told him, he would propose it to them, and added in positive Terms, that he

he knew it would be readily accepted, and that he should take which of the three Ships I pleas'd; the Mate then desir'd, that he would lend them his Shallop to go on board our Ship, to acquaint me with it, and bring back sufficient Orders to treat; he told him, he would not only do that, but before I could be ready to go, he would propose it to the chief Men that he had his Eye upon, and would have their Consent, and that then he would go along with him on board to make a Bargain.

This was as well as our Mate could expect, and the Gunner had either so much Authority among them, or the Men were so forward to shift their Station in the World, that the Gunner came again to our Mate in less than two hours, with an Order, sign'd by about sixteen of their Officers, empowering him to sell us the Ship, which the Gunner was on board of, and to allot so many Guns, and such a Proportion of Ammunition to her, as was sufficient, and to give the Work of all their Carpenters for so many Days, as were necessary to repair her, Calk, and grave her, and put her in Condition to go to Sea.

She was a *Spanish* built Ship, where they had her, the Gunner said he did not know; but she was a very strong tight Ship, and a pretty good Sailor. We made her carry two and thirty Guns, tho' she had not been used to carry above twenty-four.

The Gunner being thus impower'd to treat with my Mate, came away in their Shallop, and brought the said Gunner and two more of their Officers with him and eight Seamen. The Gunner and I soon made a Bargain for the  
Ship,



Ship, which I bought for five thousand Pieces of Eight, most of it in *English* Goods, such as they wanted; for they were many of them almost naked of Clothes; and as for other Things they had scarce a pair of Stockings or Shoes among them. When our Bargain was made, and the Mate had related all the Particulars of the Conference he had had with the Gunner, we came to talk of the People who were to go with us: The Gunner told us that we might indeed have good Reason to suspect a Gang of Men who had made themselves infamous all over the World by so many Pyracies and wicked Actions: But if I would put so much Confidence in him, he would assure me, that as he should have the Power in his Hands to pick and chuse his Men, so he would answer Body for Body for the Fidelity of all the Men he should chuse; and that most, if not all of them, would be such as had been taken by Force out of other Ships, or wheeld'd away when they were drunk: And in a Word, he told me, there never was a Ship-load of such Penitents went to Sea together as he would bring us: when he had said so, he began to move me that I would please to give him the same Post which he held in the Ship; (*viz.*) of Gunner, which I promised him; and then he desir'd I would permit him to speak with me in Private; I was not at first very free to it, but he having consented to let the Mate and Captain *Merlotte* be present, I yielded.

When all the rest were withdrawn, he told me, that having been five Years in the Pyrates Service, as he might call it, and being obliged to do as they did, I might be sure he had some small  
Share

Share in the Purchase; and however, he had come into it against his Will, yet as he had been oblig'd to go with them, he had made some Advantage; and that being resolv'd to leave them, he had a good while ago pack'd up some of the best of what he had got, to make his Escape, and begg'd I would let him deposite it with me as a Security for his Fidelity. Upon this, he order'd a Chest to be taken out of the Shallop, and brought into my great Cabbin; and besides this, gave me out of his Pocket, a Bag seal'd up, the Contents of which, I shall speak of hereafter.

The Shallop return'd the next Day, and I sent back the Mate with my Long Boat and twenty four Men, to go and take Possession of the Ship, and appointed my Carpenter to go and see to the Repairs that were necessary to be done to her: And some Days after, I sent Captain *Merlotte* with the *Supra Cargo* in our Sloop, to go and secure the Possession, and to cover the Retreat of any of the Men that might have a Mind to come away, and might be oppos'd by the rest: And this was done at the Request of the Gunner, who foresaw there might be some Squabble about it.

They spent six Weeks and some odd Days in fitting out this Ship, occasioned by the want of a convenient place to lay her on Shore in, which they were oblig'd to make with a great deal of Labour, however, she was compleatly fitted up: When she was fitted, they laid in a good Store of Provisions, tho' not so well cur'd as to last a great while; One of the best Things we got a Recruit of here, was Casks, which *as before* we greatly wanted, and which their Coopers assisted us to trim, season, and fit up.

As to Bread, we had no Help from them ; for they not only had none but what they made of Rice, but they had no sufficient Store of that, as I have hinted before.

But we had more to do yet : For when the Ship was fitted up, and our Men had the Possession of her, they were surpriz'd one Morning on a sudden, with a most horrible Tumult among the Pyrates ; and had not our Brigantine been at hand, (as above) to secure the Possession, I believe they had taken the Ship from our Men again, and perhaps have came down with her and their two Sloops, and have attack'd us. The Case was this,

The Gunner, who was a punctual Fellow to his Word, resolv'd that none of the Men should go in the Ship, but such as he had singl'd out ; and they were such, as were generally Men taken out of Merchants Ships, by Force, as before : But when he came to talk to the Men of who and who should go, and stay ; truly they wou'd all go, to a Man, there was not a Man of them wou'd stay behind ; and, in a Word, they fell out about it, to that Degree, that they came to Blows, and the Gunner was forced to fly for it, with about twenty two Men that stood to him, and six or seven were wounded in the Fray, whereof two died.

The Gunner being thus driven to his Shifts, made down to the Shore to his Boat, but the Rogues were too nimble for him, and had got to his Boat before him, and prepar'd to man her and two more, to go on Board and secure the Ship : In this Distress, the Gunner, who had taken Sanctuary in the Woods at about a Mile distance, but unhappily above the Camp, so that  
the

the Platform of Guns was between him and the Ship, had no Remedy, but to fend one of his Men who swam very well, to take a Compass round behind the Pyrates Camp, and come to the Water side below the Camp and Platform, so to take the Water and swim on Board the Ship, which lay near a League below their said Camp, and give our Men Notice of what had happened, to warn them to suffer none of their Men to come on Board, unless the Gunner was with them, and if possible, to fend a Boat on Shore to fetch off the Gunner and his Men, who were following by the same way, and would be at the same place, and make a Signal to them to come for him.

Our Men had scarce receiv'd this Notice, when they saw a Boat full of Men put off from the Platform, and row down under Shore towards them: But as they resolv'd not to suffer them to come on Board, they call'd to them by a Speaking Trumpet, and told them they might go back again, for they should not come on Board, nor any other Boat, unless the Gunner was on Board.

They row'd on for all that, when our Men call'd to them again, and told them, if they offer'd to put off, in order to come on Board, or in short, to row down Shore any farther than a little Point which our Man nam'd, and which was just a head of them, they would fire at them: Well, they row'd on for all this, and that tho' they were past the Point; which our Men seeing, they immediately let fly a Shot, but fir'd a little a head of them, so as not to hit the Boat, and this brought them to a stop; so they lay upon their Oars a while, as if they were considering what to do; when our Men perceiv'd two Boats more come off from the Platform likewise, full  
of



of Men, and rowing after the first. Upon this, they call'd again to the first Boat with their Speaking Trumpet, and told them if they did not all go immediately on Shore, they would sink the Boat. They had no Remedy, seeing our Men resolv'd, and that they lay open to the Shot of the Ship; so they went on Shore accordingly, and then our Men fir'd at the empty Boat, till they split her in Pieces, and made her useless to them.

Upon this firing, our Brigantine, which lay about two Leagues off in the Mouth of a little Creek, on the *South* of that River, weigh'd immediately, and stood away to the opening of the Road where the Ship lay, and the Tide of Flood being still running in, they drove up towards the Ship for her Assistance, and came to an Anchor about a Cables Length a head of her, but within Pistol shot of the Shore; at the same time sending two and thirty of her Men on Board the great Ship to re-inforce the Men on Board, who were but sixteen in Number.

Just at this time, the Gunner and his twenty one Men, who heard the firing, and had quicken'd their Pace, tho' they had a great Compass to fetch, thro' Woods and untrod Paths, and some Luggage to carry too, were come to the Shore, and made the Signal, which our Men in the Ship observing, gave Notice to the Officer of the Brigantine to fetch them on Board, which he did very safely; by the way, as the Officer afterwards told us, most of their Luggage consisted in Money, with which it seems every Man of them was very well furnish'd, having shared their Wealth at their first coming on Shore: As for Clothes, they had very few, and those all in  
Rags;

Rags; and as for Linnen, they had scarce a Shirt among them all, or Linnen enough to have made a white Flag for a Truce, if they had had Occasion for it: In short, a Crew so rich and so ragged, were hardly ever seen before.

The Ship was now pretty well mann'd, for the Brigantine carried the Gunner and his twenty one Men on Board her; and the Tide by this time being spent, she immediately unmoor'd, and loos'd her Top Sails, *which, as it happen'd, had been bent to the Yards two Days before,* so with the first of the Ebb, she weigh'd and fell down about a League farther, by which she was quite out of Reach of the Platform, and rid in the open Sea; and the Brigantine did the same.

But by this Means, they miss'd the Occasion of the rest of the Gunner's Men, who having got together to the Number of between seventy and eighty, had follow'd him and come down to the Shore, and made the Signals, but were not understood by our Ship, which put the poor Men to great Difficulties; for they had broken away from the rest by Force, and had been pursued half a Mile by the whole Body, and particularly at the Entrance into a very thick, woody place, were so hard put to it, that they were oblig'd to make a desperate stand, and fire at their old Friends, which had exasperated them to the last Degree. But as the Case of these Men was desperate, they took an effectual Method for their own Security, of which I shall give a farther Account presently.

The general Body of the Pyrates were now up in Arms, and the new Ship was, as it were, in open War with them, or at least they had declar'd War against it: But as they had been disappointed

in their Attempt to force it, and found they were not strong enough at Sea to attack it, they sent a Flag of Truce on Board. Our Men admitted them to come to the Ship side, but as my Mate, who now had the Command, knew them to be a Gang of desperate Rogues that would attempt any thing, tho' never so rash, he order'd that none of them should come on Board the Ship, except the Officer and two more, who gave an Account that they were sent to treat with us. So we call'd them the Ambassadors.

When they came on Board, they expostulated very warmly with my new Agent the second Mate, that our Men came in the Posture of Friends, and of Friends too in Distress, and had receiv'd Favours from them, but had abused the Kindness, which had been shewn them; that they had bought a Ship of them, and had had Leave and Assistance to fit her up and furnish her; but had not paid for her, or paid for what Assistance and what Provisions had been given to them: And that now to compleat all, their Men had been partially and unfairly treated, and when a certain Number of Men had been granted us, an inferior Fellow a Gunner was set to call such and such Men out, just who he pleased, to go with us; whereas the whole Body ought to have had the appointing who they wou'd or wou'd not give Leave to, to go in the Ship: That when they came in a peaceable manner to have demanded Justice, and to have treated amicably of these Things, our Men had denied them Admittance, had committed Hostilities against them, had fir'd at their Men and stav'd their Boat, and had afterward receiv'd on Board their Deserters, all  
contrary

contrary to the Rules of Friendship. And in all these Cases they demanded Satisfaction.

Our new Commander was a ready Man enough, and he answer'd all their Complaints with a great deal of Gravity and Calmness: He told them, that it was true we came to them as Friends, and had receiv'd friendly Usage from them, which we had not in the least dishonour'd; but that as Friends in Distress, we had never pretended to be, and really were not; for that we were neither in Danger of any thing, or in Want of any thing; that as to Provisions, we were strong enough, if need were, to procure our selves Provisions in any part of the Island, and had been several times supplied from the Shore by the Natives, for which we had always fully satisfied the People who furnish'd us; and that we scorn'd to be ungrateful for any Favour we should have receiv'd, much less to abuse it, or them for it.

That we had paid the full Price of all the Provisions we had receiv'd, and for the Work that had been done to the Ship, that what we had bargain'd for, as the Price of the Ship, had been paid; as far as the Agreement made it due, and that what remain'd, was ready to be paid as soon as the Ship was finished, which was our Bargain.

That as to the People who were willing to take Service with us, and enter themselves on Board, it is true, that the Gunner and some other Men offered themselves to us, and we had accepted of them, and we thought it was our part to accept or not to accept of such Men as we thought fit. As for what was among themselves, that we had nothing to do with; that if we had been publickly warn'd by them not to have entertain'd



any of their Men, but with Consent of the whole Body, then indeed we should have had Reason to be cautious; otherwise, we were not in the least concern'd about it. That it is true, we refused to let their Boats come on Board us, being assured that they came in a hostile manner, either to take away the Men by Force, which had been entred in our Service, or perhaps even to seize the Ship it self; and why else was the first Boat follow'd by two more full of Men, arm'd and prepar'd to attack us; that we not only came in a friendly manner to them, but resolv'd to continue in Friendship with them, if they thought fit to use us as Friends; but that considering what part of the World we were in, and what their Circumstances were, they must allow us to be upon our Guard, and not put our selves in a Condition to be used ill.

While he was talking thus with them in the Cabbin, he had ordered a Can of Flip to be made, and given their Men in the Boat, and every one a Dram of the Bottle, but would not suffer them to come on board; however one or two of them got leave to get in at one of the Ports, and got between Decks among our Men; here they made terrible Complaints of their Condition, and begg'd hard to be entertain'd in our Service; they were full of Money, and gave twenty or thirty Pieces of Eight among our Men, and by this Present prevail'd for two Men to speak to my Mate, who appear'd as Captain to take the Boat's Crew on board; the Mate very gravely told the two Ambassadors of it, and told them, that seeing they were come with a Flag of Truce, he would not stop their Men, without  
their

their Consent, but the Men being so earnest, he thought, they would do better not to oppose them; the Ambassadors, as I call them, oppos'd it however vehemently, and at last desir'd to go and talk with the Men, which was granted them readily; When they came into their Boat, their Men told them plainly, that *One and all* they would enter themselves with their Country Men, that they had been forc'd already to turn Pyrates, and they thought, they might very justly turn honest Men again by Force, if they could not get Leave to do it peaceably; and that in short, they would go on Shore no more; that if the Ambassadors desir'd it, they would set them on Shore with the Boat, but as for themselves, they would go along with the new Captain.

When the Ambassadors saw this, they had no more to do, but to be satisfied, and so were set on Shore, where they desir'd, and their Men staid on Board.

During this Transaction, my Mate had sent a full Account to me of all that had pass'd, and had desir'd me to come on board, and give farther Directions in all that was to come; so I took our *Supra Cargo* and Captain *Merlotte* along with me, and some more of our Officers, and went to them; it was my Lot to come on board, just when those famous Ambassadors were talking with my Mate, so I heard most of what they had to say, and heard the Answer my Mate gave them, as above, which was extremely to my Satisfaction; nor did I interrupt him, or take upon me any Authority, tho' he would very submissively have had me shewn my self, as Captain, but I

bid him go on, and sat down, as not concern'd in the Affair at all.

After the Ambassadors were gone, the first thing I did, was, in the Presence of all the Company, and having before had the Opinion of those I brought with me, to tell my second Mate, how well we were all satisfi'd with his Conduct, and to declare him, Captain of the Ship, that he was in; only demanding his solemn Oath, to be under Orders of the great Ship, as Admiral; and to carry on no separate Interest from us, which he thankfully accepted, and to give him his Due, as faithfully perform'd, all the rest of our very long Voyage, and thro' all our Adventures.

It was upon my seeming Intercession, that he gave Consent to the Boat's Crew, who brought the Ambassadors, to remain in our Service, and set their Statesmen on shore; and in fine, I told him, that as far as about one hundred and fifty, or two hundred Men, he should entertain who he thought fit; thus having settl'd all things in the Ship to our Satisfaction, we went back to our great Ship the next day.

I had not been many hours on board our Ship, but I was surprz'd with the firing of three Musquets from the Shore; we wondred what should be the meaning of it, knowing, that it was an unusual Thing in that Place, where we knew the *Natives* of the Country had no Fire-Arms, so we knew not what to make of it, and therefore took no Notice of it, other than as I say, to wonder at it; about half an hour after that, we heard three Musquets more, and still not knowing any thing of the Matter, we made them no Return to the Signal; some Time after, three Muskets were fir'd again, but all was one, we took no  
Notice,

Notice, for we knew nothing, of what Return was to be made to it.

When Night came on, we observ'd two great Fires upon two several Hills, on that Part of the Shore, opposite to us, and after that, three Rockets were fir'd, such as they were, but they went off ill; I suppose their Gunner was ill provided for such Things, but all signified nothing; we would ha' made any Return to them, that had been to be understood, but we knew nothing of any agreed Signal; however I resolv'd, that in the Morning I would send a Boat on Shore, well mann'd, to learn if possible, what the Meaning of all this was; and accordingly in the Morning, I sent our long Boat and Shallop on Shore, with two and thirty Men in them both, to get Intelligence; ordering them if possible, to speak with some Body, before they went on Shore, and know, how things stood; that then, if it was a Party of the Pyrates, they should, by no means, come near them, but parley at a Distance, till they knew, what the Meaning of it all was.

As soon as my Men came near the Shore, they saw plainly, that it was a Body of near an hundred of the Pyrates, but seeing them so strong, they stood off, and would not come nearer, nor near enough, to parly with them, upon this the Men on Shore, got one of the Islanders Canvas Boats, or rather, Boats, made of Skins, which are but sorry ones at best, and put off with two Men, to manage the Sail, and one Sitter, and two Paddles for Oars, and away they came toward us, carrying a Flag of Truce, that is to say, an old white Rag; how they came to save so much Linnen among them all, was very hard to say.



Our Men could do no less, than receive their Amdassador, and a Flag of Truce gave no Shadow of Apprehension, especially considering the Figure they made, and that the Men on Shore had no other Boats to surprize or attack us with; so they lay by upon their Oars, till they came up, when they soon understood who they were; viz. that they were the Gunner's selected Men, that they came too late, to have their Signal perceiv'd from the other Ship, which was gone out of sight of the Place they were directed to; that they had with great Difficulty, and five Days and Nights marching, got thro' a woody and almost unpassable Country to come at us; that they had fetch'd a Circuit of near an hundred Miles, to avoid being attack'd by their Comrades, and that they were pursued by them, with their whole Body, and therefore they beg'd to be taken on board; they said if they should be overtaken by their Comrades, they should be all cut in Peices, for that they had broke away from them by Force, and moreover had been oblig'd at the first of their Pursuit, to face about, and fire among them, by which they had kill'd six or seven of them, and wounded others, and that they had sworn, they would give them no Quarter, if they could come fairly up with them.

Our Men told them, they must be contented to remain on Shore, where they were, for some Time, for that they could do nothing, till they had been on board, and acquainted their Captain with all the particulars, so they came back immediately to me for Orders.

As to me, I was a little uneasy at the Thoughts of taking them on board; I knew they were a Gang of Pyrates at best, and what they might do

I knew

I knew not, but I sent them this Message, that tho' all their Tale might be very good for ought I knew, yet that I must take so much Time, as to send an Express to the Captain of the other Ship, to be inform'd of the Faith of it; and that if he brought a satisfactory Answer, I would send for them all on board.

This was very uncomfortable News to them, for they expected to be surrounded every Hour by their Comrades, from whom they were to look for no Mercy; however seeing no Remedy, they resolv'd to march about twenty Miles farther South, and lie by in a Place near the Sea, where we agreed to send to them; concluding, that their Comrades not finding them near the place where we lay, would not imagine, they could be gone farther that way; As they guess'd, so it prov'd, for the Pyrates came to the Shore, where they saw Tokens enough of their having been there, but concluded, that seeing they could not be found there, they were all gone on board our Ship.

The Wind proving contrary, it was no less than four Days before our Boat came back, so that the poor Men were held in great Suspence: But when they returned, they brought the Gunner with them, who had selected those Men from all the rest for our new Ship; and who, when he came, gave me a long Account of them, and what Care he had taken to pick them out for our Service, delivering me also a Letter from my new Captain to the same Purpose: Upon all which concurring Circumstances, we concluded to take them on board; so we sent our Boats for them, who at twice brought them all on board, and very stout honest Fellows they were.

When

When they had been on board some Days and refresh'd themselves, I concluded to send them all on board the new Ship; but upon Advice, I resolv'd to send sixty of my own Men joyn'd to forty of these, and keep thirty four of them on board my Ship; for their Number was just seventy four, which with the Gunner and his twenty one Men, and the sixteen Men who came with the worthy Embassadors, and would not go on Shore again, made one hundred and twelve Men; and as we all thought were enough for us, tho' we took in between forty and fifty more afterwards.

We were now ready to go to Sea, and I caus'd the new Ship and the Brigantine to come away from the Place where they lay and joyn us; which they did, and then we unloaded Part of our Provisions and Ammunition; of which, as I observ'd at first, we had taken in double Quantity; and having furnished the new Ship, with a Proportion of all Things necessary, we prepar'd for our Voyage.

I should here give a long Account of a second devilish Conspiracy, which my two remaining Prisoners had form'd among the Men; which was to betray the new Ship to the Pyrates: But 'tis too long a Story to put in here; nor did I make it publick among the Ship's Company: But as it was only, *as it were*, laid down in a Scheme, and that they had no Opportunity to put it in Practice, I thought it was better to make as little Noise of it as I could. So I order'd my new Captain, *for it was he who discovered it to me*, to punish them in their own Way, and without taking Notice of their new Villanies, to set them on Shore, and leave them to take their Fate with

with a Set of Rogues, who they had intended to joyn with, and whose Profession was likely, some Time or other, to bring them to the Gallows. And thus I was rid of two incorrigible Mutineers; what became of them afterwards I never heard.

We were now a little Fleet, (*viz.*) two large Ships and a Brigantine, well mann'd, and furnish'd with all sorts of Necessaries for any Voyage or any Enterprize that was fit for Men in our Posture to undertake; and particularly here, I made a full Design of the whole Voyage, to be again openly declared to the Men, and had them ask'd, One by One, if they were willing and resolv'd to undertake it, which they all very chearfully answered in the Affirmative.

Here we had Opportunity to furnish our selves with a vast Stock of excellent Beef, which as I said before, we cur'd with little or no Salt, by drying it in the Sun; and I believe we laid in such a Store, that in all our three Vessels we had near an hundred and fifty Tun of it; and it was of excellent Use to us, and serv'd us thro' the whole Voyage: There was little else to be had in this Place that was fit to be carried to Sea; except, that as there was plenty of Milk, some of our Men that were more dexterous than others, made several large Cheeses; nor were they very far short of *English* Cheese, only that we were but indifferent Dairy-Folks: Our Men made some Butter also, and salted it to keep, but it grew rank and oily, and was of no Use to us.

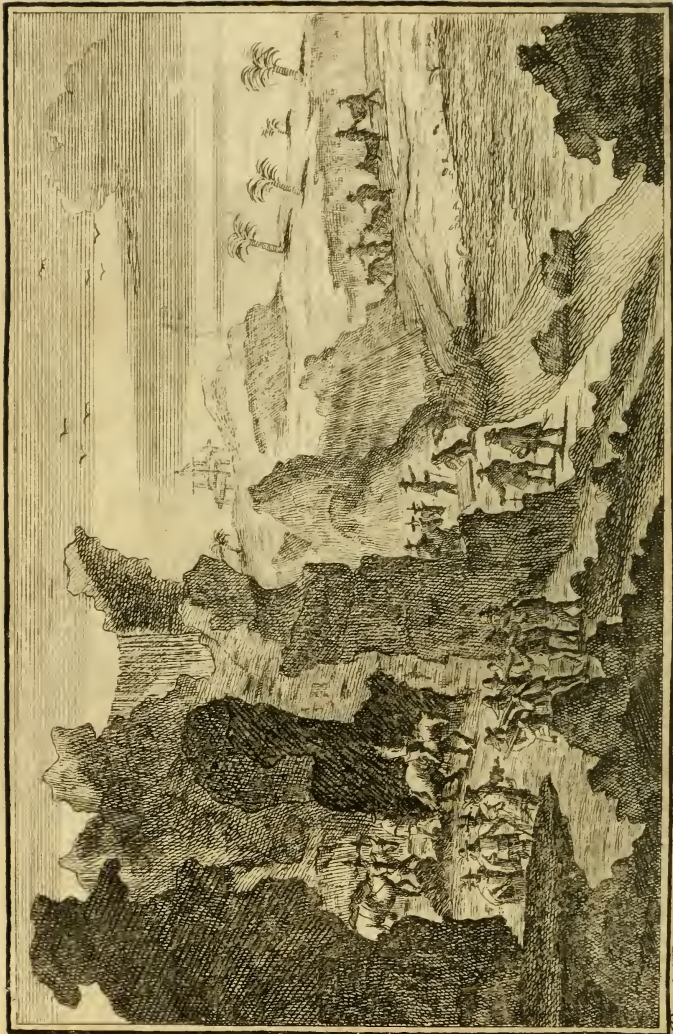
It was on the fifteenth of *December* that we left this Place, a Country fruitful, populous, full of Cattle, large and excellent good Beef,  
and



and very fat; and the Land able to produce all Manner of good Things; but the People wild, naked, black, barbarous, perfectly untractable, and insensible of any State of Life being better than their own.

We stood away toward the Shore of *Arabia*, till we past the Line, and came into the Latitude of eighteen Degrees *North*, and then stood away *East*, and *E. by N.* for the *English* Factories of *Surrat*, and the Coast of *Malabar*; not that we had any Business there, or design'd any, only that we had a mind to take on Board a Quantity of Rice, if we could come at it; which at last we effected by a *Portuguese* Vessel, which we met with at Sea, bound to *Goa* from the Gulph of *Persia*. We chas'd her and brought her too indeed, as if we resolv'd to attack and take the Ship; but finding a Quantity of Rice on Board, which was what we wanted, with a Parcel of Coffee; we took all the Rice, but paid the *Supra Cargo*, who was a *Persian* or *Armenian* Merchant, very honestly for the whole Parcel, his full Price, and to his Satisfaction: As for the Coffee we had no Occasion for it: We put in at several Ports on the *Indian* Coast for fresh Water, and fresh Provisions, but came near none of the Factories, because we had no mind to discover our selves; for tho' we were to sail thro' the very Center of the *India* Trade, yet it was perfectly without any Business among them. We met indeed on this Coast with some Pearl Fishers, who had been in the Mouth of the *Arabian* Gulph, and had a large Quantity of Pearl on Board. I would have traded with them for Goods, but they understood nothing but Money, and I refus'd to part with it: Upon which, the Fellows gave our *Supra*  
*Cargo*





*Cargo* some scurvy Language, which, tho' he did not well understand what they said, yet he pretended to take it as a great Affront, and threatned to make Prize of their Barks, and Slaves of the Men; upon which, they grew very humble; and one of them, a *Malabar Indian*, who spoke a little *English*, spoke for them, that they would willingly trade with us for such Goods as we had; whereupon I produced three Bales of *English* Cloth, which I shew'd them, would be of good Merchandise at *Gombaroon* in the Gulph, for that the *Persians* made their long Vests of such Cloths.

In short, for this Cloth, and some Money, we bought a Box of choice Pearls, which the Chief of them had pick'd out from the rest for the *Portuguese* Merchants at *Goa*; and which, when I came to *London*, was valued at two thousand two hundred Pound Sterling.

We were near two Months on our Voyage from *Madagascar* to the Coast of *India*, and from thence to *Ceylon*, where we put in, on the *South West* Part of the Island, to see what Provisions we could get, and to take in a large Supply of Water. The People here we found willing to supply us with Provisions; but withal, so sharp, imposing upon us their own Rates for every Thing; and withal, so false, that we were often provoked to treat them very rudely. However, I gave strict Orders that they should not be hurt upon any Occasion; at least, 'till we had fill'd all our Water Cask, and taken in what fresh Provisions we could get, and especially Rice, which we valued very much: But they provok'd us at last beyond all Patience; for they were such Thieves when they were on Board, and such treache-



treacherous Rogues when we were on Shore; that there was no bearing it; and two Accidents fell out upon this Occasion, which fully broke the Peace between us; one was on Board, and the other was on Shore, and both happened the same Day. The Case on Board was this; there came on Board us a small Boat, in which was eleven Men and three Boys, to sell us Roots, Yams, Mangoes, and such Stuff as it was frequent for them to do every Day; but this Boat having more Goods of that Kind than usual, they were longer than ordinary making their Market: While they were thus Chaffering on Board, one of them having wandred about the Ship, and pretending to admire every Thing he saw, and being gotten between Decks, was taken stealing a Pair of Shoes, which belong'd to one of the Seamen; the Fellow being stopt for his Theft, appear'd angry, rais'd a hideous skreaming Noise to alarm his Fellows; and at the same Time, having stolen a long Pair of Cissars, pull'd them out, and stabb'd the Man that had laid hold of him into the Shoulder, and was going to double his Blow, when the poor Fellow that had been wounded, having struck up his Heels and fallen upon him, had kill'd him, if I had not call'd to take him off, and bring the Theif up to me.

Upon this Order, they took up the *Barbarian*, and brought him up with the Shoes and the Cissars that he had stolen, and as the Fact was plain, and needed no Witnesses, I caus'd all the rest of them to be brought up also; and as well as we could, made them understand what he had done. They made pitiful Signs of Fear, lest they should all be punished for his Crime, and particularly when they saw the Man, who he had wounded

wounded brought in; then they expected nothing but Death, and they made a sad Lamentation and Howling, as if they were all to die immediately. It was not without a great deal of Difficulty that I found Ways to satisfy them, that noBody was to be punished but the Man that had committed the Fact; and then I caused him to be brought to the Geers, with a Halter about his Neck, and be soundly whipp'd; and indeed our People did scourge him severely from Head to Foot; and I believe, if I had not run my self to put an End to it, they had whipp'd him to Death.

When this Execution was over, they put him into their Boat and let them all go on Shore: But no sooner were they on Shore, but they raised a terrible Hubbub among all the Villages and Towns near them, and they were not a few, the Country being very Populous; and a vast Multitude of them came down to the Shore, staring at us, and making confused ugly Noises, and abundance of Arrows they shot at the Ship, but we rode too far from the Shore for them to do us any Hurt.

While this was doing, another Fray happen'd on Shore, where two of our Men Chaffering with an Islander and his Wife for some Fowls, they took his Money, or what else it was he was to give, and gave him Part of the Fowls, but they pretended the Woman should go and fetch the rest, while the Women was gone, three or four more of the same Sort came to the Man that was left, and talking a while together, seeing they were so many, and our Men but two, they began to take hold of the Fowls they had sold, and would take them away again; at  
which,

which, one of our Men step'd up to the Fellow that had taken them up, and went to lay hold of him, but he was too nimble for him, and ran away and carried off the Fowls and the Money too. The Scamen was so enrag'd to be serv'd so, that he took up his Piece, for they had both Fire Arms with them, and fir'd immediately after him, and aim'd his Shot so luckily, that tho' the Fellow flew like the Wind, he shot him thro' the Head, and he drop'd down dead upon the Spot.

The rest of them, tho' terribly frighted, yet seeing our Men were but two, and the Noise bringing twenty or thirty more immediately to them, attack'd our Men with their Lances, and Bows and Arrows; and in a Moment, there was a pitch'd Battle of two Men only against twenty or thirty, and their Number encreasing too.

In short, our Men spent their Shot freely among them as long as it lasted, and kill'd six or seven, besides wounding ten or eleven more; and this cool'd their Courage, and they seem'd to give over the Battel; and our Men, whose Ammunition was almost spent, began to think of retreating to their Boat, which was near a Mile off, for they were very unhappily gotten from their Boat so far up the Country.

They made their Retreat pretty well for about half the Way, when, on a sudden, they saw they were not pursu'd only, but surrounded, and that some of their Enemies were before them. This made them double their Pace, and seeing no Remedy, they resolv'd to break thro' those that were before them, who were about eleven or twelve: Accordingly, as soon as they came within Pistol shot of them, one of our Men  
having

having, for want of Shot, put almost a Handful of Gravel and small Stones into his Piece, and fired among them, and the Gravel and Stones scattering, wounded almost all of them; for they being naked from the Waste upwards, the least Grain of Sand scratch'd and hurt them, and made them bleed if it did but touch them.

Being thus compleatly scar'd, and indeed more afraid than hurt, they all run away, except two who were really wounded with the Shot or Stones, and lay upon the Ground: Our Men let them lye, and made the best of their Way to their Boat; where, at last, they got safe, but with five hundred of the People at their Heels; their Fellows did not stay to fire from the Boat, but put off with all the Speed they could, for fear of their poison'd Arrows, and the Country People pour'd so many of their Arrows into the Boat after them, and aim'd them also so true, that two of our Men were hurt with them; but whether they were poison'd or no, our Surgeons cur'd them both.

We had enough of *Ceylon*, and having no Business to make such a Kind of War as this must have been, in which we might have lost, but could get nothing, we weigh'd and stood away to the *East*; what became of the Fellow that we lash'd, we know not, but as he had but little Flesh left on his Back, which was not mangled, and torn with our whipping him, and we suppose, they are but indifferent Surgeons, our People said the Fellow could not live: and the Reason they gave for it, was because they did not pickle him after it. Truly, they said, that they would not be so kind to him as to pickle him: For tho' Pickling, that is to say, throwing



Salt and Vinegar on the Back after the whipping, be cruel enough, as to the Pain it is to the Patient, yet 'tis certainly the Way to prevent Mortification, and causes it to heal again with the more Ease.

We stood over from *Ceylon* E. S. E. cross the great Bay of *Bngal*, leaving all the Coast of *Coromandel*, and standing directly for *Anchin*, on the *North* Point of the great Island of *Sumatra*, and in the Latitude of six Degrees thirty one Minutes *North*.

Here we spread our *French* Colours, and coming to an Anchor, suffer'd none of our Men to go on Shore but Captain *Merlotte* and his *French* Men; and having nothing to do there, or any where else in the *Indian Seas*, but to take in Provisions and fresh Water, we staid but five Days; in which Time, we supply'd our selves with what the Place would afford; and pretending to be bound for *China*, we went on to the *South*, thro' the Streights of *Malacca*, between the Island of *Sumatra*, and the *Main* or *Isthmus* of *Malacca*.

We had here a very difficult passage, tho' we took two Pilots on Board at *Anchin*, who pretended to know the Streights perfectly well; twice we were in very great Danger of being lost, and once our *Madagascar* Ship was so entangled among Rocks and Currents, that we gave her up for lost, and twice she struck upon the Rocks, but she did but touch, and went clear.

We went several Times on Shore among the *Malayans*, as well on the Shore of *Malacca* it self, as on the Side of *Sumatra*: They are a fierce, cruel, treacherous, and merciless Crew of humane Devils as any I have met with on the Face  
of

of the whole Earth; and we had some Skirmishes with them, but not of any Consequence: We made no Stay any where in this Streight, but just for fresh Water, and what other fresh Provisions we could get, such as Roots, Greens, Hogs and Fowls, of which they have Plenty and a great Variety: But nothing to be had but for ready Money; which our Men took so unkindly, and especially their offering two or three Times to cheat them, and once to murder them; that after that, they made no Scruple to go on Shore a hundred or more at a Time, and plunder and burn what they could not carry off; till at last we began to be such a Terror to them, that they fled from us wherever we came.

On the fifth of *March* we made the *Southermost* Point of the *Isthmus* of *Mallacca*; and the Island, and Streights of *Sincapore*, famous for its being the great Outlet into the *Chinese Sea*, and lying in the Latitude of one Degree fifteen Minutes *North* Latitude.

We had good Weather thro' these Streights, which was very much to our Comfort; the different Currents, and Number of little Islands, making it otherwise very dangerous, especially to Strangers: We got by very good Luck, a *Dutch* Pilot to carry us thro' this Streight, who was a very useful skilful Fellow, but withal so very impertinent and inquisitive, that we knew not what to say to him nor what to do with him: At last he grew saucy and insolent, and told our chief Mate, that he did not know but we might be Pyrates, or at least Enemies to his Countrymen the *Dutch*; and if we would not tell him who we were, and whither we were bound, he would not Pilot us any farther:

This I thought very insolent, to a Degree beyond what was sufferable; and I bid the Boatswain put a Halter about the Fellow's Neck, and tell him, that the Moment he omitted to direct the Steerage as a Pilot, or the Moment the Ship came to any Misfortune, or struck upon any Rock, he should be truss'd up. The Boatswain, a rugged Fellow, provides himself with a Halter, and coming up to the Pilot, ask'd him, *What it was he wanted to be satisfied in?* The Pilot said, he desired to have a true Account whither we were going: *Why,* says the Boatswain, *we are a going to the Devil, and I shall send you before to tell him we are coming;* and with that, he pulls the Halter out of his Pocket, and puts it over his Head; and taking the other End of it in his Hand, *Come,* says the Boatswain, *come along with me; do you think we can't go thro' the Streight of Sincapore without your Help; I warrant you,* says he, *we will do without you.*

By this Time, you may suppose, the Dutch Man to be in a mortal Fright, and half choak'd too with being drag'd by the Throat with the Halter, and full heartily he begg'd for his Life: At Length, the Boatswain, who had pull'd him along a good Way, stopp'd, and the Dutch Man fell down on his Knees; but the Boatswain said, he had the Captain's Orders to hang him, and hang him he would, unless the Captain recall'd his Orders; but that he would stay so long, if any Body would go up to the Captain, and tell him what the Dutch Man said, and bring back an Answer.

• I had no Design to hang the poor Fellow, you may be sure, and the Boatswain knew that well enough: However, I was resolv'd to humble him

him effectually, so I sent back two Men to the Boatswain; the first was to tell the Boatswain aloud, that the Captain was resolv'd to have the Fellow hang'd, for having been so impudent to threaten to run the Ship a-Ground: But then the second, *who was to stay a little behind*, was to call out, as if he came since the first from me, and that I had been prevail'd with to pardon him, on his Promises of better Behaviour: This was all acted to the Life; for the first Messenger call'd aloud to the Boatswain, that the Captain said he would have the *Dutch Man* hang'd for a Warning to all Pilots, and to teach them not to insult Men when they are in Difficulties, as the Midwives do Whores in Travel, and won't deliver them till they confess who is the Father.

The Boatswain had the End of the Halter in his Hand all the while; *I told you so*, says he, *before, come, come along MYNHEER*, says he, *I shall quickly do your Work, and put you out of your Pain*; and then he dragg'd the poor Fellow along to the Main-mast: By this Time the second Messenger came in and delivered his Part of the Errand, and so the poor *Dutch Man* was put out of his Fright, and they gave him a Dram to restore him a little, and he did his Work very honestly afterwards.

And now we were got loose again, being in the open Sea, which was what we were very impatient for before. We had now a long Run over that Part which we call the Sea of *Borneo*, and the upper Part of the *Indian Arches*, call'd so for its being full of Islands, like the *Archipelague* of the *Levant*. It was a long Run, but as we were to the *North* of the Islands, we had the more Sea-room; so we steer'd *East* half a



Point, one Way or other for the *Manilla's*, or *Phillipine* Islands; which was the true Design of our Voyage, and, perhaps, we were the first Ship that ever came to those Islands freighted from *Europe* since the *Portuguese* lost their Footing there.

We put in on the *North* Coast of *Borneo* for fresh Water, and were civilly enough used by the Inhabitants of the Place, who brought us Roots, and Fruits of several Kinds, and some Goats, which we were glad of: We paid them in Trifles; such as Knives, Cissars, Toys, and several Sorts of wrought Iron, Hatchets, Hammers, Glass-work, Looking-glasses, Drinking-glasses, and the like. From hence we went away, as I say, for the *Phillipine* Islands. We saw several Islands in our Way, but made no stop except once for Water, and arriv'd at *Manilla* the twenty second of *May*, all our Vessels in very good Condition, our Men healthy, and our Ships found; having met with very few contrary Winds, and not one Storm in the whole Voyage from *Madagascar*, having been seventeen Months and two Days on the Voyage from *England*.

When we came hither, we saluted the *Spanish* Flag, and came to an Anchor, carrying *French* Colours: Captain *Merlotte*, who now acted as Commander, sends his Boat on Shore the next Day to the Governor with a Letter in *French* very respectful; and telling the Governor, that having the King of *France's* Commission, and being come into those Seas, he hop'd, that for the Friendship which was between their Most Christian and Catholick Majesties, he should be allow'd the Freedom of Commerce, and the Use of the Port; the like having been granted to his Most  
Christian

Christian Majesty's Subjects in all the Ports of *New Spain*, as well in the *Southern* as in the *Northern Seas*.

The *Spanish* Governor returned a very civil and obliging Answer, and immediately granted us to buy what Provisions we pleased for our Supply, or any Thing else for our Use; but answered, that as for allowing any Exchange of Merchandizes, or giving Leave for *European* Goods to be brought on Shore there, that he was not empower'd to grant.

We made as if this Answer was satisfactory enough to us; and the next Morning, Captain *Merlotte* sent his Boat on Shore with all *French* Sailors, and a Midship-man *French*, with a handsome Present to the Governor; consisting of some Bottles of *French* Wine, some Brandy, two Pieces of Fine *Holland*, two Pieces of *English* black Bays, one Piece of fine *French* Drugget, and five Yards of Scarlet Woollen Cloth.

This was two considerable a Present for a *Spaniard* to refuse; and yet these were all *European* Goods, which he seem'd not to allow to come on Shore. The Governor let the Captain know, that he accepted his Present; and the Men who brought it, were very handsomely entertained by the Governor's Order, and had every one a small Piece of Gold; and the Officer who went at their Head, had five Pieces of Gold given him: What Coin it was I could not tell, but I think it was a *Japan* Coin, and the Value something less than a Pistole.

The next Day the Governor sent a Gentleman with a large Boat, and in it a Present to our Captain; containing two Cows, ten Sheep or Goats rather, for they were between both; a vast

Number of Fowls of several Sorts, and twelve great Boxes of Sweetmeats and Conserves, which were indeed very valuable ; and invited the Captain and any of his Attendants on Shore, offering to send Hostages on Board for our safe return ; and concluding with his Word of Honour for our Safety, and free going back to our Ships.

The Captain received the Present with very great Respect, and indeed it was a very noble Present ; for at the same Time a Boat was sent to both the other Ships with Provisions and Sweetmeats, in Proportion to the Bigness of the Vessels. Our Captain caused the Gentleman who came with this Present, to have a fine Piece of Crimson *English* Cloth given him sufficient to make a Wastecoa and Breeches of their Fashion, with a very good Hat, two Pair of Silk Stockings, and two Pair of Gloves ; and all his People had a Piece of Drugget given them sufficient to make them the like Suit of Clothes ; the Persons who went to the other Ship, and to the Brigantine, had Presents in Proportion.

This, in short, was neither more or less than Trading and Bartering, tho' for the Grimace of it, we were, in a Manner, deny'd. The next Day the Captain went on Shore to visit the Governor, and with him several of our Officers, and the Captain of the *Madagascar* Ship, formerly my second Mate, and the Captain of the Brigantine. I did not go my self for that Time, nor the *Supra Cargo*, because whatever might happen, I would be reserv'd on Board ; besides I did not care to appear in this Part of the Work.

The Captain went on Shore like a Captain, attended with his two Trumpeters, and the Ship firing eleven Guns at his going off. The Governor received him like himself, with prodigious State and Formality; sending five Gentlemen and a Guard of Soldiers to receive them at their Landing, and to conduct them to his Palace: when they came there, they were entertained with the utmost Profusion, and wonderful Magnificence, after the *Spanish* Manner; and they all had the Honour to dine with his Excellence, that is to say, all the Officers: At the same Time the Men were entertain'd very handsomely in another House, and had very good Cheer: But it was observ'd, that they had very little Wine, except such as we had sent them; which the Governor excused; his Store, which he had yearly from *New Spain*, being spent; which Deficiency we supply'd the next Day, and sent him a Quarter Cask of very good *Canary*, and a half Hogshed of *Madera*; which was a Present so acceptable, that in short, after this, we might do just as we pleased with him, and all his Men.

While they were thus conversing together, after Dinner, Captain *Merlotte* was made to understand, that tho' the Governor could not admit an open avow'd Trade, yet that the Merchants would not be forbid coming on Board our Ship, and Trading with us in such Manner as we should be very well satisfied with; after which, we should be at no Hazard of getting the Goods we should sell, put on Shore; and we had an Experiment of this made in a few Days as follows.

When



When Captain *Merlotte* took his leave of the Governour, he invited his Excellence to come on board our Ship, with such of his Attendants as he pleas'd to bring with him, and in like manner offered Hostages for his Return; the Governour accepted the Invitation, and with the same Generosity said, he would take his Parole of Honour given, as he was the King of *France's* Captain, and in the Name of his most Christian Majesty, and would come on board.

The Governour did not come to the Shore side with them, but stood in the Window of the Palace, and gave them his Hat and Leg at their going into their Boats, and made a Signal to the Platform, to fire eleven Guns at their Boats putting off.

These were unusual and unexpected Honours to us, who, but for this Stratagem of the *French* Commission, had been declared Enemies: It was suggested to me here, that I might with great Ease surprize the whole Island, nay all the Islands, the Governour putting such Confidence in us, that we might go on shore in the very Fort unsuspected: But tho' this was true, and that we did play them a Trick at the *Rio de la Plata*, I could not bear the Thoughts of it here; besides I had quite another Game to play, which also was more advantage to us and to our Voyage, than an Enterprize of so much Treachery could be to *England*, which also, we might not be able to support from *England*, before the *Spaniards* might beat us out again from *Acapulco*, and then we might pass our Time ill enough.

Upon the whole I resolv'd to keep every Punctilio with the Governour very justly, and we found our Account in it presently.

About

About three days afterwards we had Notice, that the Governour would make us a Visit, and we prepared to entertain his Excellence with as much State as possible; by the way we had private Notice, that the Governour would bring with him some Merchants, who perhaps might lay out some Money, and buy some of our Cargo; nor was it without a secret Intimation, that even the Governour himself was concern'd in the Market that should be made.

Upon this Intelligence, our *Supra Cargo* caus'd several Bales of *English* and *French* Goods to be brought up and open'd, and lay'd so in the Steerage and upon the Quarter Deck of the Ship, that the Governour and his Attendants should see them of course as they pass'd by.

When the Boats came off from the shore, which we knew by their Fort firing eleven Guns as before, our Ship appear'd as fine as we could make her, having the *French* Flag at the main Top as Admiral, and Streamers and Penants at the Yard Arms, waste Cloths out, and a very fine Awning over the Quarter Deck. When his Excellency enter'd the Ship, we fir'd one and twenty Guns, the *Madagascar* Ship fir'd the like Number, and the Brigantine fifteen, having loaded her Guns nimbly enough to fire twice.

As the Governour's Entertainment to us, was more Meat than Liquor, so we gave him more Liquor than Meat; for as we had several Sorts of very good Wines on board, we spar'd nothing to let him see, he was very welcome. After Dinner we brought a large Bowl of Punch upon the Table, which was a Liquor he did not understand at all: However to do him justice, he drank very moderately, and so did most of those that were with him,

him. As to the Men that belong'd to his Retinue, I mean Servants and Attendants and the Crews of the Boats, we made some of them drunk enough.

While this was doing, we found two Gentlemen of the Governour's Company, took Occasion to leave the rest and walk about the Ship, and in doing this, they seem'd as it were by chance to cast their Eyes, upon our Bales of Cloth and Stuffs, Bays, Linnen, Silks, &c, and our *Supra Cargo* and they began to make Bargains apace, for he found they had not onely Money enough, but had abundance of other Things, which we were as willing to take as Money, and of which they had brought Specimens with them; as particularly Spices, such as Cloves and Nutmegs, *China Ware*, Tea, Japan'd Ware, wrought Silks, raw Silk, and the like.

However our *Supra Cargo* dealt with them at present for Nothing but ready Money, and they paid all in Gold; the Price he made here, was to us indeed extravagant, tho' to them moderate, seeing they had been us'd to buy these Goods from the *Acapulco* Ships, which came in yearly, from whom, to be sure, they bought dear enough. They bought as many Goods at this Time, as they paid the Value of fifteen thousand Peices of Eight for, but all in Gold by Weight.

As for carrying them on Shore, the Governour being with them, no Officer had any Thing to say to them; it seems, they were carryed on Shore as Presents, made by us to the Governour and his Retinue.

The next Day three *Spanish* Merchants came on board us, early in the Morning before it was Light, and desir'd to see the *Supra Cargo*; they brought

brought with them a Box of Diamonds and some Pearl, and a great Quantity of Gold, and to work they went with our Cargo, and I thought once, they would have bought the whole Ship's Loading; but they contented themselves to buy about the Value of two and twenty thousand Peices of Eight, which, I suppose, might cost in *England*, one sixth Part of the Money, or hardly so much. We had some Difficulty about the Diamonds, because we did not understand them very much, but our *Supra Cargo* ventur'd upon them at eight thousand Peices of Eight, and took the rest in Gold: They desir'd to stay on Board till the next Night, when, soon after it was dark, a small Sloop came on Board, and took in all their Goods, and as we were told, carryed them away to some other Island.

The same Day and before these Merchants were gone, came a large Shallop on Board with a square Sail, towing after her a great heavy Boat, which had a Deck, but seem'd to have been a large Ship's long Boat, built into a Kind of Yatch, but ill masted, and sail'd heavily. In these two Boats they brought seven Tun of Cloves in Matts, some Chests of *China* Ware, some Pieces of *China* Silks, of several Sorts, and a great Sum of Money also.

In short, they sold so cheap and bought so dear, that our *Supra Cargo* declar'd, he would sell the whole Cargo for Goods, if they would bring them, for by his Calculation, he had dispos'd of as many Goods, as he receiv'd the Value of one hundred thousand Peices of Eight for, all which, by his Accounts did not amount to, first Cost, above three thousand Pounds Sterling in *England*. Our Ship was now an open Fair, for two or three  
Days



Days after came the Vessel back, which went away in the Night, and with them a *Chinese* Jonque, and seven or eight *Chineses* or *Japanners*; strange, ugly, ill looking Fellows they were, but brought a *Spaniard* to be their Interpreter, and they came to Trade also, bringing with them seventy great Chests of *China* Ware, exceeding fine, twelve Chests of *China* Silks of several Sorts, and some laquer'd Cabinets very fine. We dealt with them for all those, for our *Supra Cargo* swept all clean, and took every thing they brought. But they were more difficult in the Goods, for as for Bayes, and Druggets, and such Goods, they would not meddle with them; but our fine Cloths and some Bales of Linnen they bought very freely. So we unloaded their Vessel, and put our Goods on Board; we took a good Sum of Money of them besides, but whither they went we knew not, for they both came and went in the Night too, as the other did.

This Trade held a good while, and we found, that our Customers came more from other Islands, than from the Island where the Governour resided, the Reason of which, as we understood afterwards, was, because as the Governour had not openly granted a Freedom of Commerce, but privately wink'd at it, so they were not willing to carry it on openly before his Face, or *as we say*, under his Nose, whereas in other Islands, they could convey their Goods on Shore with very little Hazard, agreeing with the Custom-house Officer for a small Matter.

These Boats came and went thus several Times, till in short we had dispos'd almost of the whole Cargo; and now our Men began to be convinc'd, that we had lay'd out our Uoyage very right, for  
never

never was Cargo better sold ; and as we resolv'd to pursue our Voyage for new *Spain*, we had taken in a Cargo very proper to sell there, and so perhaps to double the Advantage we had already made.

In the mean Time, all our Hands were at Work to store our selves anew, with such Provisions, as could be had here for so long a Run, as we knew we were to have next; namely, over the vast *Pacifick* Ocean or *South Sea*, a Voyage where we might expect to see no Land for four Months, except we touch'd at the *Ladrones*, as it might happen ; and our greatest Anxiety was for Want of Water, which our whole Ship could scarce be able to stow sufficient for our Use, and if they could, our Want of Casks was still as bad as the Want of Water, for we really knew not what to put Water in when we had it.

The *Spaniards* had help'd us to some Casks but not many, those that they could spare were but small, and at last we were oblig'd to make use of about two hundred large earthen Jars, which were of singular Use to us. We got a large Quantity of good Rice here, which we bought of a *Chinese* Merchant, who came in here with a large *China* Vessel to trade, and who bought of us also several of our *European* Goods.

Just as we were ready to sail, a Boat came from the Town of *Manilla*, and brought a new Merchant, who wanted more *English* Goods, but we had but few left ; he brought with him thirty Chests of Callicoes, Muslins, wrought Silks, some of them admirably fine indeed, with fifteen Bales of Romals, and twelve Tun of Nutmegs. We sold them what Goods we had left, and gave them Money for the rest, but had them at a Price

Price so cheap, as was sufficient to let us know; that it was always well worth while, for Ships to trade from *Europe* to the *East Indias*; from whence they are sure to make five or six of one. Had more of these Merchants come on Board, we were resolv'd to have lay'd out all the Gold and Silver we had on Board, which, I assure you, was a very considerable Quantity.

The last Merchant, who came on Board us, was a *Spaniard*, but I found, that he spoke very good *French*, and some *English*, that he had been in *England* some Years ago, and understood *English* Woolen Manufactures very well; he told me, they had these Goods all from *Acapulco*, but that they were then excessive dear, he had considerable Dealings with the *Chineses*, and some with the Coast of *Coromandel*, and *Bengale*, and kept a Vessel or two of his own to go to *Bengal*, which generally went twice in a Year.

I found, he had great Business with new *Spain*, and that he generally had one of the *Acapulco* Ships chiefly consign'd to him; so that he was full of all such Goods, as those Ships generally carry'd away from the *Manilla's*, and had we traded with him sooner, we had had more Callicoes and Muslins, than we now had: However we were exceedingly well stor'd with Goods of all Sorts, suitable for a Market in *Peru*, whither I resolv'd to go.

We continued chaffering after this Manner about nine Weeks, during which Time, we carreen'd our Ships, clean'd their Bottoms, rummag'd our Gold, and repack'd some of our Provisions; endeavouring as much as possible, to keep all our Men as fully employ'd as we could, to preserve them

them in Health, and yet not to over work them, considering the Heat of the Climate.

Some Time before we were ready to sail, I call'd all the Warrant Officers together, and told them, that as we were come to a Country, where Abundance of small Things were to be bought, and going to a Country, where we might possibly have Room to sell them again to Advantage, I would advance to every Officer an hundred Dollars, upon Account of their Pay, that they might lay it out to their Advantage here, and dispose it again on the Coast of *New Spain*, this was very acceptable to them, and they acknowledg'd it; and here, besides this, by the Consent of all our Superior Officers, I gave a Largeſs or Bounty of five Dollars a Man, to all our Fore-Maſt Men; moſt of which, I believe, they lay'd out in Arrack and Sugar, to cheer them up in the reſt of the Voyage, which they all knew would be long enough.

We went away from *Marcilla* in the Island of *Luzon* or *Luconia* the fifteenth of the Month of *Auguſt*, and in the Year 1714. and failing a while to the *Southward*, paſſ'd the Straits between that Island, and *Mindanao*, another of the *Phillipines*, where we met with little extraordinary, except extraordinary Lightning and Thunders, ſuch as we never heard or ſaw before, tho' it ſeems, 'tis very familiar in that Climate; till about ſixteen Days failing, we ſaw the Iſle of *Guam*, one of the *Ladrões*, or Iſle of *Thieves*, for ſo much the Word imports; here we came to an Anchor *Sept. 3.* under the Lee of a ſteep Shore, on the *North* Side of the Iſle of *Guam*; but, as we wanted no Trade here, we did not at firſt enquire after the chief Port, or *Spaniſh* Governour, or any thing of that Kind; but we chang'd our Situation the next Day, and



went thro' the Passage, to the *East* Side of the Island, and came to an Anchor off of the Town.

The People came off, and brought us Hogs, and Fowls, and several Sorts of Roots, and Greens, Things, which we were very glad of, and which we bought the more of, because we always found, that such Things were good to keep the Men from the Scurvy, and even to cure them of it, if they had it; we took in fresh Water here also, tho' it was with some Difficulty, the Water lying half a Mile from the Shore.

When I parted from *Manilla*, and was getting thro' the Strait between the Island *Lucon*, and that of *Mindanao*, I had some Thoughts of steering away *North*, to try, what Land we might meet with to the *North East* of the *Phillipines*; and with Intent to have endeavour'd to make up into the Latitude of fifty or sixty Degrees, and have come about again to the *South*, between the Island of *California*, and the main Land of *America*; in which Course, I did not question, meeting with extraordinary new Discoveries, and perhaps such as the Age might not expect to hear of, relating to the *Northern* World, and the Possibility of a Passage out of those Seas, either *East* or *West*, both which, I doubt not, would be found, if they were search'd after this Way; and which, for ought I know, remain undiscovered for want only of an Attempt being made by those Seas, where it would be easy to find, whether the *Tartarian* Seas are navigable or not? And whether *Nova Zembla* be an Island, or joyn'd to the Main? Whether the Inlets of *Hudson's Bay* have any opening into the *West* Sea, and whether the vast Lakes, from whence the great River of *Canada* is said to flow, have any Communication this Way, or not.

But

But tho' these were valuable Discoveries, yet when I began to cast up the Account in a more serious Manner, they appear'd to have no Relation to, or Coherence with our intended Voyage, or with the Design of our Employers; which we were to consider in the first Place; for tho' it is true, that we were encourag'd to make all such Kinds of useful Discoveries, as might tend to the Advantage of Trade, and the Improvement of Geographical Knowledge and Experience; yet it was all to be so directed, as to be subservient to the Profits and Advantages of a trading and cruising Voyage.

It is true, that these *Northern* Discoveries might be inimitably fine, and most glorious Things to the *British* Nation, and infinitely for the future Advantage of Commerce in general: yet, as I have said, it was evident, that they tended directly to destroy the Voyage, either as to trading, or to cruising, and might perhaps end in our own Destruction also; for Example; first of all, if adventuring into those *Northern* Seas, we should, by our Industry, make out the Discovery, and find a Passage, either *East* or *West*; we must follow the Discovery so, as to venture quite thro', or else we could not be sure, that it was really a Discovery; for these Passages would not be like doubling *Cape de Bon Esperance*, on the Point of *Africa*; or going round *Cape Horn*, the *Southernmost* Point of *America*, either of which were compass'd in a few Days, and then immediately gave an opening into the *Indian* or *Southern* Oceans, where good Weather and certain Refreshment were to be had:

Whereas, for the Discovery in the *North*, after having pass'd the *Northernmost* Land of *Grand Tartary*, in the Latitude of seventy four; even to

eighty Degrees, and perhaps to the very *North Pole*: there must be a Run *West*, beyond the most *Northerly* Point of *Nova Zembla*, and on again *W. S. W.* about the *North Kyn* and *North Cape* above six hundred Leagues, before we could come to have any Relief of the Climate after that, one hundred and sixty Leagues more, and even to *Shetland* and the *North* of *Scotland*, before we could meet with any Relief of Provisions, which, after the Length we must have run, from the Latitude of three Degrees and an half, where we now were at the *Phillipine*, Islands, to seventy four, Degrees *North* being near five thousand Miles, would be impossible to be done; unless we were sure to victual, and furnish our selves again, with Provisions and Water by the Way, and that in several Places.

As to the other Passage *East*, towards the Continent of *America*, we had 'this uncertainty also; namely, that it was not yet discover'd, whether the Land of *California* was an Island, or a Continent, and if it should prove the latter, so as that we should be oblig'd to come back to the *West*, and not be able to find an Opening, between *California* and the Land of *North America*, so as to come away to the Coast of *Mexico*, to *Acapulco*, and so into the *South Sea*, and at the same Time should not find a Passage thro' *Hudson's Bay*, &c. into the *North Sea*, and so to *Europe*: we should not only spoil the Voyage that Way also, but should infallibly perish by the Severity of the Season, and want of Provisions.

All these Things argued against any Attempt that Way; whereas on the other Hand, for *Southern* Discoveries we had this particular Encouragement; that what ever Disappointment we might meet with, in the Search after unknown Countries

tries, yet we were sure of an open Sea behind us; and that when ever we thought fit, to run *South* beyond the *Tropick*, we should find innumerable Islands, where we might get Water, and some Sort of Provisions, or come back into a favourable Climate, and have the Benefit of the Trade Winds, to carry us either backward or forward, as the Season should happen to guide us.

Last of all, we had this Assurance, that, the Dangers of the Seas excepted, we were sure of an Outlet, before us, if we went forward, or behind us, if we were forc'd back, and having a rich Cargo, if we were to do nothing but go home, we should be able to give our Employers such an Account of our selves, as that they would be very far from being Losers by the Voyage; but that if we reach'd safe to the Coast of *New Spain*, and met with an open Commerce there, as we expected, we should perhaps make the most prosperous Voyage, that was ever made round the Globe before.

These Considerations put an End to all my Thoughts of going *Northward*; some of our secret Council, for by the way, we consulted our Foremast Men no more, but had a secret Council among our selves, the Resolutions of which we solemnly engag'd not to disclose: Some of these, I say, were for steering the usual Course, from the *Phillipines* to *New Spain*, viz. keeping in the Latitudes of eleven or thirteen Degrees, *North* of the Line, and so making directly for *California*; in which Latitude they propos'd, that we might perhaps, by cruising there about, meet with the *Manilla* Ships, going from *New Spain* to *Manilla*, which we might take as a Prize, and then stand directly for the Coast of *Peru*.



But I oppos'd this; principally, because it would effectually overthrow all my meditated Discoveries to the *Southward*; and secondly, because I had observ'd, that on the *North* of the Line, there are no Islands to be met with, in all the long Run, of near two thousand Leagues, from *Guam* one of the *Ladrones*, to the Land of *California*; and that we did not find, we were able to subsist during so long a Run, especially for Want of Water; whereas on the *South* of the Line, as well within the *Tropick* as without, we were sure to meet with Islands innumerable, and that even all the Way; so that we were sure of frequent Relief of fresh Water, of Plants, Fowl, and Fish, if not of Bread and Flesh, almost all the Way.

This was a main Consideration to our Men, and so we soon resolv'd to take the *Southern Course*; yet, as I said, we stood away for the *Ladrones* first; these are a Cluster of Islands, which lie in about eleven to thirteen Degrees *North* Latitude, *North East* from the *Moluccoes*, or Spice Islands, and *E. and by N.* from that Part of the *Phillipines* where we were, and at the Distance of about four hundred Leagues, and all the Ships, which go or come between the *Phillipines* and *New Spain*, touch at them, for the Convenience of Provisions, Water, &c. those, that go to *Spain*, put in there, in Order to recruit and furnish for, and those that come from *Spain*, to relieve themselves *after* so long a Run as that of six thousand Miles, for so much it is at least from *Guam* to *Acapulco*; on these Accounts, and with these Reasonings, we came to the Isles of the *Ladrones*.

During our Run between the *Phillipine* and *Ladron* Islands, we liv'd wholly upon our fresh Provisions, of which we laid in a great Stock at *Manilla*,

*nilla*, such as Hogs, Fowls, Calves, and six or seven Cows, all alive, so that our *English* Beef and Pork, which lay well stor'd, was not touch'd for a long Time.

At the *Ladrones* we recruited, and particularly took on Board, as well alive as pick'd up, near two hundred Hogs, with a vast Store of Roots, and such Things as are their usual Food in that Country; we took in also above three thousand cocoa Nuts and Cabbages; Yams, Potatoes and other Roots for our own Use, and in particular we got a large Quantity of Maiz, or *Indian* Wheat for Bread, and some Rice.

We stor'd our selves likewise with Oranges and Lemons, and buying a great Quantity of very good Limes, we made three or four Hogsheds of Limejuice; which was a great Relief to our Men in the hot Season, to mix with their Water; as for making Punch, we had some Arrack and some Sugar, but neither of them in any Quantity, so as to have much Punch made afore the Mast.

We were eighteen Days on our Passage from the Streight of *Mindanao* to *Guam*, and stay'd six Days at *Guam*, furnishing our selves with Provisions, appearing all this while with *French* Colours, and Captain *Merlotte* as Commander: However, we made no great Ceremony here with the *Spanish* Governor, as I have said already; only that Captain *Merlotte*, after we had been here two Days, sent a Letter to him by a *French* Officer, who showing his Commission from the King of *France*; the Governor presently gave us Product, as we call it, and Leave to buy what Provisions we wanted: In Compliment for this Civility, we sent the Governor a small Present of fine Scarlet Camblet, and two Pieces of Bays;

and he made a very handsome Return, in such Refreshments as he thought we most wanted.

There was another Reason for our keeping in this Latitude till we came to the *Ladrones*; namely, that all the *Southern* Side of that Part of the Way between the *Phillippines* and the *Ladrones*, is so full of Islands, that unless we had had very good Pilots, it would have been very hazardous; and add to this, that beyond these Islands *South*, is no Passage; the Land, which they call *Nova Guinea*, lying away *East* and *E. S. E.*; farther than has yet been discover'd; so that it is not yet known, whether that Country be an Island or the Continent.

Having for all these Reasons gone to the *Ladrones*, and being sufficiently satisfied in our Reasons, for going away from thence to the *Southward*, and having stor'd our selves as above, with whatever those Islands produc'd, we left the *Ladrones*, about the tenth Day of *September* in the Evening, and stood away *E. S. E.* with the Wind *N. N. W.* a fresh Gale; after this, I think, it was about five Days, when having stretch'd by our Account about an hundred and fifty Leagues, we steer'd away more to the *Southward*, our Course *S. E. by S.*

And now, if ever, I expected to do something by Way of Discovery; I knew very well there were few, if any, had ever steer'd that Course; or that if they had, they had given very little Account of their Travels. The only Person who leaves any Thing worth Notice; being *Cornelius Vanshouton* and *Francis La Mare*, who, tho' they sail'd very much *South*, yet say little to the Purpose, as I shall shew presently.

The sixteenth Day after we parted from the *Ladrones*, being, by Observation, in the Latitude  
of

of seventeen Degrees *South* of the Line, one of our Men cried a Sail, a Sail, which put us into some fit of Wonder, knowing, nothing of a Ship of any Bulk could be met with in those Seas; but our fit of Wonder was soon turn'd to a fit of Laughter, when one of our Men from the Fore-top, cried out *Land*, which indeed was the Case; and the first Sailor was sufficiently laugh'd at for his Mistakè, tho', give him his due, it look'd at first as like a Sail, as ever any Land at a Distance could look.

Towards Evening, we made the Land very plain, Distance about seven Leagues *S. by E.* and found that it was not an Island, but a vast Tract of Land, extended, as we had Reason to believe, from the Side of *Gillolo*, and the Spice Islands, or that which we call *Nova Guinea*, and never yet fully discovered. The Land lying away from the *West N.W.* to the *S. E. by South*, still *Southerly*.

I that was for making all possible Discovery, was willing, besides the Convenience of Water, and perhaps fresh Provisions, to put in her, and see what kind of a Country it was: So I ordred the Brigantine to stand in for the Shore: They sound-ed, but found no Ground within half a League of the Shore; so they hoysted out their Boat and went close in with the Shore, where they found good Anchor hold in about thirty six Fathom, and a large Creek, or Mouth of a River; here they found eleven to thirteen Fathom soft ouzy Sand, and the Water half fresh at the Mouth of the Creek.

Upon Notice of this, we stood in, and came all to an Anchor in the very Creek; and sending our Boats up the Creek, found the Water perfect



fect fresh and very good upon the Ebb, about a League up the River.

Among all the Islands in this Part of the World, that is to say, from the *Phillipines Eastward*, of which there are an infinite Number, We never came near any, but we found our selves surrounded with Canoes and Variety of Boats, bringing off to us *Cocoa Nutts, Plantanes, Roots and Greens*, to traffick for such Things as they could get; and that in such Numbers as we were tired with them, and sometimes allarm'd, and oblig'd to fire at them. But here, tho' we saw great Numbers of People at a Distance from the Shore, yet we saw not one Boat or Bark, nor any Thing else upon the Water.

We stay'd two or three Days taking in fresh Water, but it was impossible to restrain our Men from going on Shore, to see what Sort of a Country it was; and I was very willing they should do so: Accordingly, two of our Boats, with about thirty Men in both of them, went on Shore on the *East Side* of the Creek or Harbour, where our Ship lay.

They found the Country look'd wild and savage enough, but tho' they could find no Houses or speak with the Inhabitants, they saw their Footsteps and their Seats where they had sat down under some Trees; and after wandring about a little, they saw People, both Men and Women at a Distance; but they run away from our Men, at first Sight, like frighted Deer; nor could they make any Signal to them to be understood; for when our Men hallood, and call'd after them, they run again as if they had been bewitch'd.

Our Men gather'd a great Variety of green Stuff,

Stuff, tho' they knew not of what Kind, and brought it all on Board, and we eat a great deal of it; some we boyl'd and made Broth of; and some of our Men, who had the Scurvy, found it did them a great deal of Good; for the Herbs eat all spicey, and had a most pleasant agreeable Taste; but none of us could tell what to call them, tho' we had several Men on Board who had been among the Spice Islands before in Dutch Ships.

We were very uneasy that we could get nothing here but a little Grass and Pot-herbs, as our Men call'd it, and the Men mov'd me to let them have two Boats, and go up the River as high as the Tide would carry them: This I consented to, being as willing to make the Discovery as they: So I ordered the Captain of the *Madagascar* Ship, who had, as I have said, been formerly my second Mate; I say, I order'd him to go along with them.

But in the Morning, a little before the Flood was made, I was call'd out of my Cabbin to see an Army, as they told me, coming to attack us: I turn'd out hastily enough, you may be sure, and such an Army no Ship were ever attack'd with; for we spy'd three or four hundred black Creatures, come playing and tumbling down the Stream, towards us, like so many Porpoises in the Water: I was not satisfied at first that they were humane Creatures; but would have persuaded our Men, that they were Sea-monsters; and that they were certainly Fishes of some strange Kind.

But they quickly undeceiv'd us, for they came swimming about our Ships, staring and wondering, and calling to one another, but said not  
one

one Word to us; at least, if they did, we could not understand it.

Some of them came very near our Ship, and we made Signs to them to come on Board but they would not venture: We tofs'd one of them a Rope, and he took hold of it boldly; but as soon as we offer'd to pull, he let go, and laugh'd at us; another of them did the like, and when he let go, turn'd up his black Buttocks, as in Sport at us; the Language of which, in our Country, we all knew, but whether they meant it so or not, that we cannot tell.

However, this dumb conversing with them, we did not like, neither was it to any Purpose to us; and I was resolv'd, if possible, to know something more of them than we could get thus: So I ordered out our Pinnace with six Oars, and as many other Men, well arm'd, to row among them; and, if possible, to take some of them and bring them on Board. They went off, but the six Oar Pinnace, tho' a very nimble Boat, could not row so fast as they could swim; for if pulling with all their might, they came near one of them, immediately, like Dog and Duck, they would dive and come up again thirty or forty Yards off; so that our Men did not know which Way to row after them: However, at last, getting among the thickest of them, they got hold of two, and, with some Difficulty, drag'd them in; but were surpriz'd to find they were both Women: However, they brought them on Board naked as they were. When they came on Board, I ordred they should have two Pieces of Linnen wrapt round their Wastes to cover them, which they seem'd extraordinary

ry glad of: We gave them also several Strings of Beads, and our Men tyed them about their Necks, and about their Arms like Bracelets, and they were wonderfully pleas'd with that. Others of our Men gave them each of them a Pair of Scissars, with Needles, and some Thread and threading the Needles, show'd them how to sow with them: We gave them Food, and each of them a Dram of Arak, and made Signs to know of them where they liv'd; they pointed up to the River, but we could by no Means understand them. When we had dress'd them up thus with Necklaces, and Bracelets, and Linnen, we brought them up upon the Deck, and made them call to their Country Folk, and let them see how well they were used, and ask them to come on Board, but they would not venture.

However, as I thought, the Discovery we were to make, would be something the easier on the Account of the Usage of these two young Women; for they were not, as we guess, above twenty or two and twenty Years of Age; we resolv'd, that the Boat should go on, as we intended up the River; and that, as these two Women pointed that Way, they should carry them along with them.

Accordingly we sent two Shallops or large Boats, which carried together sixty Men all well arm'd. We gave them Store of Beads and Knives, and Scissars, and such Baubles with them, with Hatchets and Nails, and Hooks, Looking-glasses, and the like; and we built up the Sides of the Boat and Stern, and cover'd them with Boards to keep off Arrows and Darts, if they should find Occasion; so that they look'd like *London* Barges: In this Posture, as soon as the Tide of Flood



Flood was made up, our Men went away, carrying a Drum and a Trumpet in each Boat ; and each Boat had also two Pattereroes fix'd on the Gunnel near the Bow.

Thus furnish'd, they went off about eleven a Clock in the Forenoon, and to my very great Uneasiness, I heard no more of them in four Days ; the whole Ship's Company were indeed surpriz'd at their Stay, and the Captain of the Sloop would fain have had me let him have sail'd up the River with the Sloop as far as the Channel would serve ; which indeed we found was deep enough. Indeed, as I was unwilling to run any more Risques ; I could not perswade my self, but, that the Force I had already sent, was sufficient to fight five thousand naked Creatures, such as the Natives seem'd to be ; and therefore I was very unwilling to send : However, I consented, at last, to have our long Boat and two smaller Boats mann'd with fifty four Men more, very well arm'd and cover'd from Arrows and Darts, as the other had been, go up the River, upon their solemn Promise, and with express Order, to return the next Day at farthest ; ordering them to fire Guns as they went up the River to give Notice to their Fellows, if they could be heard that they were coming ; and that in the mean Time, if I fir'd three Guns, they should immediately return.

They went away with the Tyde of Flood ; a little before Noon, and went up the River about five Leagues ; the Tide running but slowly up, and a strong Fresh of Land-water that check'd the Tide coming down ; so that when the Tide was spent, they came to an Anchor ; they found the River contrary to their Expectation,

tation, continued both deep enough, and was wider in Breadth than where the Ships were at Anchor; and that it had another Mouth or Outlet into the Sea some Leagues farther *East*; so that the Land to the *East* of us, where our Men went on Shore, was but an Island, and had not many Inhabitants, if any at all; the People they had seen there, having, possibly, swam over the other Arm or Branch of the River to observe our Ships the nearer.

As our Men found they could go no farther for want of the Tide, they resolv'd to come to an Anchor; but just as they were sounding, to see what Ground they had, and what Depth, a small Breeze at *N. E.* sprung up; by which they stem'd the Current, and reach'd up about two Leagues farther, when they hove over their Grapling in five Fathom Water, soft Ground; so that all this Way, and much farther, all our Ships might have gone up the Channel, being as broad as the *Thames* is about *Fox-hall*.

It must be observ'd, that all along this River, they found the Land, after they came past the Place where the other Branch of the River broke off, *Eastward*, was full of Inhabitants on both Sides, who frequently come down to the Waters-side to gaze and look at our Boats. But always, when our Men call'd to them, as if they thought our Men enquir'd after their Fellows, they pointed up the River; which was as much as to say, they were gone farther that Way.

However, our Men being not able to go any farther against the Tide, took no Notice of that; but after a little while, some of them, in one of the smaller Boats, row'd towards the Shore, holding up a white Flag to the People, in Token  
of

of Peace : But it was all one, and would have been all one, for ought we know, if they had held up a red Flag, for they run all away, Men, Women and Children ; nor could our Men by any Persuasions, by Gestures and Signs of any Kind, prevail on them to stay, or hardly so much as to look at them.

The Night coming on, our Men knew not well what Course to take ; they saw several of the *Indians* Dwellings and Habitations, but they were all at a Distance from the River, occasion'd, as our Men suppos'd, by the Rivers overflowing the flat Grounds near its Banks, so as to render those Lands not habitable.

Our Men had a great Mind to have gone up to one of the Towns they saw, but he, that commanded, would not permit it, but told them, that if they could find a good landing Place, that they might all go on Shore, except a few, to keep the Boats, they would venture ; upon which the smallest Boat row'd up about a Mile, and found a small River running into the greater, and here they all resolv'd to land : but first they fir'd two Muskets, to give Notice, if possible, to their Comrades, that they were at Hand, however they heard Nothing of them.

What Impression the Noise of the two Muskets made among the *Indians*, they could not tell, for they were all run away before.

They were no sooner on Shore, but considering, they had not above two Hours Day ; and that the *Indian* Villages were at least two Miles off, they call'd a Council, and resolv'd not to march so far into a Country they knew so little of, and he left to come back in the dark ; so they went on Board again and waited 'till Morning, however they

they view'd the Country, found it was a fertile Soil, and a great Herbage on the Ground: There were few Trees near the River; but farther up, where the *Indian* Dwellings were, the little Hills seem'd to be covered with Woods, but of what Kind they knew not.

In the Morning before break of Day, some of our Men fancied they heard a Gun fir'd up the River; upon which, the Officer ordered two Musquets to be fir'd again, as had been done the Evening before; in about a Quarter of an Hour they were answer'd by the like Firing, by which, our Men knew that their Comrades heard them; so without pursuing their intended Landing, the Tide being then running upwards, they weigh'd, and set to their Oars, having little or no Wind, and that which was, blowing down the Stream.

After they had gone about a League, they heard a confused Noise at a great Distance, which surprized them a little at first; but as they perceiv'd it drew nearer and nearer, they waited a while, when they perceiv'd first here and there some People, then more, and then about two or three hundred Men and Women together, running, and every one carrying something.

Whither it was they were going, or what it was they carried, we could not tell till they came nearer; when we found that they were all loaded with Provisions, Cocoa Nuts, Roots, Cabbages, and a great Variety of Things which we knew little of; and all these were carrying down to our Ships, as we understood afterwards, in Gratitude for our good Usage of the two young Women.



When these People saw our Men and their three Boats, they were at a full Stop, and once or twice they were ready to lay down all their Loads and run for it; but ours made Signs of Peace, and held up a white Flag to them.

Some of them, it seems, having, as we found, convers'd with our Men, had a little more Courage than the rest, and came to the Shore side, and look'd at the Boats: One of our Men be-thought himself of a Stratagem to make known to them our Desire of Peace with them; and taking a String of Beads and some Toys, he held them up at the End of the Boat Hook Staff, and shew'd them to the *Indians*, pointing to them with his Hand, and then pointing with the other Hand, to what the *Indians* carry'd, and to his Mouth, intimating, that we wanted such Things to eat, and would give him the Beads for them.

One of the *Indians* presently understood him, and throws himself into the Water, holding a Bundle of Plants, such as he had truss'd up together, upon his Head, and swimming with the other Hand, and comes so near the Boat, where our Men held out the Staff, as to reach the End of the Staff, take off the String of Beads and Toys, and hang his Bunch of Trash, for it was no better, upon the Hook, and go back again, but would come no nearer.

When he was gotten on Shore again, all his Comrades came about him, to see what he had got; he hung the String of Beads about his Neck, and run dancing about, with the other Things in his Hand, as if he had been mad.

What our Men got, was a Trifle, of less Worth, than a good Bunch of Carrots in *England*, but yet it was useful, as it brought the People to converse

converse with us ; for after this, they brought us Roots, and Fruits innumerable, and began to be very well acquainted with us.

By that Time our Men had chaffer'd thus, four or five Times, they first heard, and in a little while after, saw their two great Boats with their Fellows, coming down the River, at about two Miles distance, with their Drums and Trumpets, and making Noise enough.

They had been, it seems, about three Leagues higher up, where they had been on Shore among the *Indians*, and had set at Liberty the two Maidens, for such, they understood, they were ; who, letting their Friends see how fine they were dress'd, and how well they were us'd, the *Indians* were so exceedingly oblig'd, and shew'd themselves so grateful, that they thought nothing too much for them ; but brought out all the Sorts of Provisions, which their Country produc'd, which, it seems, amounted to nothing, but Fruits, such as Plantanes, Cocoa Nuts, Oranges and Lemons, and such Things, and Roots, which we could give no Name to ; but, that which was most for our Use, was a very good Sort of *Maiz*, or *Indian* Corn, which made us very good Bread.

They had, it seems, some Hogs, and some Goats, but our Men got only six of the latter ; which were at hand, and were very good. But, that which was most remarkable, was, that whereas, in all the Islands within the *Tropicks*, the People are thievish, treacherous, fierce, and mischievous ; and are arm'd with Lances, or Darts, or Bows and Arrows : these appear'd to be a peaceable, quiet, inoffensive People ; nor did our Men see any Weapon among them ;

except a long Staff, which most of the Men carried in their Hands; being made of a Cane, about eight foot long, and an Inch and half Diameter, much like a Quarter Staff; with which they would leap over small Brooks of Water, with admirable Dexterity.

The People were black, or rather of a tawny dark brown; their Hair long, but curling in very handsome Rings: They went generally quite naked, both Men and Women; except that in two Places, our Men said, they found some of the Women cover'd, from the Middle downward. They seem'd to have no Conversation with the Sea at all, nor did we see so much as any one Boat among them; nor did any of the Inhabitants dwell near the Sea; but cultivated their Lands very well, in their Way; having abundance of Greens and Fruits, growing about their Houses; and upon which, we found, they chiefly liv'd. The Climate seem'd to be very hot, and yet the Country very fruitful.

These People, by all we could perceive, had never had any converse, with the rest of the World by Sea, what they might have by Land, we know not; but as they lie quite out of the Way of all Commerce, so it might be probable, they never had seen a Ship, or Boat; whether any *European* Ship, or so much as a *Periagua* of the Islands. We have mention'd their nearest Distance to the *Ladrones*, being at least four hundred Leagues; and from the Spice Islands, and the Country of new *Guinea*, much more; but as to the *European* Shipping, I never heard of any, that ever went that Way, neither do I believe, any ever did.

I take the more Notice of these People's not having convers'd, as I say, with the World, because of the Innocence of their Behaviour, their peaceable Disposition, and their Way of living upon the Fruits and Produce of the Earth; also their Cultivation, and the Manner of their Habitations; no Signs of Rapine or Violence appearing among them. Our Stay here was so little, that we could make no Enquiry into their Religion, Manner of Government, and other Customs: nor have I Room to crowd many of these Things into this Account. They went indeed naked, some of them stark naked, both Men and Women; but I thought, they differ'd in their Countenances, from all the wild People, that I ever saw; that they had something singularly honest, and sincere in their Faces; nor did we find any Thing of Falshood or Treachery among them.

The Gratitude they exprest, for our kindly using the two young Women I have mention'd, was a Token of generous Principles; and our Men told us, that they would have given them what ever they could have ask'd, if they had had it.

In a Word, it was on their Account, they sent that little Army of People to us, loaden with Provisions, which our Men met, before the two Shallops came down. But all the Provisions they had, consisted chiefly in Fruits of the Earth, Cocoa Nuts, Plantanes, Oranges, Lemons, &c. and *Maiz*, or *Indian Corn*. We had not any sufficient Time with them, to enquire after what Traffick they had, or whether any Thing fit for us; that they had several fragrant Plants; and I believe, some Spices, as particularly Cin-



namon ; that we found, but what else the Country produces, we know not.

We came away from hence, after seven Days Stay, having observ'd little of the Country, more than that it seem'd to be very pleasant, but very hot ; the Woods were all flourishing and green ; and the Soil rich, but no great Matter, that could be the Subject of Trade : But an excellent Place, to be a Bait Land, or Port of Refreshment in any Voyage, that might afterwards be undertaken that Way.

We set Sail, *I say*, from hence in seven Days, and finding the Coast lie fairly on our Starboard side, kept the Land on Board all the Way Distance about three Leagues ; and it held us thus, about an hundred and twenty Leagues due *East* ; when, on a sudden, we lost Sight of the Land ; whether it broke off, or whether it only drew off farther *South*, we could not tell.

We went on two or three Days more, our Course *S. E.* when we made Land again : but found it to be onely two small Islands, lying *S.* and by *E.* Distance nine Leagues. We stood on to them, and two of our Boats went on Shore, but found nothing for our Purpose ; no Inhabitants, nor any living Creatures, except Sea Fowls, and some large Snakes ; neither was there any fresh Water. So we call'd that Land *Cape Dismal*.

The same Evening, we stood away full *South*, to see if we could find out the Continuance of the former Land : But as we found no Land, so a great Sea coming from the *South* we concluded, we should find no Land that Way. And varying our Course *Easterly*, we ran, with a fair fresh Gale at *N. W.* and by *W.* for seven Days more ; in all which Time, we saw nothing but the open  
Sea,

Sea, every Way ; and, making an Observation, found, we had pass'd the *Southern Tropick* ; and that we were in the Latitude of six and twenty Degrees and thirteen Minutes ; after which, we continued our Course still *Southerly* for several Days more ; 'till we found by another Observation, that we were in two and thirty Degrees, and twenty Minutes.

This Evening we made Land over our Starboard Bow, Distance six Leagues, and stood away *South* and by *East* : But the Wind slackening, we lay by in the Night ; and, in the Morning, found the Land bearing *East* and by *S.* Distance one League and a half ; a good Shore and sounding, we found about five and thirty Fathom, stony Ground. Then we hoisted our Boat out, and sent it on Shore for Discoveries, to sound the Depth of the Water, and see for a good Harbour to put in at.

They went quite in with the Shore, where they found People, Men, and Women, crowding together to look at us. When our Men came close to the Land, they hung out a white Flag ; but the wild People understood nothing of the meaning of it ; but stood looking and amaz'd ; and we have great Reason to believe, that they never had seen any Ship or Bark of any Nation, in all their Lives, but their own. We found no Boats, or Sails, or any Thing they had, to make use of on the Water : But some Days after, we saw several small Canoes, with three or four Men in each.

Our Men not being able to speak any Thing for them to understand, or to understand any Thing they said, the first Thing they did, was, to make Signs to them, for something to eat.

Upon which, three of them seem'd to go away, and coming again in a few Minutes, brought with them several Bundles or Bunches of Roots ; some Plantanes, and some green Lemons, or Limes, and laid down all upon the Shore. Our Men took Courage then to go on Shore, and taking up what they brought, they set up a Stick, and upon the End of it, hung five Bunches or Strings, of blew and white Beads, and went on Board again.

Never was such Joy among a wild People discover'd, as these People shew'd, when they took the Beads off the Stick : They danc'd, and caper'd, and made a thousand antick Gestures ; and, inviting our Men on Shore, laid their Hands upon their Breasts across ; and then look'd up, intimating a solemn Oath, not to hurt us.

Our Men made Signs, by which they made them understand, that they would come again next Morning, and also that they should bring us more Eatables ; accordingly, we sent three Boats the next Morning, and our Men carried Knives, Cissars, Beads, Looking-Glasses, Combs and any Toys they had, not forgetting Glass-Beads, and Glass-Earings in abundance.

The *Indians* were very ready to meet us, and brought us Fruits and Herbs as before ; but Three of them, who stood at a Distance, held each of them a Creature exactly like a Goat, but without Horns or Beard ; and these were brought to Traffick with us.

We brought out our Goods, and offer'd every One something, but the Variety was Surprizing to them, who had never seen such Things before. But that which was most Valuable of all our Things,  
was

was a Hatchet, which one of their principal Men took up, and look'd at it, felt of the Edge, and lay'd it down ; then took it up again, and wanted to know the use of it : Upon which one of our Men took it, and stepping to a Tree that stood near, cut off a small Bough of it at one Blow : The Man was Surpriz'd, and run to the Tree with it, to see if he could do so too ; and finding the Vertue of it, he lay'd it down, ran with all his Might into the Country, and by and by returning, came with two Men more with him, to shew them this wonderful Thing call'd a Hatchet.

But if they were Surpriz'd with the Novelty of a Hatchet, our Men were as much Surpriz'd to see hanging round the Ears of both the Men that he brought with him, large flat pieces of Pure Gold, and the Thread which they Hung by, was made of the Hair of the Goats twisted very prettily together and strong enough.

Our Men offering to Handle them, to see if they were Gold, one of the Men takes off his two Bobs, or what we might call them, and offer'd them to our Men for the Hatchet ; our Men seem'd to make some Difficulty of it, as if the Hatchet was of much greater Value than those Trifles ; upon which, he being, as we found, Superior, made the other that came with him, pull off his two Ear-Jewels also ; and so our unreasonable People took them all Four, being of Pure Gold, and Weighing together some Grains above two Ounces, in Exchange for an old rusty Hatchet. Well, however Unreasonable the Price was, they did not think it so ; and so over-fond was he of the Hatchet, that as soon as he had it for his own, he run to the Tree, and in a few Minutes had so  
lay'd



lay'd about him with the Hatchet, that there was not a Twig left on it that was within his reach.

This Exchange was a particular Hint to me ; and I presently Directed my Chief-Mate, and Captain *Merlotte*, to go on Shore the next Day, and acquaint themselves as much as they could with the Natives, and if possible, to find out where they had this Gold, and if any Quantity was to be found.

They bestow'd their Time so well, and oblig'd the Natives so much, by the Toys and Trifles they gave them, that they presently told them that the Gold, which they call'd *Aarah*, was pick'd up in the Rivers that came down from a Mountain which they pointed to, a great way off. Our Men prevail'd with three of them, to go with them to one of these Rivers, and gave them Beads and such Things to encourage them, but by the way, no Hatchet: That was kept up at a high Rate, and as a Rarity, fit only for a King or some Great Man that wore *Aarah* on his Ears.

In a Word, they came to the River, where, they said, they found this *Aarah* ; and the first Thing our Men observ'd there, was an *Indian* sitting on the Ground, and beating something upon a great Stone, with another Stone in his Hand, for his Hammer : they went to see what he was doing, and found, he had found a Lump of Gold in the Sand, as big as a Swan Shot, of no regular Shape ; but full of Corners, neither round or square ; and the Man was beating it flat, as well as he could.

One of our Men, who had a Hatchet in his Hand, made Signs to him, to let him flat it for him ; and so turning the back Part of the Hatchet,

Hatchet, which, by the Way, turn'd the Hatchet into a Hammer ; he beat the Piece of Gold flat in an Instant ; and then turning the Edges, beat it that Way, 'till he brought it to be round also.

This was so surprizing to the Man that was beating, that he stood looking on, with all the Tokens of Joy and Amazement ; and desiring to see the Hatchet, look'd this Way and that Way, upon those of his Country Men, who came with us ; as if asking them, if ever they saw the like.

When our Man had done, he made Signs to know if he had any more *Aarah* ; the Man said nothing, but went down to the Brink of the River ; and putting his Hand into a Hole, he brought out three little Lumps of Gold, and a great many smaller, some of them about as big as a great Pin's Head ; all which he had laid up there, in the hollow of a pretty big Stone. Our Man thought it was too much, to take all that for the Hatchet ; and therefore pull'd out some Beads, and Pieces of Glass, and such Toys ; and in short, bought all this Cargo of Gold ; which, in the whole, weigh'd near five Ounces, for about the Value of two Shillings.

Tho' these Bargains were very agreeable to us, yet the Discovery of such a Place, and of such a Fund of Treasure, in a Part of the World, which, it is very probable, was never seen before, by any *European* Eyes, nor so much as enquir'd after, was the greatest Satisfaction imaginable to me ; knowing the adventurous Temper of the Gentleman, who was our principal Employer. Upon this Account, while my Men busied themselves in their daily Search after Gold, and in finding out the Rivers, from whence it came ; or rather where it was found :

I employ'd

I employ'd my self to be fully inform'd, where this Place was; whether it was an Island, or a Continent; and having found a tolerable good Road for our Ships to ride in; I caus'd my two Shallops well mann'd, to run along the Coast, both *East* and *West*, to find which Way it lay; and whether they could find any End of it; as also to see, what Rivers, what People, and what Provisions, they could meet with.

By my Observation, I found, as above, that we were in the Latitude of seven and twenty Degrees and thirteen Minutes *South* Meridian; distance from the *Ladrones* about sixteen Degrees *East*. While my Shallops were gone, I went on Shore, and some of my Men set up Tents on Shore, as well for the Convenience of their Traffick, as for their resting on Shore all Night; keeping however, a good Guard, and having two of our Ship Dogs with them, who never fail'd giving them Notice, when ever any of the Natives came near them; for what ail'd the Dogs, I know not, but neither of them could bear the Sight of the *Indians*, and we had much to do, to keep them from flying at them.

While we rode here, we had the most violent Storm of Wind, with Rain, and with great Claps of Thunder, that we had yet sustain'd, since we came out of *England*: It was our Comfort, that the Wind came off Shore, for it blew at *South*, and shifting between the S. S. E. and S. W. with such excessive Gusts, and so furious, and withal, not only by Squals and sudden Flaws, but a settled terrible Tempest; that had it been from off Sea, as it was off Shore, we must have perish'd, there had been no Remedy: And even as it was, we rode in great Danger. My Boatswain call'd  
twice

twice out to me, to cut my Masts by the Board, protesting, we should either bring our Anchors home, or founder as we rode; and indeed, the Sea broke over us many Times, in a terrible Manner: As I said before, we had an indifferent good Road, and so we had, but not a very good one, for the Land was low; and on the *East* we lay a little open. However, our Ground Tackle was good, and our Ship very tight, and I told the Boatswain, I would rather slip the Cable, and go off to Sea, than cut the Masts. However, in about four hours Time more, we found the Wind abate, but it blew very hard for three Days after that.

I was in great Pain for my two Shallops in this Tempest, but they had both the good Luck to lie close under the Shore; and one indeed had hauld quite upon the Land, where the Men lay on Shore under their Sail; so that they got no Damage; and about three Days after, one of them return'd, and brought me Word, they had been to the *West*, where they had made very little Discovery, as to the Situation of the Country, and whether it was an Island, or a Continent; but they had convers'd with the Natives very often, and had found several, that had Pieces of Gold, hanging some in their Hair, some about their Necks; and they made a shift to bring as many with them, as weigh'd, all put together, seventeen or eighteen Ounces, for which they had barter'd Toys and Trifles, as we did; but they found no Rivers, where they could discover any Gold in the Sands, as we had done, so that they believ'd, it all came from that Side where we were.

But



But our other Shallop had much better Luck ; she went away to the *East*, and by the Time she had gone about sixteen Leagues, she found the Shore break off a little, and soon after, a little more, 'till at length they came, as it were, to the Land's End ; when, the Shore running due *South*, they follow'd, according to their Account, near thirteen Leagues more.

In this Time, they went several Times on Shore, entered three Rivers indifferently large, and one of them very large at the Mouth, but grew narrow again, in three or four Leagues ; but a deep Channel, with two and twenty to eight and twenty Fathom Water in it all the Way, as far as they went.

Here they went on Shore, and traffick'd with the Natives ; who, they found, rude and unpolish'd, but a very mild inoffensive People ; nor did they find them any thing thievish, much less treacherous ; as in some such Countries is the Case. They had the good Luck, to find out the Place, where, as they suppos'd, the King of the Country resided ; which was a Kind of a City, incompass'd with a River, almost all round ; the River making a Kind of double Horse shoe. The Manner of their living is too long to describe ; neither could our Men give any Account of their Government, or of the Customs of the Place ; but what they sought for, was Gold and Provisions, and of that they got pretty considerable.

They found the *Indians* terribly surpriz'd at the first Sight of them ; but after some Time, they found means to let them know, they desir'd a Truce ; and to make them understand, what they meant by it.

At length a Truce being establish'd, the King came, and with him near three hundred Men; and soon after the Queen, with half as many Women. They were not stark naked, neither Men or Women, but wearing a loose Piece of Cloth about their Middles; what it was made of, we could not imagine: For it was neither Linnen or Woolen, Cotton or Silk; nor was it woven; but twisted and breded by Hand, as our Women make Bone Lace with Bobbins. It seems it was the Stalk of an Herb, which this was made with; and was so strong, that I doubt not, it would have made Cables for our Ships, if we had wanted to make such an Experiment.

When the King first came to our Men, they were a little shy of his Company, he had so many with him, and they began to retire; which the King perceiving, he caus'd all his Men to stop, and keep at a Distance; and advanc'd himself, with about ten or twelve of his Men, and no more.

When he was come quite up, our Men, to shew their Breeding, pull'd off their Hats, but that he did not understand; for his Men had no Hats on. But the Officer making a Bowe to him, he understood that presently, and bow'd again; at which all his Men fell down flat upon their Faces, as flat to the Ground, as if they had been shot to Death with a Volley of our Shot; and they did not fall so quick, but they were up again as nimble, and then down flat on the Ground again; and this they did three Times, their King bowing himself to our Men, at the same Time.

This Ceremony being over, our Men made Signs to them that they wanted Victuals to Eat, and something to Drink; and pull'd out several Things,

Things, to let the People see they wou'd give something for what they might bring them.

The King understood them presently, and turning to some of his Men, he talk'd a while to them, and our Men observed, that while he spoke, they seem'd to be terrified, as if he had been Threatening them with Death. However, as soon as he had done, three of them went away, and our Men supposed they went to fetch something that the King wou'd give them; upon which, that they might be before Hand with them, our Men presented his Majesty with two Pair of Bracelets of fine Glass-Beads of several Colours, and put them upon his Arms, which he took most kindly; and then they gave him a Knife, with a good plain Ivory Handle, and some other odd Things. Upon receiving these noble Presents, he sends away another of his Men, and a little after, two more.

Our Men observed, that two of the Men went a great way off toward the Hill, but the other Man that he sent away first, went to his Queen, who with her Retinue of Tawny Ladies, stood but a little way off, and soon after her Majesty came with four Women only, attending her.

The Officer who commanded our Men, finding he should have another kind of Compliment to pay the Ladies, retired a little; and being an ingenious handy sort of a Man, in less than half an Hour, he, and another of his Men, made a nice Garland, or rather a Coronet of sundry Strings of Beads, and with Glass Bobs and Pendants, all hanging about it most wonderful gay; and when the Queen was come, he went up to the King, and showing it to him, made Signs that he would give it to the Queen.

The

The King took it ; but was so pleased with it, that truly he desired our Officer to put it upon his own Head, which he did ; but when he had got it upon his own Head, he made bold to let our Men see, he was King over his Wife, as well as over the rest of the Country, and that he would wear it himself.

With that our Man pulled out a little Pocket Looking-Glass, and holding it up, he let his Majesty see his own Face, which we might reasonably suppose, he had never seen before, especially not with a Crown on his Head too : That till that Looking-Glass came, and he saw his own Face, he was Grave and Majestick, and carried it something like a King ; but he was so ravished with this, that he was quite beside himself, and Jump'd and Caper'd and Danc'd about like a Mad-Man.

All this while, our Men saw nothing coming, but that all was given on their Side ; whereupon they made Signs again, that they wanted Provisions : He made Signs again, pointing to a Hill a good way off, as if it wou'd come from thence very quickly ; and then look't to see if they were coming, as if he was impatient till they came, as well as our People.

During this Time, one of our Men observ'd, that the Queen had several Pieces of Gold, as they thought them to be, hanging about her, as particularly in her Hair, and large flat Plats of Gold upon the hinder part of her Head, something in the place of a Roll as our Women wear; that her Hair was wound about it in Rolls Breeded together very curiously ; and having inform'd our Officer, he made Signs to the King, for Leave to give the Queen something, which he Consented to. So he went to her Majesty,

L making



making a Bowe as before : But this Compli-  
fance Surprized her; for upon his Bowing himself,  
on a sudden falls the Queen and all her four La-  
dies flat on the Ground, but were up again in a  
Moment; and our People wondered how they  
could throw themselves so flat on their Faces, and  
not hurt themselves; nor was it less to be won-  
der'd at, how they could so suddenly jump up  
again, for they did not rise up gradually as we  
must do, with the Help of our Hands and Knees,  
if we were extended so flat on our Faces; but  
they, with a Spring, whether with their Hands  
or their whole Bodies we know not, jumped up  
all at Once, and were upon their Feet imme-  
diately.

This Compliment over, our Officer stept up  
to the Queen, and ties about her Neck, a most  
delicate Necklace of Pearl; *That is to say*, of large  
handsome white Glass Beads, which might in *En-  
gland*, cost about Four Pence Halfpenny, and to  
every one of her Ladies, he gave another of smal-  
ler Beads and differing Colours than those which  
he gave the Queen: Then he presented her Majes-  
ty with a long String of Glass-Beads, which  
being put over her Head, reached down to her  
Waste before, and joyn'd in a kind of a Tassel,  
with a little Knot of blew Ribband, which she  
was also extreamly pleased with; and very fine  
she was.

The Queen made, it seems, the first Return; for  
stepping to one of her Women, our Men obser-  
ved that she took something out of her Hair, and  
she let her tye her Hair up again; after which she  
brought it, and gave it to our Officer, making  
Signs to know if it was acceptable: It was a  
Piece of Gold that weighed about two Ounces  
and

and a half; it had been beaten as flat as they knew how to beat it. But the Metal was of much more Beauty to our Men, than the Shape.

Our Officer soon let them see that he accepted the Present, by laying it to his Mouth and to his Breast, which he found was the Way when they liked any Thing. In short, our Officer goes to Work again, and in a little while, he makes a little Coronet for the Queen, as he had done before, tho' less, and without asking Leave of the King, went up to her, and put it upon her Head ; and then gave her a little Looking-Glass, as he had done to the King, to look at her self.

She was so Surpriz'd with this, that she knew not what to do with her self ; but to shew her Gratitude, she pulled out another Plate of Gold out of her own Hair, and gave it to our Officer ; and not Content with that, she sent one of her Women to the Crowd of Women that first attended her, and whether she Stript them of all the Gold they had, we know not, but she brought so many Pieces, that when our Men had them (for she gave all to them) they weigh'd almost two pound weight.

But this was not all, when she was thus drest, up she stept forward, very nimbly and gracefully towards the King, to show him what she had got ; and finding the King drest'd up as fine as her self, they had Work enough for near two Hours, to look at one another and admire their new Ornaments.

Our Men reported, that the King was a Tall well Shap'd Man, of a very Majestick Deportment, only that when he laugh'd, he shewed his Teeth too much, which however, were as white as Ivory : As for the Queen, saying that her Skin

was of a Tawny Colour, she was a very pretty Woman; very Tall, a sweet Countenance, admirable Features, and in a Word, a compleatly handsome Lady.

She was very odly Dress'd; she was quite Naked from her Head to below her Breasts: Her Breasts were plump and round, not flabby and hanging down, as it is General with all the *Indian* Women, some of whose Breasts hang as low as their Bellies; but Sitting as Beautifully up, as if they had been lac'd up with Stays round her Body; and below her Breast, she had a broad piece of a Skin of some curious Creature, spotted like a Leopard, or rather, as I believe, it was some fine spotted Deer. This was wrapt round her very Tight, like a *Body-Girt* to a Horse; and under this, she had a kind of Petticoat as before describ'd, hanging down to her Ankle. As for Shoes or Stockings, they were only such as Nature had furnished. Her Hair was black, and as they suppos'd, very long; being wreathed up, twisted in long Locks about the Plate of Gold she wore; and when she pulled off the Plate of Gold as above, it hung down her Back, and upon her Shoulders Gracefully enough; but it seems she did not think so, for as soon as she found it so fallen down, she caus'd one of her Women to roll it all up and tye it in a great Knot which hung down in her Neck, and did not look so well as when it was loose.

While the King and the Queen were conversing together about their fine Things as above, our Men went back to their Boat where they left the Purchase they had got, and furnish'd themselves with other Things fit to Traffick with, as they saw Occasion; and they were not quite  
come

come up to the King again, when they perceiv'd that the Men the King had sent up into the Country were returned ; and that they brought with them a great Quantity of such Provisions as they had; which chiefly Consisted in Roots and *Maiz* or *Indian* Corn, and several Fruits which we had never seen before : Some of them resembled the large *European* Figs, but were not really Figs; with some great Jars of Water, having Herbs steeped in it, and Roots, that made it look as white as Milk, and drank like Milk sweetned with Sugar, but more Delicious, and exceeding Cool and Refreshing. They brought also a great Quantity of Oranges, but they were neither Sweet nor Sour, and our Men believed they were not ripe : But when they were Drest; after the Manner of the Country, which they shew'd our Men how to do, *That is to say*, to roast them in the Fire, they eat admirably well, and our Men brought a great many away to us, and when we roasted them, they exceeded all that ever I tasted.

After our Men had received what they brought; and shewn that they were acceptable to them; the King made Signs that he wou'd be gone, but wou'd come again to them the next Morning; and pointing to the Queen's Head, where the Plate of Gold had been, that she gave to our Men, intimated, that he would bring some of that with him the next Day. But while he was making these Signs, one of his other Messengers came back and gave the King something into his Hand; wrapt up, which our Men could not see : As soon as the King had it, as if he had been proud to show our Men that he could make himself and his Queen as fine as they could make him, he pull'd



it out, and first put it on his Queen (a short Thing like a Robe) which reached from her Neck, *for he put it over her Head*, only down to the spotted Skin which she wore before ; and so it covered her Shoulders and Breast. It was made of an infinite Number and Variety of Feathers, odly, and yet very curiously put together ; and was Spangl'd, as we may call it, all over, with little Drops or Lumps of Gold ; some no bigger than a Pins-Head, which had Holes made thro' them, and were strung Six or Seven together, and so Tyed on to the Feathers : Some as big as a Large Pea, hanging single, some as big as a Horse-Bean, and beaten Flat, and all hanging promiscuously among the Feathers, without any Order or Shape, which notwithstanding were very Beautiful in the Whole, and made the Thing look Rich and Handsome enough.

As soon as he had thus Equipt his Queen, he put the other on upon himself, which as it was larger, so it had a Particular in its Shape ; namely, that it covered his Arms almost to his Elbows, and was so made, that it came round under the Arm, and being fastned there with a String, made a kind of Sleeve.

As the King's Robe, or what ever it may be called, was larger, (for it came down to his Waste) so it had a great deal more Gold about it, and larger Pieces than what the Queen wore : When their Majesties had thus put on their Robes, you may guess how Glorious they look'd, but especially the Queen, who being a most charming beautiful Creature as before, was much more so. When she glitter'd thus all with Gold ; our Men look'd very narrowly to observe whether there were no Diamonds, and particularly whether

ther any Pearl among their Finery, but they could not perceive any.

In this manner they parted for that Evening; but the People did not leave them so, for they throng'd about them; and some brought them Jars of the white Liquor, some brought them Roots, some Fruits, some one Thing some another; and our Men gave every one of them some small Matter or other in Proportion to what they brought. At last, there came four particular tall lusty Men, with Bows and Arrows, but before they came close up to our Men, they laid down their Bows and Arrows on the Ground, and came forward with all the Tokens of Friendship, they were able to make.

They had two Youths with them, each of which led a tame Fawn of pretty large Growth; and when the Men came up, they gave the two Fawns to our Men; who, in Return, gave them, each of them, a Knife, and some Strings of Beads, and such Toys as they had:

Our Men observ'd, that all these Men had little Bits of Gold, some of one Shape, and some of another, hanging at their Ears; and when our Men came to be familiar, they ask'd them as well as they could, where they found that Stuff, and they made Signs to the Sand in the River; and then pointed towards that Part of the Country, where our Ships lay; which signified to our Men, that the Gold was, most of it, where we lay, not there, where the King and Queen resided. Nay, when our Men pointed again to the River where they were, and went and took up some of the Sand, as if they would look for Gold in it, they made Signs of laughing at it, and that there was nothing to be found there, but that it lay all the other Way.

And yet two or three of the Men, who, when the Tide was out, went up the Bank of the River, two or three Mile upon the Sands, peeping and trying the Sands as they went; found three or four little Bits of pure Gold in the Sands, tho' not bigger than Pins Heads; but no doubt, farther up the Country, they might have found more.

These four Men seeing how fond our People were of the Gold, made Signs, that they could fetch Gold to them, if they would give them such Things as they lik'd; and ours again told them, they should have any Thing they pleas'd; and, as Earnest, gave them some Peices of Iron, and Bits of Glafs of small Value, both which they were much delighted with, before Hand.

Early in the Morning, their four Customers came again, and brought several Men, who seem'd to be Servants, along with them, loaden with Refreshments; such as the white Water, mention'd above; which they brought in earthen Pots very hard, but made so by the Sun, not by any other Fire. They brought also three small Deer with them, and a Kind of Coney or Rabbit, but larger; which our Men were very glad of. But that which was above all the rest, they brought a good Quantity of Gold Dust, that is to say, some in small Lumps, some in bigger; and one of them had near a Pound weight, wrap'd up in a piece of Coney Skin, which was all so very small, that it was like Dust; which, as our Men understood afterwards, was reckon'd little worth, because all the bigger Lumps had been pick'd out of it.

Our Men, you must be sure, were very willing to trade for this Commodity, and therefore they

they brought out great Variety of Things to truck with them; making Signs to them, to pick out what they lik'd; but still keeping a Reserve for the King and Queen, who they expected. Above all, they had made a Reserve for the King, of some extraordinary Hatchets which they had not yet suffer'd to be seen; with a Hammer or two, and some drinking Glasses, and the like, with some particular Toys for the Queen.

But they had Variety enough, (besides this) for the four Men; who, in short, bought so many Trinkets and Trifles, that our Men not only got all the Gold they brought, but the very Pieces of Gold out of their Ears; in Return for which, our Men gave them every one a Pair of Ear Rings, to hang about their Ears, with a fine Drop; some of green Glass, some red, some blew; and they were wonderfully pleas'd with the Exchange; and went back, we may venture to say, much richer than they came.

As soon as these had done their Market, and indeed a little before, they perceiv'd at a Distance, the King and the Queen, coming with a great Retinue; so they made Signs to our Men, that they must be gone; and that they would not have the King know, that they had been there.

I must confess, the Relation of all this made me very much repent, that I had not happen'd to have put in there with the Ships; tho' indeed as the Road lay open to the *East* and *South* Winds, it might have been worse another Way; I mean, when the Storm blew. However as it is, I must report this Part, from the Account given us by my Men.

When



When the King and Queen came the second Time, they came together, and dress'd up, as our Men suppos'd, with the utmost Magnificence ; having the fine feather'd spangl'd Things about their Shoulders ; and the King had over all his Habit, a fine spotted Robe of Deer Skins, neatly joyn'd together ; and which, as he manag'd it, cover'd him from Head to Foot ; and in short, it was so very beautiful, that he really look'd like a King with it.

When he came to our Men, and the Ceremony of their meeting was over, the King, turning round, shewed them, that he had brought them Stores of Provisions ; and indeed so he had ; for he had at least fifty Men attending him, loaden with Roots, and Oranges, and *Maiz*, and such Things ; in short he brought them above twenty thousand Oranges ; a great Parcel of that Fruit like a Fig, which I mention'd above, and other Fruits. After which another Party follow'd, and brought twenty live Deer ; and as many of their Rabbits dead ; the latter are as big as our Hares.

As they came up, the King made Signs to our Men to take them ; and our Officer making Signs to thank his Majesty, he orders one of the Queen's Attendants, to give him one of the feather'd Robes, such a one, as the King himself had on ; and made mighty fine with Lumps and Tossels of Gold, as the other. And the tawny Lads advancing to him, offer'd to put it over his Head ; but he took it in his Hand, and put it on himself ; and look'd as like a Jack Pudding in it, as any one could desire ; for it made no Figure at all upon him, compar'd to what it did upon the *Indians*.

When they had receiv'd all this, they could not but make a fuitable Return ; and therefore our Officer caus'd his Reserve to be brought out ; and first he gave his Majesty, a Dozen of very handsome drinking Glasses of several Sizes ; with half a Dozen glass Beekers, or Cups, to the Queen, for the same Use. Then he gave the King a little Hanger, and a Belt to wear it by his Side ; and shew'd him, how to buckle it on, and take it off ; and how to draw it out, and put it in again.

This was such a Present, and the King was so delighted with it, that our Officer said, he believed the King for two Hours together, did nothing but draw it and put it up again, put it on, and pull it off, and the like.

Besides this, he gave the King three Hatchets ; and shew'd them the Uses of them ; also two large Hammers and a pair of very strong large Sheers, particularly showing him, that with those Hammers, they might beat out the Gold Lumps which they found in the Rivers, and with the Sheers might cut the Edges round, or into what Shape they pleas'd, when they were beaten thin.

To the Queen he gave six little Knives, and a dozen small Looking-Glasses for her Ladies. Six pair of Cifars, and a small Box full of large Needles ; then he gave her some course brown Thread, and show'd her how to thred the Needle and sow any Thing together with the Thread ; all which she admired exceedingly, and call'd her Tawny Maids of Honour about her, that they might learn also. And whilst they were standing all together, our Officer ( to make the King Laugh ) Sewed two of her Women one to another by the Lap of their Wastecoats, or what else  
it

it might be called ; and when they were a little Surpriz'd at it, and began (as he thought) to be a little Uneasy, he took the Cissars, and at one Snap, set them at Liberty again : Which pass'd for such an extraordinary Piece of Dexterity, that the King wou'd needs have two of them Sew'd together again, on purpose to see it Cut again : And then the King desired he might have a Needle and Thread himself, and a pair of Cissars : Then he wou'd Sew some things together and Cut them asunder again several Times, and Laugh most heartily at the Ingenuity of it.

Besides these Things, they gave her Majesty a pair of Ear-Rings to hang on her Ears, the Glass in them looking Green like an Emrald ; a Ring of Silver with false Stones in it, like a Rose Diamond Ring, the Middle Stone red like a Ruby ; which she went presently and gave to the King ; but our Officer made Signs that he had one that was bigger for the King, and accordingly gave the King one much larger : And now they had done giving Presents, as they thought, when the King made a Sign to the Queen, which she understood, and calling one of her Women, she brought a small parcel, which the Queen gave our Officer into his Hand ; wherein was about Eleven pound Weight of Gold-Dust, but as before, no big Lumps in it.

Our Men having thus finish'd their Traffick, and being about to come away, they made Signs to the King, that they wou'd come again and bring him more fine Things ; at which the King Smiles, and pointed to the Gold, as if telling them he wou'd have more of that for them when they came again.



Our Men had now their Expectations fully answer'd; and, as I said, had ended their Traffick; and taking Leave of the King, and all his Retinue, retired to their Shallop, the King and Queen going away to their City as above; the Wind blowing *Northberly*, they were seven Days before they got down to us in the Ship; during which time, they had almost Famish'd the Deer they had left; Five of which they had kept to bring us alive, and yet they went two or three times on Shore to get Food for them by the way.

We were all glad to see them again, and I had a great deal of Reason to be very well satisfied with the Account of their Traffick, tho' not much with their Discovery, for they were not able to give us the least Account whether that Land was a Continent or an Island.

But let that be how it will, 'tis certainly a Country yet Unfrequented by any of the Christian part of Mankind, and perhaps may ever be so, and yet may be as rich as any other part of the World yet discover'd. The Mountains in most of the Islands, as well as of the main Land in those Parts abounding in Gold or Silver, and no question, as well worth searching after, as the Coast of *Guinea*; where, tho' the Quantity they find is considerable, yet, it is at this Time sought after by so many, and the Negroes taught so well how to Value it, that but a little is brought away at a Time, and so much given for it, that Computing the Charge of the Voyage, is often times more than it is worth.

Whereas tho' it is true, that what Gold is found here is a great Way off; yet, I am persuaded, such Quantities are to be had, and the Price given for



for it so very Trifling, that it wou'd be well worth searching for.

I reckon, that including the Gold our Shallop brought, and what we got on *Shore* where welay, we brought away about twenty four pound Weight of Gold: The Expence of which, we could not Value at above ten or eleven Pound in *England* put it all together; and reckoning for all the Provisions we got there, which supply'd us for twenty Days after we came away.

For while our Shallop was making her Visit thus to the Royal Family, &c. as is related; our Men were not Idle on Shore, but partly by Trade with the Natives, and by Washing the Sands in the small Rivers, we got such a Quantity of Gold, as well Satisfied us for the Stay we made.

We had been about eighteen Days here when our Shallop returned, and we stay'd a Week more Trafficking with the People: And I am persuaded, if we had a mind to have settled there and stay'd till now, we should have been very Welcome to the People. We saw neither Horse or Cow, Mule, Afs, Dog or Cat, or any of our *European* sort of Creatures (except that our Men shot some Wild-Ducks and Wigeon exactly the same which we see in *England*, and very Fat and Good, but much easier to shoot than in *England*, having never been acquainted with the Flash and Noise of Guns as ours have been: We also found a Sort of Patridges in the Country not much unlike our own, and a great many of the Whistling Plover the same with Ours.

Tho' this Months Stay was Unexpected, yet, we had no Reason to think our Time ill spent. However, we did not think we ought to lie here too long what ever we got: So we Weigh'd  
and

and stood off to Sea, steering still *S. E.* keeping the Shore of this Golden Country in Sight, till our Men told us they found the Land fall off to the *South*: Then we Steer'd away more *Southerly* for six or eight Days, not losing Sight of Land all the Time, till by an Observation, we found we were in the Latitude of thirty four Degrees and a Half, *South* of the Line; our Meridian distance from the *Ladrones*, twenty two Degrees thirty Minutes *East*; when a fresh Gale of Wind springing up at *South* and by *East*, oblig'd us to Hale Close for that Evening; at Night it blew such a Storm, that we were oblig'd to yield to the Force of it, and go away afore it to the *N.* or *N. by W.* till we came to the point of that Land we past before; here the Land tending to the *West* we run in under the Lee of a steep Shore, and came to an Anchor in twenty five Fathom Water, being the same Country we were in before. Here we rid very safe for five Days, the Wind continuing to blow very hard all the Time from the *South East*.

My Men would fain have had me gone a Shore again, and traffick'd with the People for more Gold; but I, who was still in quest of farther Discoveries, thought, I knew enough of this Place, to tempt my Friend, the Merchant, whose favourite Design was that of making new Discoveries, to another Voyage there; and that was enough for me. So I declin'd going on Shore again, except, that we sent our Boats for a Recruit of fresh Water; and our Men, while they were filling it, shot a Brace of Deer, as they were feeding by the Side of a swamp or moist Ground; and also some wild Ducks. Here we set up a great wooden Cross, and wrote on it, the Names of our Ships, and Commanders; and the Time that we came to an Anchor there. But

But we were oblig'd to a farther Discovery of this Country than we intended, by the following Accident: We had unmoor'd early in the Morning, and by eight a Clock were under Sail; by ten we had doubled the Point I mentioned above, and stood away S. keeping the Shore on Board, at the Distance of about two Leagues *West*.

The next Day, the Officer, who had been with the Shallop, shew'd us the Opening or Mouth where he put in, and where he had made his Traffick, with the King of the Country, as you have heard.

We went on still for two Days, and still we found the Land extending it self *South* till the third Day in the Morning, we were a little surpriz'd to find our selves, as it were, embay'd; being in the Bottom of a deep Gulph, and the Land appearing right a Head, Distance about three Leagues; the Coast having turn'd away to the *East* and by *South*, very high Land and Mountainous; and the Tops of some of the Hills cover'd with Snow.

Our second Mate and the Boatswain, upon this Discovery, were for coming about, and sent to me for Orders to make Signals to the other Ship and our Brigantine, who were both a Head, to do the like; but I, who was willing to acquaint my self, as fully as I could, with the Coast of the Country, which I made no Question I should have Occasion to come to again, said, NO NO, I will see a little farther first. So I run on, having an easy Gale at *N. E.* and good Weather, till I came within about a League and a Half of the Shore, when I found, that in the very Bite or Nook of the Bay

Bay, there was a great Inlet of Water, which either must be a Passage or Streight between the Land we had been on Shore upon; which in that Case, must be a great Island, or that it must be the Mouth of some extraordinary great River.

This was a Discovery too great to be omitted, so I order'd the Brigantine to stand in with an easy Sail, and see what Account could be had of the Place; Accordingly they stood in, and we follow'd about a League, and then lay by, waiting their Signals. I had particularly ordered them to keep two Boats a-Head to sound the Depth all the Way, and they did so; and how it happen'd, we know not, but on a sudden, we heard the Sloop fire two Guns first, and then one Gun; the first was a Signal to us to bring too, and come no farther; the next was a Signal of Distress; we immediately tack'd to stand off, but found a strong Current setting directly into the Bite, and there not being Wind enough for us to stem the Current, we let go our Anchors in twenty two Fathom Water.

Immediately we mann'd out all the Boats we had, great and small, to go and assist our Brigantine, not knowing what Distress she might be in; and they found she had driven up, as we were like to have done too far into the Channel of a large River, the Mouth of which, being very broad, had several Shoals in it; and tho' she had drop'd her Anchor just upon Notice which the Boats who were Sounding, gave her; yet she tay'd a-Ground upon a Sand, and stuck fast; our Men made no Doubt but she would be lost, and began to think of saving the Provisions and Ammunition out of her. The two Long-Boats

M

accordingly,



accordingly began to lighten her; and first they took in her Guns, and let out all her Casks of Water; then they began to take in her great Shot and the heavy Goods. But by this Time, they found their Mistake, for the Current, which I mention'd, was nothing, but a strong Tide of Flood; which, the Indraught of the River being very great, ran up with a very great Force; and, in something less than an Hour, the Brigantine fled again.

However she stuck so long upon the Sand, and the Force of the Current or Tide was so great, that she receiv'd considerable Damage; and had a great deal of Water in her Hold. I immediately order'd our Boats to row to the Land, on both Sides, to see, if they could find a good Place to lay her on Shore in; they did so, and found a very convenient Harbour, in the Mouth of a small River; which empty'd it self into the great River, about two Leagues within the foreland of it, on the *North* Side; as the River *Medway* runs into the *Thames*, within the Mouth of it, on the *South* Side; only this was not so far up. Here they ran in the Sloop immediately, and the next Day we came thither also; our Boats having sounded the whole Breadth of the main River, and found a very good Channel, half a League broad; having from seventeen to four and twenty Fathom Water all the Way, and very good riding.

Here we found it absolutely necessary, to take every Thing out of the Brigantine, to search her Bottom; for her lying on Shore had strain'd her Seams, and broke one of her Floor Timbers; and having Hands enough, our Men unloaded her in a very little Time, and making a little Dock

Dock for her, mended all the Damage in about ten Days Time. But seeing her in so good a Condition, and the Place so convenient, I resolv'd to have her whole Bottom new calk'd and payd; so we made her as clean as she was when she first came off the Stocks.

This I took for a good Opportunity, to ca-reen and clean our other Ships too; for we had done little to them since we came from *Madagascar*. We found our *Madagascar* Ship much Worm eaten in her sheathing, which we help'd as well as we could, by new nailing, and by taking out some Pieces of her sheathing, and putting new ones in. But as to our great Ship, she was sheath'd with Lead, and so had receiv'd no Damage at all; only that she was very foul, which we remedied by scraping and cleaning, and new graving her quite over.

We were not all employ'd in this Work, and therefore we had Leisure to make the best of our Time, for the main Work of new Discoveries. And now I resolv'd to leave it no more to under Officers, as I had done before, *viz.* when I gave the Command of the Shallop, that traded with the King and Queen, as above, to a Midship Man, which I was very sorry for, tho' the Fellow did his Business very well too; but I say, I resolv'd not to trust any one now, but my self.

In the first Place, I took the two Shallops, and went cross the mouth of the great River, to the *South* Shore, to see what Kind of a Country was to be found there. For, as to the *North* Side where we were, we found it to be much the same, with that Part where we had been before; only that we found no Gold, nor did we perceive, that the People had any.

I found the Mouth of this River or Inlet, to be about four Leagues over, where I cross'd it, which was about three Leagues and a half within the Inlet it self. But the Weather being very calm, and the Flood Tide running sharp, we let our Boat drive up in our crossing, about two Leagues more ; and we found the Channel grew narrow so fast, that where we came to Land, it was not full a League over ; that about three Leagues farther, we found it a meer River ; not above as broad as the *Thames* at *Blackwall*.

We found it a steep Shore, and observing a little Creek very convenient for our Purpose, we ran in our Boats among some Flags or Rushes ; and lay'd them as soft and as safe, as if they had been in a Dock ; we went all on Shore immediately, except two Men in each Boat, left to guard our Provisions.

We had for Arms, every Man a Musquet, a Pistol, and a Cutlass ; and in each Boat we had six half Pikes to use, as we might have Occasion. We had also every Man a Hatchet, hung in a little Frog at his Belt ; and in each Boat a broad Ax and a Saw.

We were furnish'd with Strings of Beads, Bits of Glass, Glass Rings, Earrings, Pearl Necklaces, and such like Jewelry Ware, innumerable ; besides Knives, Cissars, Needles, Pins, Looking-glasses, Drinking-glasses, and Toys great Store.

We were no sooner on Shore, but we found People in Abundance ; For there were two or three small Towns within a little Way of the Shore ; and I suppose, we might have the more People about us, because, as we understood afterwards, they had seen us before, tho' we had not seen them.

We made Signs to them, by putting our Fingers to our Mouths, and moving our Chops, as if we were eating, that we wanted Provisions; and we hung up a white Flag for a Truce. They presently understood the first Signal, but knew nothing of the last; and as to Provisions, just as had been the Case before, they brought us out Roots, and Fruits, such as they eat themselves; but such as we had never seen before. Some of them, however, were very sweet and good, and when we boy'd them, they eat much like an *English* Parsnip; and we gave them Strings of Beads, Pieces of Glass, and such Things as we found, they were always very fond of.

We found the People, as I observ'd of the other, very inoffensive and sincere; not quarrelsome, nor treacherous, or mischievous in the least. And we took Care, not so much as to let them know the Use, or Manner of our Fire Arms a great while; neither was there one Piece fir'd, all the Time we were among the other People, where we had so much Gold: If there had, it had been very probable, that they would have fled the Country, in spite of all the good Usage we could have been able to have shewn them.

The People, where we were now, were not so rich in Gold, as these where we were before; But we found them much better stor'd with Provisions; for besides Deer, of which they had great Plenty and Variety, for they had some of a Sort, which I had never seen before, and besides an infinite Number of those Rabbits, which I mention'd before, which were as big as our Hares, and which do not burrough in the Ground, as our Conies do; they had a Kind of



Sheep, large, (like those of *Peru*, where they are us'd to carry Burthens;) and very good. They have no Wool nor Horns, but are rather hairy, like a Goat; nor should I call them Sheep, but that their Flesh eats like Mutton; and I know not what else to call them. The Natives call'd them *Huttash*; but what Breed, or from what Part of the World, or whether created for a Peculiar to this Part, I know not.

However, their Flesh was very agreeable, and they were fat and good; and as the *Indians* were mightily pleas'd with the Price we paid them, and the Goods we paid them in, they brought us more of these *Huttashes* than we knew what to do with; and as I can calculate the Rate, I suppose, we might have them for about eight Pence, or sometimes, not above six Pence cost each; for they would give us one very thankfully, for a String or two of small Beads, and think themselves mightily well paid.

I found them so plentiful, and so easy to come at, that in short, I sent fifty of them alive ty'd Neck and Heels, in one of the Shallops back to our Ships; and order'd them to send their long Boats over for more; for tho' it was so little a Way over, we did not find, they had any of them on that Side the River.

We did the *Indians* another Piece of Service; for if they gave us Meat, we taught them to be Cooks; for we shew'd them how to roast it upon a Stick or Spit before the Fire; whereas they eat all their Meat before, either stew'd in earthen Pots over the Fire, with Herbs, such as we did not understand, or thrown on the Coals of green Wood into the Fire; which, by the Way, always made it stink of the Smoak most intolerably.

We

We had a great deal of Opportunity now, to converse with the People on both Sides the River; and we found them to be not only different Nations, but of a differing Speech and differing Customs. These on the *South* Side, where I now was, seem'd to be the best furnish'd with Provisions, and to live in the greatest Plenty. But those, on the *North* Side, appear'd better cloath'd, and a more civiliz'd Sort of People; and of the two seem'd to have, in their Countenances, something the more agreeable.

However, as they were near Neighbours, for the River only parted them, they were not very much unlike neither. That which seem'd most strange to me, was, that we found they had little Knowledge or Communication one with another. They had indeed some Boats in the River, but they were but small, and rather serv'd to just waft them over, or to fish in them, than for any Carriage; for we found none that could carry above four Men, and these very odly made; partly as a Canoe, by hollowing a Tree, and partly by Skins of Beasts, dry'd and stuck on so, as they made waft Cloths to the other; yet they would paddle along at a great Rate with them.

For want of understanding their Language, I could come at no Knowledge of their Religion or Worship; nor did I see any Idols among them, or any Worshipping of the Sun or Moon. But yet, as a Confirmation that all Nations, however Barbarous, have some Notion of a G O D, and some Awe of a Superior Power: So I observ'd here, that being making a Bargain with one of the principal Men, such I perceiv'd him to be by the Respect the rest shew'd him; I say, being making

a Bargain with him as well as could be done between People that understood not one Word of what either of us said, he had made Signs to bring me twelve Sheep the next Morning, for some Things that I was to deliver him of mine. I am sure the Goods were not all of them of Value sufficient to give me the least Distrust, but when I gave him the Goods without the Sheep, being as I said to trust him till next Day, he call'd two Men to him, and pointing to the Goods that I had put into his Hands, he tells upon his Fingers Twelve ; letting them know (as I suppose) that he was to give me twelve Sheep the next Day. so far it seems they were to be Witnesses of the Agreement : Then he places his two Hands one upon each Breast turn'd very accurately with the Fingers up towards his Face, and holding them there, he looks towards Heaven, with his Face turn'd upward and with the most Gravity, Seriousness, and Solemnity in his Countenance, that ever I saw in any Mans Face in my Life. When he had continued in this Posture about a quarter of a Minute, he takes the two Men, and puts them just in the same Posture ; and then points to me, and then to himself, by which I understood, first, that he solemnly swore to me, that he wou'd bring the Sheep punctually and faithfully to me, and then he brought the two Men to be Bail or Security for the Performance ; *that is to say*, to oblige themselves to perform it, if he did not.

Doubtless, those People who have any Notion of a G O D, must represent Him to themselves as something Superior, and something that sees and hears and knows what they say or do. Whether these People meant the Sun or the Moon, or the Stars, or what else I do not Determine for them,

them, but 'tis Visible they understood it to be something to swear by ; something that could bear Witness of their Engagement, and that being called to Witness of it, could resent the Breach of Promise. As to those, whose Gods are Monsters, and hideous Shapes, frightful Images and terrible Figures, the Motive of their Adoration being that of meer Terror, they have certainly gross Ideas. But these People seem to act upon a more solid Foundation, paying their Reverence in a manner much more Rational, and to something which it was much more reasonable to Worship ; this appear'd in the Solemnity of their Countenances, and their Behaviour in making a solemn Promise.

We found those People clothed, generally speaking, over their whole Bodies, their Heads, Arms, Legs, and Feet, excepted ; but not so agreeably as those we mentioned above ; and we found that the Clothing of these, were generally the Skins of Beasts, but very artfully put together ; so that though they had neither Needle or Thread, yet they had the same Plant as I mention'd before, the Stalk of which, wou'd so strongly tye like a Thread, that they peel'd it off thicker or finer as they had Occasion, and made use of it abundance of Ways to Tye and Twist, and make their Clothes with it, as well for their Occasion, as if it had been Woven in a Loom.

We found several of these People had little Bits of Gold about them ; but when we made Signs to them to know where they got it, and where it might be had : They made Signs again, pointing to the Country, on the *North* Side the River, so that we had it seems Chopt upon the right *Gold Coast*, in our first Coming : They pointed indeed likewise, to some very high Mountains, which we  
saw



saw at a great Distance *S. W.* so that it seems as if there was Gold found that way also ; but it seems the People here had not much of it for their share.

The Men here, had Bows and Arrows, and they used them so Dexterously, that a Wild Goose flying over our Heads, one of the *Indians*, shot it quite through with an Arrow. One of our Men was so Provok'd, to see them, as it were, to out do him ; that some time after, seeing a couple of Ducks flying fair for a Mark, he Presented his Piece, and shot them both flying.

I was very Angry, when I heard the Gun, had I been there, he had never got Leave to shoot : However, when it was done, I was pleas'd well enough to see the Effect it had upon these poor innocent Well-Meaning People ; at first it Frighted them to the last Degree, and I may well say, it Frighted them out of their Wits, for they that were near it, started so violently, that they fell down and lay Speechless for some Time : Those that were farther off, ran away, as if it had been some new kind of Lightning and Thunder, and came out of the Earth instead of out of the Clouds : But when they saw the two Creatures fall down dead out of the Air, and could see nothing that flew up to them to kill them, they were perfectly astonish'd, and laid their two Hands on their Breasts, and looked up to Heaven, as if they were saying their Prayers, in the solemnest Manner imaginable.

However, this Accident gave them terrible Ideas of us, and I was afraid at first, they would run all away from us for fear : I therefore used them after it, with all the Kindness and Tenderness imaginable ; gave them every Day one Trifle or other, which tho' of no Value to me, they were exceeding fond of ; and as we ask'd  
nothing

nothing of them, but Provisions, of which they had great Plenty, and gave us enough every Day to satisfy us: As for Drink, they had none of the Milky Liquor, which we had on the other part of the Country: But they had a Root, which they steep'd in their Water, and made it drink Hot, as if Pepper had been in it, which made it so strong, that tho' it wou'd not make our Men Drunk, it was worse, for it made them Mad.

I was so pleas'd with these People, that I came over to them every other Day, and some of our Men lay on Shore, under a Sail pitch'd for a Tent; and they were so safe, that at last, they kept no Watch, for the poor People neither thought any Harm, or did any; and we never gave them the least Occasion to apprehend any Thing from us, at least, not till our Man fir'd the Gun, and that only let them know we were able to Hurt them, not giving them the least Suspicion that we intended it; on the Contrary, one of our Men play'd an odd Prank with them, and fully satisfy'd them that we would do them no Harm; this Man having seen one of their Children, a little laughing speechless Creature, of about two Years old; the Mother having gone from it a little way, on some particular Occasion, the Fellow takes it and led it Home to the Tent, and kept it there all Night.

The next Morning, he dress'd it up with Beads and Jewels wondrous fine, a Necklace about its Neck, and Bracelets of Beads about its Wrist, and several Strings of Beads wrapt up and tyed in its Hair, having fed it, and laid it to sleep, and made much of it all Night; in this Figure, he carried it up in his Arms to the *Indian* Huts or Houses, where he had found it, and where there had been, it seems, a great Out-Cry  
for

for the Child all the Night, the Mother crying and raising her Neighbours, and in a most strange Concern.

But when some of the Women, her Neighbours, saw the Child brought back, there was a contrary Extream of Joy ; and the Mother of it, being (I suppose) fetch'd, she fell a jumping and dancing, to see her Child, but also making so many odd Gestures, as our Men could not well tell for a while, whether she was pleas'd or no : The Reason it seems, was, she did not know whether to Hope or Fear, for she did not know whether the Man wou'd give back her Child, or take it away again.

But when the Man, who had the Child in his Arms, had been told by Signs, that this was the Mother, he beckoned to have her come to him, and she came, but trembling for Fear. Then he took the Child, and Kissing it two or three times, he gave it her into her Arms. But it is impossible, to express, by Words, the Agony the poor Woman was in ; she took the Child, and holding it in her Arms, fix'd her Eyes upon it without Motion, or as it were, without Life, for a good While ; then she took it, and Embrac'd it in the most passionate Manner imaginable : When this was over, she fell a Crying so Vehemently, till she Sobb'd ; and all this while, spoke not one Word : When the Crying had given sufficient Vent to her Passion, then she fell a Dancing, and making a strange odd Noise, that we cannot Describe, and at last, she leaves the Child, and comes back to the Place where our Men were, and to the Man that brought her Child, and, as soon as she came up to him, she falls flat on the Ground, as I have Describ'd above,

above, the Queen and her Women did, and up again immediately ; and thus she did three times, which it seems, was her Acknowledgment to him for bringing it back.

The next Day, *for her Gratitude did not end here*, she came down to our Tent, and brought with her two Sheep with a great back Burthen of Roots, of the kind, which I said, they steep'd in the Water ; and several Fruits of the Country, as much as two Men, who came with her, could carry ; and these she gave all to the Man that had brought back her Child. Our Men were so mov'd, at the affectionate Carriage of this poor Woman to her Child, that they told me it brought Tears out of their Eyes.

They took her Present, but the Man that receiv'd it, took the Woman, and drest her up as fine almost as he had done the Child, and she went Home like a kind of a Queen among them.

We observ'd, while we stay'd here, that this was a most incomparable Soil, that the Earth was a fat loomy Mould, that the Herbage was strong, that the Grass, in some Places, was very rank and good, being as high as our Mid-Thigh ; and that the Air was neither very Hot, nor as we believe, very Cold ; we made an Experiment of the Fruitfulness of the Soil, for we took some white Pease, and digging the Ground up with a Spade, we sowed some, and before we went away, we saw them come out of the Ground again, which was in about nine Days.

We made Signs to the People, that they shou'd let them grow, and that if they gathered them, they were good to eat : We also Sow'd some *English* Wheat, and let them know, as well as we could, what the Use of them both was. But

I make



I make no doubt, but they have been better acquainted with both by this time, by an Occasion which follow'd.

Our Men were so fond of this Place, and so pleas'd with the Temper of the People, the Fruitfulness of the Soil, and Agreeableness of the Climate ; that about twenty of them offer'd me, if I wou'd give them my Word to come again, or send to them to relieve and supply them with Necessaries, they wou'd go on Shore, and begin a Colony, and live all their Days there. Nay, after this, their Number came up to three and thirty ; Or, they offer'd, that if I wou'd give them the Sloop, and leave with them a Quantity of Goods, especially of such Toys as they knew wou'd oblige the People to use them well, they wou'd stay at all Hazards, not doubting, as they told me, but they should come to *England* again at last, with the Sloop full of Gold.

I was not very willing to encourage either of these Proposals, because, as I told them, I might perhaps find a Place as fit to settle a Colony in, before we came Home, which was not at such an excessive Distance from *England*, so that it was scarce possible ever to relive them. This satisfied them pretty well, and they were Content to give over the Project ; and yet, at last, which was more Preposterous than all the rest, five of our Men and a Boy, ran away from us and went on Shore, and what sort of Life they led, or how they manage, we are scarce ever likely to know, for they are too far off us to enquire after them again : They took a small Yaul with them, and it seems had furnish'd themselves privately with some necessary Things, especially Tools, a Grind-Stone, a Barrel of Powder, some Pease, some  
Wheat,

Wheat, and some Barly; so that it seems, they are resolv'd to plant there; I confess I pittied them, and when I had searched for them, and could not find them. I caus'd a Letter to be written to them, and fixt it up upon a Post, at the Place where our Ship Careen'd; and another on the South Side, to tell them, that in such a certain Place, I had left other Necessaries for them, which I did, made up in a large Case of Boards or Planks, and cover'd with Boards like a Shed.

Here I left them Hammocks for Lodging; all Sorts of Tools for building them a House, Spades, Shovels, Pick Axes, an Ax, two Saws; with Clothes, Shoes, Stockings, Hats, Shirts; and in a Word, every Thing that I could think of for their Use; and a large Box of Toys, Beads, &c. to oblige the Trade with the Natives.

One of our Men, who they had made privy to their Design, *but made him promise not to reveal it, 'till they were gone*; had told them, that he would perswade me, if he could, to leave them a farther Supply; and bid them come to the Place, after the Ships were gone; and that they should find Directions left for them, on a Piece of a Board, or a Letter from him, set up upon a Post. Thus they were well furnish'd with all Things for immediate living.

I make no doubt, but they came to find these Things, and since they had a Mind to make Tryal of a wild retir'd Life, they might shift very well. Nor would they want any Thing, but *English* Women, to raise a new Nation of *English* People; in a Part of the World, that belongs neither to *Europe*, *Asia*, *Africa*, or *America*. I also left them every Man another Gun, a Cutlass, and a Horn for Powder; and I  
left

left two Barrels of fine Powder, and two Pigs of Lead for Shot, in another Chest by it self.

I doubt not, but the Natives will bestow Wives upon them, but what Sort of a Posterity they will make, I cannot foresee; For I don't find by Enquiry, that the Fellows had any great Store of Knowledge or Religion in them, being all *Madagascar* Men, as we call'd them; that is to say, Pyrates and Rogues; So that for ought I know, there may be a Generation of *English* Heathens in an Age or two more; tho' I left them five Bibles, and six or seven Prayer Books, and good Books of several Sorts; that they might not want Instruction, if they thought fit to make Use of it, for themselves or their Progeny.

It is true, this is a Country that is most remote from us, of any in the yet discover'd World, and consequently, it would be suggested as unprofitable to our Commerce; but I have something to alledge in its Defence, which will prove it to be infinitely more advantageous to *England*, than any of our *East India* Trade can be, or than can be pretended for it. The Reason is plain in a few Words: Our *East India* Trade is all carry'd on, or most Part of it, by an Exportation of Bullion in Specie; and a Return of foreign Manufactures or Produce; and most of these Manufactures also, either trifling and unnecessary in themselves; or such as are injurious to our own Manufactures. The solid Goods brought from *India*, which may be said to be necessary to us, and worth sending our Money for, are but few; for Example:

- I. The Returns, which I reckon trifling and unnecessary, are, such as *China* Ware, Coffee,

Coffee, Tea, Japan Works, Pictures, Fans, Skreens, &c.

II. The Returns, that are injurious to our Manufactures, or Growth of our own Country; are printed Callicoës, Chints, wrought Silks, Stuffs of Herba and Barks; Block-Tin, Sugar, Cotton, Arrack, Copper, Indico.

III. The necessary or useful Things are Pepper, salt Peter, dying Woods and dying Earths, Drugs, Lacks, such as ~~Shel~~-lack, Stick-lack, &c. Diamonds, and some Pearl, and raw Silk.

For all these we carry nothing or very little but Money; the innumerable Nations of the *Indies*, *China*, &c. despising our Manufactures, and filling us with their own.

On the Contrary, the People in the *Southern* unknown Countries, being first of all very numerous, and living in a temperate Climate, which requires clothing, and having no Manufactures, or Materials for Manufactures of their own, wou'd consequently take off a very great Quantity of *English* Woollen-Manufactures, especially when Civiliz'd by our dwelling among them, and taught the Manner of Clothing themselves for their Ease and Convenience; and in Return for these Manufactures, 'tis Evident, we shou'd have Gold in Specie, and perhaps Spices; the best Merchandize and Return in the World.

I need say no more to Excite adventurous Heads to search out a Country, by which such an Improvement might be made, and which would be such an Encrease of, or Addition to the Wealth and Commerce of our Country.



Nor can it be objected here, that this Nook of the Country may not easily be found by any One but by us, that have been there before, and perhaps not by us again exactly ; for not to enter into our Journal of Observations for their Direction, I lay it down as a Foundation ; that whoever, Sailing over the *South-Seas*, keeps a stated Distance from the Tropick to the Latitude of fifty six, to sixty Degrees, and steers *Eastward* towards the *Straights of Magellan*, shall never fail to discover new Worlds, new Nations, and new inexhaustible Funds of Wealth and Commerce, such as never were yet known to the Merchants of *Europe*.

This is the true Ocean call'd the *South-Sea* ; that Part that we corruptly call so, can be so in no Geographical Account, or by any Rule but by the meer Imposition of Custom, it being only originally call'd so, because they that Sailed to it, were oblig'd to go round the *South-terminus* part of *America* to come into it ; whereas it ought indeed to be call'd the *West-Sea*, as it lies on the *West Side* of *America*, and Washes the *Western Shore* of that great Continent for near eight thousand Miles in length ; *to wit*, from fifty six Degrees *South* of the Line, to seventy Degrees *North* ; and how much farther, we know not : On this Account, I think, it ought to be called the *American Ocean*, rather than with such Impropriety the *South-Sea*.

But this part of the World where we were, may rightly be called the *SOUTH-SEA*, by Way of Distinction, as it extends from *India*, round the Globe, to *India* again ; and lies all *South* of the Line (even for ought we know) to the very *South Pole*, and which, except some Interposition  
of

of Land, whether Islands or Continent, really surrounds the *South Pole*.

We were now in the very Center or Middle of this *South-Sea*; being, as I have said, in the Latitude of thirty four Degrees twenty Minutes; but having had such good Success in our Enquiry, or Search after new Continents, I resolv'd to Steer to the *S. and S. E.* as far, as till we shou'd be interrupted by Land or Ice, determining to search this unknown Part of the Globe, as far as Nature wou'd permit, that I might be able to give some Account to my Employers, and some Light to other People that might come that Way, whether by Accident or by Design.

We had spent six and twenty Days in this Place; as well in Repairing our Brigantine and Careening, and Trimming our Ship, that we had not been so long, but that we did not resolve to Careen our Ships, till we had spent ten Days about the Brigantine, and then we found more Work to do to the Sheathing of the *Madagascar* Ship than we expected.

We stored our selves here with fresh Provisions and Water, but got nothing that we could call a Store, except the Flesh of about thirty Deer, which we Dry'd in the Sun, and which eat indifferently well afterward, but not extraordinary.

We sail'd again the six and twentieth Day after we came in, having a fair Wind at *N. and N. N. W.*; and a fresh Gale, which held us five Days without Intermission; in which Time, running away *S. and S. S. E.* we reach'd the former Latitude, where we had been; and meeting with nothing remarkable, we steer'd a little farther to the *Eastward*; but keeping a *Southerly* Course still, 'till we came into the Latitude of forty one; and then going due *East*, with the

Wind at *N.* and by *W.* we reckon'd our Meridian Distance from the *Ladrones*, to be fifty Degrees and a half.

In all this Run we saw no Land, so we hall'd two Points more *Southerly*, and went on for six or seven Days more; when one of our Men on the round Top, cry'd Land. It was a clear fine Morning, and the Land he spy'd, being very high, it was found to be sixteen Leagues Distance; and the Wind slacking, we could not get in that Night, so we lay by 'till Morning; when being fair with the Land, we hoisted our Boat to go and found the Shore, as usual. They row'd in close with the Shore, and found a little Cove; where there was good riding, but very deep Water; being no less than sixty Fathom within Cables Length of the Shore.

We went in however, and after we were moor'd, sent our Boat on Shore to look for Water, and what else the Country afforded. Our Men found Water, and a good Sort of Country, but saw no Inhabitants; and upon coasting a little both Ways on the Shore, they found it to be an Island, and without People; but found that about three Leagues off to the *Southward*, there seem'd to be a *Terra Firma*, or Continent of Land; where, it was more likely, we should make some Discovery.

The next Day we fill'd Water again, and shot some Ducks; and the Day after weigh'd, and stood over for the Main, as we thought it to be; here using the same Caution as we always had done; (*viz.*) of sounding the Coast, we found a bold Shore, and very good Anchor hold, in six and twenty to thirty Fathom.

When we came on Shore here, we found People, but of a quite different Condition, from those we had met with before; being wild, furious, and untractable, surpriz'd at the Sight of us, but not frighted; preparing for Battle, not for Trade; and no sooner were we on Shore, but they saluted us with their Bows and Arrows. We made Signals of Truce to them, but they did not understand us; and we knew not what to offer them more, but the Muzzles of our Musquets; for we were resolv'd to see, what Sort of Folks they were, either by fair Means or foul.

The first Time therefore, that they shot at our Men with their Bows and Arrows, we return'd the Salute with our Musquet-Ball, and kill'd two of their best Archers. We could easily perceive, that the Noise of our Pieces terrify'd them; and the two Men being kill'd, they knew not how, or with what, perfectly astonish'd them; so that they ran, as it were, clean out of the Country; that is to say, clean out of our Reach; for we could never set our Eyes upon any of them after it. We coasted this Place also, according to our usual Customs; and to our great Surprize, found it was an Island too, tho' a large one; and that the main Land lay still more to the *Southward*, about six Leagues Distance; so weresolv'd to look out farther, and accordingly set Sail the next Day, and anchor'd under the Shore of this last Land, which, we were perswaded, was really the Main.

We went on Shore here peaceably, for we neither saw any People, or the Appearance of any; But a charming pleasant Valley, of about ten or eleven Miles long, and five or six Miles broad; and then it was surrounded with



Mountains, which reach'd the full Length; running parallel with the Valley, and closing it in to the Sea at both Ends; so that it was a natural Park; having the Sea on the *North* Side, and the Mountains in a Semi-circle round all the rest of it. These Hills were so high, and the Ways so untrod and so steep, that our Men, who were curious enough to have climb'd to the Top of them, could find no Way, that was practicable to get up; and so after two or three Attempts gave it over.

In this Vale we found abundance of Deer, and abundance of the same Kind of Sheep, which I mention'd lately. We kill'd as many of both, as we had Occasion for; and finding nothing here worth our staying any longer for, except that we saw something like wild Rice growing here, we weigh'd after three Days, and stood away still to the *South*.

We had not sail'd above two Days with little Wind, and an easy Sail, but we perceiv'd this also was an Island, tho' it must be a large one; for by our Account, we sail'd near a hundred and fifty Miles along the Shore of it; and we found the *South* Part, a flat pleasant Country enough; and our Men said, they saw People upon it, on the *South* Side; but we went not on Shore there any more.

Steering due *South* from hence in Quest of the main Land, we went on eleven Days more, and saw nothing significant; and upon a fair Observation, I found, we were in the Latitude of seven and forty Degrees and eight Minutes *South*; then I alter'd my Course a little to the *Eastward*, finding no Land, and the Weather very cold, and going on with a fresh Gale at *S. S. W.* for four Days,

Days, we made Land again ; but it was now to the *E. N. E.* so that we were gotten, as we may say, beyond it.

We fell in with this Land in the Evening, so that it was not perceiv'd till we was within half a League of it, which very much alarm'd us ; the Land being low, and having found our Error, we brought too, and stood off and on till Morning, when we saw the Shore lie, as it were, under our Larboard-bow, within a Mile and a Quarter Distance ; the Land low, but the Sea deep and soft Ground. We came to an Anchor immediately, and sent our Shallops to sound the Shore, who found very good Riding in a little Bay, under the Shelter of two Points of Land, one of which made a kind of Hook, under which we lay secure from all Winds that could blow, in seventeen Fathom good Ground. Here we had a good Observation, and found our selves in the Latitude of fifty Degrees twenty one Minutes. Our next Work was to find Water, and our Boats going a-Shore, found Plenty of good Water, and some Cattle ; but told us they could give no Account what they were, or what they were like. In searching this Coast, we soon found this was an Island also about eleven Leagues in Length from *N. W.* to *S. E.* what Breadth we could not tell. Our Men also, saw some Signs of Inhabitants ; the next Day six Men appear'd at a Distance, but would take Notice of no Signals, and fled as soon as our Men advanc'd. Our People went up to the Place where they lay, and found they had had a Fire of some dry Wood ; that they had lain there, as they suppos'd, all Night, tho' without Covering ; they found two Pieces of old ragged Skins of Deer,

which look'd as if worn out by some that had used them for Cloathing ; one Piece of a Skin of some other Creature which had been roll'd up into a Cap for the Head, and a Couple of Arrows of about four Foot long, very thick, and made of a hard and heavy Wood ; so they must have very large and strong Bows to shoot such Arrows, and consequently must be Men of an uncommon Strength.

Our Men wandered about the Country here three or four Days, with less Caution, than the Nature of the Thing requir'd ; for they were not among a People of an innocent inoffensive Temper here, as before, but among a wild untractable Nation ; that perhaps had never seen Creatures in their own Likeness before ; and had no Thoughts of themselves, but of being kill'd and destroy'd ; and consequently had no Thoughts of them they had seen, but as of Enemies, whom they must either destroy, if they were able, or escape from them, if they were not. However, we got no Harm ; neither would the Natives ever appear, to accept any Kindnesses from us.

We had no Business here, after we found what Sort of People they were, who inhabited this Place. So as soon as we had taken in fresh Water, and catch'd some Fish, of which we found good Store, in the Harbour or Bay where we rode, we prepar'd to be gone. Here we found the first Oysters, that we saw any where in the *South Seas* ; and as our Men found them but the Day before we were to sail, they made great Intreaty to me, to let them stay one Day to get a Quantity on Board ; they being very refreshing, as well as nourishing to our Men.

But I was more easily prevail'd with to stay, when Captain *Merlotte* brought me out of one Oyster that he happen'd to open, a true Oriental Pearl; so large and so fine, that I sold it, since my return, for three and fifty Pound.

After taking this Oyster, I order'd all our Boats out a dredging; and in two Days Time, so great a Quantity there was, that our Men had taken above fifty Bushels, most of them very large. But we were surpriz'd, you may be sure, when, at the opening all these Oysters, we found not one Pearl, small nor great, of any Kind whatever; so we concluded, that the other was a lucky Hit only; and that perhaps there might not be any more of that Kind in these Seas.

While we were musing on the Oddness of this Accident, the Boatswain of the *Madagascar* Ship, whose Boat's Crew had brought in the great Oyster, in which the Pearl was found, and who had been examining the Matter; came and told me, that it was true, that their Boat had brought in the Oyster; and that it was before they went out a dredging in the offing; but that their Boat took these Oysters on the *West* Side of the Island, where they had been shoaring, as they call'd it; that is to say, coasting along the Shore, to see if they could find any Thing worth their Labour; but. that afterwards the Boats went a dredging in the Mouth of the Bay where we rode; and where finding good Store of Oysters, they had gone no farther.

Upon this Intelligence we order'd all Hands to dredging again, on the *West* Side of the Island. This was in a narrow Channel, between this Island, and a little Cluster of Islands; which we found together extended *West*, the Channel, where



where our Men fish'd, might be about a League over, something better; and the Water about five to seven Fathom deep.

They came home well tir'd, and ill pleas'd, having taken nothing near so many Oysters, as before. But I was much better pleas'd, when in opening them, we found a hundred and fifty eight Pearls, of the most perfect Colour, and of extraordinary Shape and Size; besides double the Number of a less Size, and irregular Shape.

This quicken'd our Diligence, and encourag'd our Men; for I promis'd the Men two Peices of Eight to each Man above his Pay, if I got any considerable Quantity of Pearl. Upon this they spread themselves among the Islands, and fish'd for a whole Week; and I got such a Quantity of Pearl, as made it very well worth our while; and besides that, I had Reason to believe, the Men, at least the Officers, who went with them, conceal'd a considerable Quantity among themselves; which, however, I did not think fit to enquire very strictly after at that Time.

Had we been nearer home, and not at so very great an Expence as three Ships, and so many Men at Victuals and Wages; or had we been, where we might have left one of our Vessels to fish, and have come to them again; We would not have given it over, while there had been an Oyster left in the Sea; or at least, that we could come at: But as Things stood, I resolv'd to give it over, and put to Sea.

But when I was just giving Orders, Captain *Merlotte* came to me, and told me, that all the Officers in the three Ships had joyn'd together to make an humble Petition to me; which was,  
that

that I would give them one Day to fish for themselves; that the Men had promised, that if I would consent, they would work for them *Gratis*; and they promis'd, if they gain'd any Thing considerable, they would account for as much out of their Wages, as should defray the Ships Expençe, Victuals, and Wages, for the Day.

This was so small a Request, that I readily consented to it; and told them, I would give them three Days, provided, they were willing to give the Men a Largeß, as I had done, in Proportion to their Gain. This they agreed to, and to Work they went; but whether it was that the Fellows work'd with a better Will, or that the Officers gave them more Liquor, or that they found a new Bank of Oysters, which had not been found out before; But so it was, that the Officers got as many Pearls, and some of extraordinary Size and Beauty, as they afterwards sold when they came to *Peru*, for 3217 Pieces of Eight.

When they had done this, I told them it was but meet, that as they had made so good a Purchase for themselves by the Labour of the Men, the Men shou'd have the Consideration which I had propos'd to them. But now I wou'd make another Condition with them, That we would stay three Days more, and what ever was Catch'd in these three Days, shou'd be Shar'd among the Men at the first Port we came at, where they could be Sold; that the Men who had now been out so long, might have something to buy Clothes and Liquors, without anticipating their Wages: But then I made a Condition with the Men too, *viz.* that what ever was taken, they shou'd Deposite it in my Hands, and with the joynt Trust of three Men of their own Choosing, one out of each Ship, and  
that

that we wou'd sell the Pearl, and I should divide the Money among them equally, that so there might be no Quarelling or Discontent, and that none of them shou'd play any Part of it away: These Engagements they all came willingly into, and away they went a Dredging, Relieving one another punctually; so that in the whole three Days, every Man Work'd an equal Share of Hours with the rest.

But the poor Men had not so good Luck for themselves, as they had for their Officers. However, they got a considerable Quantity, and some very fine ones; among the rest, they had Two, in the exact Shape of a Pear, and very exactly Match'd; and these they wou'd needs make me a Present of, because I had been so kind to them, to make the Proposal for them: I wou'd have paid for them two hundred Pieces of Eight, but One and All, they wou'd not be paid; and wou'd certainly have been very much Affronted, if I had not accepted of them; and yet the Success of the Men was not so small, but join'd with the two Pieces of Eight a Man, which I allowed them on the Ships Account, and the like Allowance the Officers made them, and the Produce of their own Purchase they Divided afterwards, about fifteen Pieces of Eight a Man, which was a great Encouragement to them.

Thus we spent in the whole, near three Weeks here, and called these the *Pearl-Islands*, tho' we had given no Names to any Places before; we were the more Surpriz'd with this Unexpected Booty, because, we all thought it very Unusual, to find Pearl of so excellent a Kind in such a Latitude as that of forty nine, to fifty; but it seems there are Riches yet unknown in those Parts of the World,

World, where they have never been yet expected; and I have been told, by those who pretend to give a Reason for it, that if there was any Land directly under the Poles, either *South* or *North*, there wou'd be found Gold of a Fineness more than Double to any that was ever yet found in the World: And this is the Reason, they say, why the Magnetick Influence, directs to the Poles, that being the Center of the most pure Metals; and why the Needle, toucht with the Load-Stone, or Magnet, always points to the *North* or *South* Pole. But I do not recommend this as a Certainty, because, 'tis Evident, no Demonstration could ever be arriv'd to, nor could any Creature reach to that particular Spot of Land under the Pole, if such there should be, those Lands being Surrounded with Mountains of Snow, and frozen Seas which never Thaw, and are uterly Unpassible, either for Ships or Men.

But to return to our Voyage, having thus spent, as I have said, three Weeks on this unexpected Expedition; we set Sail, and as I was almost satisfied with the Discoveries we had made, I was for bending my Course *Due-East*, and so directly for the *South* part of *America*; but the Winds now blowing fresh from the *N. W.* and good Weather, I took the Occasion, as a Favourable Summons, to keep still on *Southing* as well as *East*, till we came into the Latitude of fifty six; when our Men who had been all along, a Warm-Weather-Voyage, began to be Pinch't very much with the Cold, and particularly Complain'd, that they had not Cloaths sufficient for it.

But they were brought to be Content by Force; for the Wind continuing at *N.* and *N. N. W.* and blowing very hard, we were oblig'd to keep our  
 Course



Course farther *South* indeed, than I ever intended; and one of our Men swore we shou'd be driven to the *South-Pole* ; indeed, we rather ran afore it, than kept our Course ; and in this Run, we suffered the extreamest Cold, tho' a *Northerly* Wind in those Latitudes is the warm Wind, as a *Southerly* is here ; but it was attended with Rain and Snow, and both Freezing Violently ; at length, one of our Men cry'd out Land, and our Men began to rejoice ; but I was quite of a differing Opinion, and my Fears were but too just ; for as soon as ever he cry'd Land, and that I ask'd him in what Quarter, and he answered *Due South* which was almost right a Head, I bid wear the Ship, and put her about immediately, not doubting, but instead of Land, I shou'd find it a Mountain of Ice, and so it was ; and it was Happy for us that we had a stout Ship under us, for it blew a Fret of Wind. However, the Ship came very well about, tho' when she fill'd again, we found the Ice not half a League Distance under our Stern.

As I hapened to be the Headmost Ship, I fir'd two Guns to give Notice to our other Vessels, for that was our Signal to come about, but that which was very Uneasy to me, the Weather was Hazy, and they were both out of Sight ; which was the first time that we lost Sight of one another in those Seas : However, being both to Windward, and within Hearing of my Guns, they took the Warning, and came about with more Leafure, and less Hazard than I had done.

I stood away now to the *Eastward*, firing Guns continually, that they might know which Way to follow ; and they answered me duly, to let me know that they heard me.

It was our great good Hap also, that it was Day when we escaped this Danger ; in the Afternoon the Wind abated, and the Weather clear'd up : We then call'd a Council, and resolv'd to go no farther S. being then in the Latitude of sixty seven *South*, which I suppose, is the farthest *Southern* Latitude that any *European* Ship ever saw in those Seas.

That Night it froze extremely hard, and the Wind Veering to the *S. W.* it was the severest Cold that ever I felt in my Life ; a Barrel or Cask of Water, which stood on the Deck, Froze intirely in one Night, into one Lump, and our Cooper, Knocking off the Hoops from the Cask, took it to Pieces, and the Barrel of Ice stood by it self, in the true Shape of the Vessel it had been in. This Wind was however Favourable to our Deliverance, for we stood away now *N. E.* and *N. E.* by *N.* making fresh Way with a fair Wind.

We made no more Land, till we came into the Latitude of sixty two, when we saw some Islands at a great Distance, on both Sides of us ; we believed them to be Islands, because we saw many of them, with large Openings between. But we were all so willing to get into a warmer Climate, that we did not incline to put in any where, till having run thus fifteen Days, and the Wind still holding *Southerly* with small Alteration and clear Weather, We could easily perceive the Climate alter'd, and the Weather grew Milder ; and here taking an Observation, I found my self in the Latitude of Fifty and a Half, and that our Meridian-Distance from the *Ladrones West*, was eighty seven Degrees, being almost one Sem-idiamiter of the Globe, so that I could not  
be

be far from the Coast of *America*, which was my next Design, and indeed, the chief Design of the whole Voyage.

On this Expectation, I chang'd my Course a little, and went away *N.* by *E.* till by an Observation, I found my self in forty seven Degrees seven Minutes, and then standing away *East*, for about eleven Days more, we made the Tops of the *Andes* the great Mountains of *Chili* in *South-America* to our great Joy and Satisfaction, tho' at a very great Distance.

We found our Distance from the Shore, not less than twenty Leagues, the Mountains being so very High, and our next Business was to Consider, what part of the *Andes* it must be, and to what Port we shou'd Direct our selves first. Upon the Whole, we found we were too much to the *South* still, and resolv'd to make directly for the River or Port of *Valdivia* or *Baldivia*, call it which you please, in the Latitude of forty Degrees; so we stood away to the *North*: The next Day this *Pacifick quiet Sea*, as they call'd it, shew'd us a very frowning rough Countenance, and prov'd the very Extreme of a contrary Disposition. For it blew a Storm of Wind at *E.* by *S.* and drove us off the Coast again, but it abated again for a Day or two; and then for six Days together, it blew excessive hard, almost all at *East*; so that I found no possibility of getting into the Shore: And besides, I found that the Winds came off that Mountainous Country in Squalls; and that the nearer we came the Hills, the Gusts were the more Violent: So I resolv'd to run for the Island of *Juan Ferandes* to refresh our selves there until the Weather was settled; and besides we wanted fresh Water very much.

The

The little that the Wind stood *Southerly* help'd me in this Run, and we came in five Days more fair with the Island, to our great Joy, and brought all our Ships to an Anchor as near the watering Place as is usual, where we rode easy, tho' the Wind continued to blow very hard; and being, I say, now about the Middle of our Voyage, I shall break off my Account here, as of the first Part of my Work, and begin again at our Departure from hence.

It is true, we had got over much the greater Run, as to Length of Way; but the most important Part of our Voyage was yet to come, and we had no inconsiderable Length to run neither, for as we purposed to sail *North*, the Height of *Panama*, in the Latitude of nine Degrees *N.* and back again by Cape *Horn*, in the Latitude of, perhaps, sixty Degrees *South*, and that we were now in forty Degrees *South*; those three added to the Run, from Cape *Horn* home to *England*, made a prodigious Length, as you will see by this following Account; in which, also the Meridian Distances are not at all reckoned, tho' those also are very great.

	Deg.
From <i>Juan Fernando</i> to } the Line.	30
From the Line to <i>Panama</i>	9
Carried over	<hr style="width: 10%; margin: 0 auto;"/> 39
- O	Brought



Brought over 39  
 From *Panama* to Cape  
*Horn*, including the }  
 Distance we take in } 60  
 going round }

From Cape *Horn* to the }  
 Line again in the N. } 60  
 Seas }

From the Line to *England* 51

---

210 Degrees.

*N. B.* Only you must deduct from this Account, the Distance from *Lima* to *Panama*, because we did not go up to *Panama*, as we intended to do.

By this Account we had almost thirty Degrees to run more than a Diameter of the Globe, besides our Distance *West*, where we then were, from the Meridian of *England*, whither we were to go ; which, if exactly calculated, is above seventy Degrees, take it from the Island of *Juan Fernandes*.

But to return a little to our Stay in this Place, for that belongs to this Part of my Account, and of which I must make a few short Observations.

It was scarce possible to restrain *English Men*, after so long beating the Sea, from going on Shore, when they came to such a Place of Refreshment as this; nor indeed was it reasonable to restrain them, considering how we all might be supposed to stand in need of Refreshment; and considering that here was no Length of Ground for the Men to wander in, no Liquors to come at to distract them with their Excess; and, which was still more, no Women to disorder or debauch them: We all knew their chief Exercise would be Hunting Goats for their Subsistence; and we knew also, that, however they wanted the Benefit of fresh Provision, they must work hard to catch it, before they could taste the Sweet of it. Upon these Considerations, I say, our Ships being well moor'd, and riding safe, we restrain'd none of them, except a due Number to take Care of each Ship; and those were taken out by Lot, and then had their Turn also to go on Shore some Days afterwards, and, in the mean Time, had both fresh Water and fresh Meat sent them immediately, and that in sufficient Quantity, to their Satisfaction. As soon as we were on Shore, and had look'd about us, we began first with getting some fresh Water, for we greatly wanted it, then carrying a small Cask of Arack on Shore, I made a Quantity of it be put into a whole Butt of Water before I let our Men drink a Drop; so correcting a little the Chilness of the Water, because I knew they would drink an immoderate Quantity, and endanger their Healths: And the Effect answer'd my Care; for those who drank at the Spring, where they took in the Water, before I got this Butt fill'd, and before the

Arack was put into it, fell into Swoonings and faint Sweats, having gorg'd themselves too much with the cool Water; and two or three, I thought, would have dy'd; but our Surgeons took such Care of them, that they recover'd.

While this was doing, others cut down Branches of Trees, and built us two large Booths, and five or six smaller; and we made two Tents with some old Sails: And thus we encamp'd, as if we had been to take up our Dwelling, and intended to People the Island.

At the same Time, others of our Men began to look out for Goats, for you may believe, we all long'd for a little fresh Meat. They were a little too hasty at their Work at first; for firing among the first Goats they came at, when there was but a few Men together, they frightened the Creatures, and they ran all away into Holes, and among the Rocks and Places where we could not find them: So that for that Day they made little of it. However, sending for more Fire-men, they made a Shift to bring in seventeen Goats the same Day; whereof we sent five on Board the Ships, and feasted with the rest on Shore. But the next Day the Men went to work in another Manner, and with better Conduct; for as we had Hands enough, and Fire-arms enough, they spread themselves so far, that they, as it were, surrounded the Creatures; and so driving them out of their Fastnesses and Retreats, they had no Occasion to shoot, for the Goats could not get from them, and they took them every where with their Hands, except some of the old He-goats, which were so surly, that they would stand at Bay, and rise at them, and would  
not

not be taken ; and these, as being old also, and as they thought, good for nothing, they let go.

In short, so many of our Men went on Shore, and these divided themselves into so many little Parties, and ply'd their Work so hard, and had such good Luck, that I told them, it look'd as if they had made a general Massacre of the Goats, rather than a Hunting.

Our Men also might be said, not to refresh themselves, but to feast themselves here with fresh Provisions ; for, tho' we stay'd but thirteen Days, yet we kill'd three hundred and seventy Goats ; and our Men who were on Board, were very merrily employ'd, I assure you ; for they might be said to do very little but *roast* and *stew*, and *broil* and *fry* from Morning to Night ; it was indeed an exceeding Supply to them, for they had been extremely fatigu'd with the last Part of their Voyage, and had had no fresh Provisions for six Weeks before.

This made them hunt the Goats with the more Eagerness ; and indeed, they surrounded them so dexterously, and follow'd them so nimbly, that, notwithstanding the Difficulties of the Rocks, yet the Goats could hardly ever escape them. Here our Men found also very good Fish, and some few Tortoises, or Turtles, as the Sea men call them ; but they valued them not, when they had such Plenty of Venison : Also they found some very good Herbs in the Island, which they boil'd with the GoatsFlesh, and which made their Broth very savoury and comfortable, and withal very Healing and good against the Scurvy, which in those Climates *English* Men are very subject to.



We were now come to the Month of *April* 1715, having spent almost eight Months in this trafficking wandering Voyage, from *Manilla* hither. And whoever shall follow the same, or a like Track, if ever such a Thing shall happen, will do well to make a Year of it, and may find it very well worth while.

I doubt not, but there are many undiscover'd Parts of Land to the *West*, and to the *South* also; of the first Shore, of which I mention'd, that we stay'd trafficking for little Bits of Gold. And tho' it is true, that such a Traffick, as I have given an Account of, is very advantageous in it self, and worth while to look for; especially after having had a good Market for an outward bound *European* Cargo, according to the Pattern of ours at the *Phillipines*; and which, by the Way, they need not miss; I say, as this Trade for Gold would be well worth while, so had we gone the best Way, and taken a Course more to the *South* from *Manilla*, not going away *E.* to the *Ladrones*, we should certainly have fallen in with a Country from the Coast of *New Guinea*, where we might have found Plenty of Spices, as well as of Gold.

For why should we not be allow'd to suppose, that the Country on the same Continent, and in the same Latitude, should produce the same Growth? Especially considering them situated, as it may be call'd, in the Neighbourhood of one another.

Had we then proceeded this Way, no Question, but we might have fixt on some Place for a Settlement, either *English* or *French*; whence a Correspondence being establish'd with *Europe*, either by *Cape Horn East*, or the *Cape De Bona Espe-*

*Esperance West*, as we had thought fit; they might have found as great a Production of the Nutmegs, and the Cloves, as at *Banda*, and *Ternate*; or have made those Productions have been planted there for the future, where, no doubt, they would grow and thrive as well, as they do now in the *Molucco's*.

But we spun out too much Time for the Business we did; and tho' we might, as above, discover new Places, and get very well too; yet we did nothing, in Comparison of what we might be suppos'd to do, had we made the Discovery more our Business.

I cannot doubt also, but that when I stood away *South*, it was too late; for had I stood into the Latitude of sixty seven at first, as I did afterwards, I have good Reason to believe, that those Islands, which we call the *Molucco's*, and which lie so thick, and for so great an Extent, go on yet farther, and it is scarce to be imagin'd, that they break off just with *Gilloto*.

This I call a Mistake in me; namely, that I stood away *East* from the *Phillipines* to the *Ladrones*, before I had gone any Length to the *South*.

But to come to the Course set down in this Work, namely, *S. E.* and by *E.* from the said *Ladrones*, the Places I have taken Notice of, as these, do not, in my Opinion, appear to be inconsiderable, and of no Value; so had we search'd farther into them, I doubt not, but there are greater Things to be discover'd; and perhaps, a much greater Extent of Land also. For as I have but just, as it were, describ'd the Shell, having made no Search after the Kernel; it is more than probable, that within

the Country, there might be greater Discoveries made, of immense Value too. For even as I observ'd several Times, whenever we found any People that had Gold, and ask'd them, as well as by Signs we could make them understand, they always pointed to the Rivers, and the Mountains, which lay farther up the Country, and which we never made any Discovery of; having little in our View, but the getting what little Share of Gold, the poor People had about them. Whereas had we taken a Possession of the Place, and left a Number of Men sufficient to support themselves, in making a farther Search; I cannot doubt, but that there must be a great deal of that, of which the unactive *Indians* had gotten but a little.

Nor had we any skilful Man among us, to view the Face of the Earth; and see what Treasure of choice Vegetables might be there. We had indeed six very good Surgeons; and one of them, who we took in among the *Madagascar* Men, was a Man of very great Reading, and Judgment; But he acknowledg'd, he had no Skill in Botanicks, having never made it his Study.

But, to tell the Truth, our *Doctors* themselves, so we call the Surgeons at Sea, were so taken up in the Traffick for Gold; that they had no Leisure to think of any Thing else. They did indeed pick up some Shells, and some strange figur'd Skeletons of Fishes, and small Beasts, and other Things, which they esteem'd as Rarities; But they never went a Simpling, as we call it; or to enquire, what the Earth brought forth that was rare, and not to be found any where else.

I think

I think likewise, 'tis worth observing, how the People we met with, where, 'tis probable, no Ships, much less *European* Ships, had ever been; and where they had never convers'd with Enemies, or with Nations accustomed to steal and plunder; I say, the People, who liv'd thus, had no Fire, no Rage in their Looks; no jealous Fears of Strangers doing them Harm; and consequently no Desire to do Harm to others. They had Bows and Arrows indeed, but it was rather to kill the Deer and Fowls, and to provide themselves Food, than to offend their Enemies; for they had none.

When therefore removing from thence, we came to other and different Nations, who were ravenous and mischievous, treacherous and fierce; we concluded, they had convers'd with other Nations; either by going to them, or their Vessels coming there. And to confirm me in this Opinion, I found, these fierce false *Indians* had *Canoes* and Boats; some of one Kind, and some of another; by which perhaps, they convers'd with the Islands, or other Nations near them; and that they also receiv'd Ships and Vessels from other Nations; by which they had several Occasions to be upon their Guard; and learn'd the treacherous and cruel Part from others; which Nature gave them no Ideas of before.

As the Natives of these Places were tractable and courteous, so they would be made easily subservient and assistant to any *European* Nation that would come to make Settlements among them; especially, if those *European* Nations used them with Humanity and Courtesy; for I have made it a general Observation concerning



cerning the Natural Disposition of all the Savage Nations that ever I met with: That if they are once but really oblig'd, they will be always very faithful.

But it is our People, I mean the *Europeans*, breaking Faith with them, that first teaches them Ingratitude; and inures them to treat their new Comers with Breach of Faith, and with Cruelty and Barbarity. If you once win them by Kindness, and doing them good, I mean at first, before they are taught to be Rogues by Example, they will generally be honest, and be kind also to the uttermost of their Power.

It is to be observ'd, that it has been the Opinion of all the Sailors, who have navigated those Parts of the World, that farther *South* there has been great Tracts of undiscover'd Land; and some have told us, they have seen them, and have call'd them by such and such Names; as particularly the Isles of *Solomon*, of which yet, we can read of no Body that ever went on Shore on them, or that could give any Account of them; except such as are Romantick, and not to be depended upon.

But what has been the Reason why we have hitherto had nothing but Guesses made at those Things, and that all that has been said of such Lands, has been imperfect? The Reason, if I may speak my Opinion, has been, because it is such a prodigious Run from the Coast of *America* to the Islands of the *Ladrones*, that the few People who have perform'd it, never durst venture to go out of the Way of the Trade Winds, lest they should not be able to subsist for want of Water and Provisions;

fions ; and this is particularly the Case in the Voyage from the Coast of *America* only.

Whereas, to go the Way which I have mark'd out, had we seen a Necessity, and that there was no Land to be found to the *South* of the Tropick, for a Supply of Provisions and fresh Water, it was evident we could have gone back again from one Place to another, and have been constantly supplied ; and this makes it certain also, that it cannot be reasonably undertaken by a Ship going from the *East*, I mean the Coast of *America*, to the *West* : But from the *West*, viz. the Spice Islands, to *America West*, it may be adventured with Ease, as you see.

It is true, That *William Cornelius Van Schouton* and *Francis la Mair*, who first found the Passage into the *South-Sea* by *Cape Horn*, and not to pass the Streights of *Magellan* ; I say, they did keep to the *Southward* of the Tropick, and pass, in Part, the same Way I have here given an Account of, as by their Journals, which I have by me at this Time, is apparent.

And it is as true also, that they did meet with many Islands and unknown Shores in those Seas, where they got Refreshment, especially fresh Water : Perhaps some of the Places were the same I have describ'd in this Voyage ; but why they never pursued that Discovery, or mark'd those Islands and Places they got Refreshments at, so that others, in quest of Business, might have touch'd at them, and have receiv'd the like Benefit, that I can give no Account of.

I cannot help being of Opinion, let our Map-makers place them where they will, that those Islands, where we so successfully fish'd for Oysters, or rather for Pearl, are the same which the ancient Geographers have call'd *Solomon's* Islands; and tho' they are so far *South*, the Riches of them may not be the less; nor are they more out of the Way. On the contrary, they lie directly in the Track which our Navigators would take, if they thought fit either to go or come between *Europe* and the *East-Indies*, seeing they that come about *Cape Horn*, seldom go less *South* than the Latitude of sixty three to sixty four Degrees; and these Islands, as I have said, lie in the Latitude of Forty to Forty Eight *South*, and extend themselves near one hundred and sixty Leagues in Breadth from *North* to *South*.

Without doubt, those Islands would make a very noble Settlement, in Order to victual and relieve the *European* Merchants, in so long a Run as they have to make; and when this Trade came to be more frequented, the Calling of those Ships there would enrich the Islands, as the *English* at *St. Hellena* are enriched by the refreshing which the *East-India* Ships find, that meet there.

But to return to our present Situation, at *St. Juan Fernando*; the Refreshment which our Men found here, greatly encourag'd and reviv'd them; and the Broths and Stewings which we made of the Goats Flesh which we kill'd there, than which, nothing could be wholesomer, restored all our sick Men; so that we lost but two Men in our whole Passage from the *East-Indies*; and had lost but eight  
Men

Men in our whole Voyage from *England*, except I should reckon those five Men and a Boy to be lost, which ran away from us in the Country among the *Indians*, as I have already related.

I should have added, that we careen'd and clean'd our Ships here, and put our selves into a Posture for whatever Adventures might happen; for, as I resolv'd upon a Trading Voyage upon the Coast of *Chili* and *Peru*, and a Cruising Voyage also, as it might happen; so, I resolv'd also, to put our Ships into a Condition for both, as Occasion should present.

Our Men were nimble, at this Work especially, having been so well refreshed and heart'ned up, by their extraordinary Supply of fresh Meats, and the Additions of good Broths and Soops, which they fed on every Day in the Island, and with which, they were supplied without any Manner of Limitation, all the while they were at work.

This, I say, being their Case, they got the *Madagascar* Ship hall'd down, and her Bottom wash'd and tallow'd, and she was as clean as when she first came off of the Stocks, in five Days Time; and she was rigg'd, and all set to rights, and fit for Sailing in two more.

The great Ship was not so soon fitted, nor was I in so much Haste, for I had a Design in my Head, which I had not yet communicated to any Body, and that was to send the *Madagascar* Ship a Cruising, as soon as she was fitted up: Accordingly, I say, the fifth Day she was ready, and I managed it so, that the Captain of the *Madagascar* Ship, openly, before all the Men, made the Motion, as if it had been his own Project, and desired



desired I would let him go and try his Fortune, as he call'd it.

I seemed loth at first, but he added to his Importunity, that he and all his Crew were willing, if they made any Purchase, it should be divided among all the Crews, in Shares, according as they were shipped ; that if it was Provisions the Captain should buy it at half Price, for the Use of the whole, and the Money to be shared.

Well, upon hearing his Proposals, which were esteemed very just, and the Men all agreeing, I seemed to consent, and so he had my Orders and Instructions, and Leave to be out twelve Days on his Cruise, and away he went ; his Ship was an excellent Sailor, as has been said, and being now a very clean Ship, I thought he might speak with any Thing, or get away from any Thing, if he pleased ; by the Way, I ordered him to put out none but *French* Colours.

He cruised a Week without seeing a Sail, and stood in quite to the *Spanish* Shore in one Place, but that he was wrong in ; the eighth Day, giving over all Expectations, he stood off again to Sea, and the next Morning he spy'd a Sail, which was a large *Spanish* Ship, and which seemed to stand down directly upon him, which a little check'd his Forwardness ; however, he kept on his Course, when the *Spaniard* seeing him plainer, than, it seems, he had done at first, tack'd, and crowding all the Sail he could carry, stood in for the Shore.

The *Spaniard* was a good Sailor, but our Ship plainly gained upon her, and in the Evening came almost up with her ; when he saw the Land, tho' at a great Distance, and he was loth to be seen, chaceing her, from the Shore ; however, he followed,

lowed, and Night coming on, the *Spaniard* chang'd his Course, thinking to get away, but as the Moon was just rising, our Men, who resolv'd to keep her in Sight, if possible, perceived her, and stretch'd after her with all the Canvas they could lay on.

This Chase held till about Midnight, when our Ship coming up with her, took her, after a little Dispute; they pretended, at first, to have nothing on Board but Timber, which they were carrying, as they said, to some Port for the building of Ships: But our Men had the Secret to make the *Spaniards* confess their Treasure, if they had any; so, that after some hard Words with the *Spanish* Commander, he confessed he had some Money on Board, which on our Mens Promise of good Usage, he afterwards very honestly delivered, and which might amount to about sixteen Thousand Pieces of Eight.

But he had what we were very glad of besides, (*viz.*) about two hundred great Jars of very good Wheat Flower, a large Quantity of Oil, and some Casks of Sweet-Meats, all which was to us very good Prize.

But now our Difficulty was, what we should do with the Ship, and with the *Spaniards*; and this was so real a Difficulty, that I began often to wish he had not taken her, least her being let go, she should alarm the Country, or if detained, discover us all.

It was not above one Day beyond his Orders, that we had the Pleasure of seeing him come into the Road, with his Prize in tow, and the Flower and Oil was a very good Booty to us; but upon second and better Thoughts, we brought the *Spaniards* to a fair Treaty, and, which was more difficult, brought all our Men to consent to it.

The

The Case is this, knowing what I proposed to myself to do, namely, to trade all the Way up the *Spanish* Coast, and to pass for *French* Ships, I knew the taking this *Spanish* Ship would betray us all, unless I resolved to sink the Ship and murder all the Men, so I came to this Resolution, namely, to talk with the *Spanish* Captain, and make Terms with him, which I soon made him very glad of.

First I pretended to be very angry with the Captain of the *Madagascar* Ship, and to have put him under Confinement, for having made a Prize of his Catholick Majesty's Subjects, we being Subjects to the King of *France*, who was in perfect Peace with the King of *Spain*.

Then I told him, that I would restore him his Ship and all his Money, and as to his Flower and Oil, which the Men had fallen greedily upon, having a Want of it, I would pay him the full Value in Money for it all, and for any other Loss he had sustained, only that I would oblige him to lie in the Road at the Island where we were, till we returned from our Voyage to *Lima*, whether we were going to trade, for which lying, I also agreed to pay him Demorage for his Ship, after the Rate of eight hundred Pieces of Eight *per* Month, and if I returned not in four Months, he was to be at his Liberty to go.

The Captain, who thought himself a Prisoner and undone, you may be sure, would embrace this Offer; and so we secured his Ship till our Return, and there we found him very honestly at an Anchor, of which in its Place.

*The End of the First Part.*



A NEW  
VOYAGE  
ROUND THE  
WORLD.

---

PART II.

---

**W**E were now, as I have said, much about the Middle of our Voyage, at least as I had intended it; and having stor'd ourselves with every thing the Place afforded, we got ready to proceed, for we had, as it were, dwelt here near a Fortnight.

By this Time the Weather was good again, and we stood away to the S. E. for the Port of *Baldivia*, as above, and reach'd to the Mouth of the Harbour in Twelve Days Sail.



I was now to change Faces again, and Captain *Merlote* appear'd as Captain, all Things being tranſacted in his Name, and *French* Captains were put into the *Brigantine*, and into the *Madagascar* Ship alſo: The firſt Thing the Captain did, was to ſend a civil Meſſage to the *Spaniſh* Governor, to acquaint him, That being come into thoſe Seas as Friends, under his moſt Chriſtian Majeſty's Commiſſion, and with the King of *Spain*'s Permiſſion, we deſir'd to be treated as Allies, and to be allowed to take Water and Wood, and to buy ſuch Refreshments as we wanted, for which we would pay ready Money; alſo we carry'd *French* Colours, but took not the leaſt Notice of our Intention to trade with them.

We received a very civil Answer from the Governor (*viz.*) That being the King of *France*'s Subjects, and that they were in Alliance with us, we were very welcome to Wood and Water, and any Proviſion the Place would afford; and that our Perſons ſhould be ſafe, and in perfect Liberty to go on Shore, but that he could not allow any of our Men to lie on Shore, it being expreſs in his Orders, That he ſhould not permit any Nation, not actually in Commiſſion from the King of *Spain*, to come on Shore, and ſtay there, no not one Night; and that this was done to prevent Diſorders

We answered, That we were content with that Order, ſeeing we did not deſire our Men ſhould go on Shore to ſtay there, we not  
being

being able to answer for any Mis-behaviour, which was frequent among Seamen.

While we continued here, several *Spaniards* came on Board and visited us, and we often went on Shore on the same Pretence; but our *Supra-Cargo*, who understood his Business too well not to make use of the Occasion, presently let the *Spaniards* see, that he had a great Cargo of Goods to dispose of; they as freely took the Hint, and let him know that they had Money enough to pay for whatever they bought; so they fell to work, and they bought *East-India* and *China Silks*, *Japan Ware*, *China Ware*, *Spice*, and something of every thing we had. We knew we should not sell all our Cargo here, nor any extraordinary Quantity; but we knew, on the other Hand, that what we did sell here, we should sell for One hundred Pounds *per Cent.* extraordinary: I mean, more than we should sell for at *Lima*, or any other Ports on that Side, and so we did; for here we sold a Bottle of Arrack for Four Pieces of Eight; a Pound of Cloves for Five Pieces of Eight, and a Pound of Nutmegs for Six Pieces of Eight; and the like of other Things.

They would gladly have purchas'd some *European Goods*, and especially *English Cloth* and *Bays*; but as we had, indeed, very few such Things left, so we were not willing they should see them, that they might not have any Suspicion of our being *English Men*, and *English Ships*, which would soon have put an End to all our Commerce.

While we lay here trafficking with the *Spaniards*, I set some of my Men to work, to converse among the Native *Chilians* or *Indians*, as we call them, of the Country, and several things they learn'd of them according to the Instructions which I gave them; for Example; First, I understood by them, That the Country People who do not live among the *Spaniards*, have a mortal Aversion to them; that it is riveted in their Minds by Tradition, from Father to Son, ever since the Wars which had formerly been among them; and that though they did not now carry on those Wars, yet the Animosity remained, and the Pride and cruel haughty Temper of the *Spaniards* was such still to those of the Country People, who came under their Government, as makes that Aversion continually increase. They let us know, That if any Nation in the World would but come in, and assist them against the *Spaniards*, and support them in their Rising against them, they would soon rid their Hands of the whole Nation. This was to the Purpose, exactly, as to what I wanted to know.

I then ordered particular Enquiry to be made, Whether the Mountains of *Andes* (which are, indeed, prodigious to look at, and so frightful for their Height; that 'tis not to be thought of without some Horror) were in any Places passable? what Country there was beyond them? and whether any of their People had gone over and knew the Passage?

The *Indians* concurr'd with the *Spaniards* in this (for our Men enquir'd of both) That though the *Andes* were to be supposed, indeed, to be the highest Mountains in the World, and that, generally speaking, they were unpassable, yet that there had been Passages found by the *Vales* among the Mountains; where, with fetching several Compasses and Windings, partly on the Hills, and partly in the Valleys, Men went, with a great deal of Ease and Safety, quite through or over, call it as we will, to the other called the *East-side*, and as often returned again.

Some of the more knowing *Indians* or *Chilians* went farther than this, and when our Men enquir'd after the Manner, Situation and Produce of the Country on the other Side, they told them, That when they pass'd the Mountains from that Part of the Country, they went chiefly to fetch Cattle, and kill Deer, of which there were great Numbers in that Part of the Land; But that when they went from *St. Jago*, they turned away *North* some Leagues, when they came to a Town called *St. Antonio de los Vejos*, or, The Town of *St. Anthony* and the old Men; That there was a great River at that City, from whence they found Means to go down to the *Rio de la Plata*, and so to the *Buenos Ayres*; and that they frequently carried thither great Sums of Money in *Chilian Gold*, and brought back *European Goods* from thence.



I had all I wanted now, and bad my Men say no more to them of that, only tell them, That they would come back, and would travel a little that Way to see the Country: The People appeared very well pleased with that, assuring them, That if they would do so, they should find some, as well *Spaniards* as *Chilians*, who would be Guides to them thro' the Hills; also assuring them, That they would find the Hills very practicable, and the People, as they went along, very ready to assist and furnish them with whatever they found they wanted, especially if they come to know that they were not *Spaniards*, or that they would protect them from the *Spaniards*, which would be the most agreeable Thing to them in the World; for it seems many of the Nations of the *Chilians*, had been driven to live in the Hills, and some even beyond them, to avoid the Cruelty and Tyranny of the *Spaniards*, especially in the Beginning of their planting in that Country.

The next Enquiry I ordered them to make, was, Whether it was possible to pass those Hills with Horses, or Mules, or any kind of Carriages? and they assured them, They might travel with Mules, and even with Horses also, but rather with Mules; but as to Carriages, such as Carts, or Waggon, they allowed, that was not practicable. They assured us, That some of those Ways thro' the Hills were much frequented; and that there were Towns, or Villages rather, of People, to be found in the Valleys between  
the

the said Hills; some of which Villages, were very large, and the Soil very rich and fruitful, bearing sufficient Provisions for the Inhabitants, who were very numerous. They told us, The People were not much inclin'd to live in Towns as the *Spaniards* do, but that they liv'd scatter'd up and down the Country, as they were guided by the Goodness of the Land; that they liv'd very secure and unguarded, never offering any Injury to one another, nor fearing Injury from any, but the *Spaniards*.

I caus'd these Enquiries to be made with the utmost Prudence and Caution, so that the *Spaniards* had not the least Suspicion of our Design; and thus having finished our Traffick, and taken in Water and Provisions, we sailed from *Baldivia*, having settled a little Correspondence there with Two *Spaniards*, who were very faithful to us; and with Two *Chilian Indians*, who we had, in a particular Manner, engaged, and who, to make sure of, we took along with us; and having spent about Thirteen Days here, and taken the Value of about Six thousand Pieces of Eight in Silver or Gold, but most of it in Gold, we set Sail.

Our next Port was the Bay of the *Conception*: Here, having Two or Three Men on Board, who were well acquainted with the Coast, we run boldly into the Bay, and came to an Anchor in that which they call the Bite, or little Bay, under the Island *Qui-riquina*; and from thence we sent our Boat, with *French* Mariners to row, and a *French*

Coxon, with a Letter to the *Spanish* Governor, from Captain *Merlotc*. Our Pretence was always the same as before, That we had his most Christian Majesty's Commission, &c. and that we desired Liberty to Wood and Water, and to buy Provisions, having been a very long Voyage, and the like.

Under those Pretences, we lay here about Ten Days, and drove a very considerable Trade for such Goods as we were sure they wanted; and having taken about the Value of Eight thousand Pieces of Eight, we set Sail for the Port or River that goes up to *St. Fago*, where we expected a very good Market, being distant from the *Conception* about Sixty-five Leagues.

*St. Fago* is the Capital City of *Chily*, and stands Twelve Leagues within the Land; there are Two Ports, which are made use of to carry on the Traffick of this Place, viz. *R. de Ropocalmo*, and *Port de Valpariso*. We were bound to the last, as being the only Port for Ships of Burthen, and where there is Security from bad Weather.

We found means here, without going up to the City of *St. Fago*, to have Merchants enough to come down to us; for this being a very rich City, and full of Money, we found all our valuable Silks of *China*, our *Atlass's*, *China* Damasks, Satins, &c. were very much valued, and very much wanted, and no Price was too high for us to ask for them; for, in a Word, the *Spanish* Ladies, who, for Pride, do not come behind any in the World, whatever they do for Beauty,  
were

were so eager for those fine Things, that, almost, any reasonable Quantity might have been sold there; but the Truth is, We had an unreasonable Quantity, and therefore, as we had other Markets to go to, we did not let them know what a great Stock of Goods we had, but took care they had something of every thing they wanted: We likewise found our Spices were an excellent Commodity in those Parts, and sold for a monstrous Profit too, as, indeed, every thing else did also, as above.

We found it very easy to sell here to the Value of One hundred and thirty thousand Pieces of Eight, in all sorts of *China* and *East-India* Goods; for still, though we had some of the *English* Cargo loose, we let none of it be seen. We took most of the Money in Gold uncoin'd, which they get out of the Mountains in great Quantities, and of which we shall have Occasion to speak more hereafter.

Our next trading Port was *Coquimbo*, a small Town, but a good Port: Here we went in without Ceremony, and upon the same Foot, of being *French*, were well received, traded underhand with the *Spanish* Merchants, and got Letters to some other Merchants at *Guasco*, a Port in a little Bay about Fifteen Leagues North from *Coquimbo*.

From hence, to the Port of *Copiapo*, is Twenty-five Leagues: Here we found a very good Port, though no trading Town or City; but the Country being well inhabited, we found Means to acquaint some of the principal *Spaniards* in the Country, of what we were,



were, and (with which they were pleased well enough) That they might trade with us for such Things, which it was easy to see, they gave double Price for to the Merchants who came from *Lima*, and other Places: This brought them to us with so much Eagerness, that though they bought for their own Use, not for Sale, yet they came furnished with Orders, perhaps, for Two or Three Families together, and being generally rich, would frequently lay out Six hundred, or Eight hundred Pieces of Eight a Man; so that we had a most excellent Market here, and took above Thirty thousand Pieces of Eight; that is to say, The Value of it, for they still paid all in Gold.

Here we had Opportunity to get a Quantity of good Flower, or Wheat Meal, of very good *European* Wheat; that is to say, Of that sort of Wheat; and withal, had good Bisket baked on Shore, so that now we got a large Recruit of Bread, and our Men began to make Puddings, and liv'd very comfortably; likewise we got good Sugar at the Ingenioes, or Sugar-Mills, of which there were several here, and the farther *North* we went, their Number increased, for we were now in the Latitude of Twenty-eight Degrees Two Min. *South*.

We had but one Port now, of any Consequence, that we intended to touch at, 'till we came to the main Place we aim'd at, which was *Lima*, and this was about Two thirds of the Way thither; I mean *Porto Rica*, or *Arica*; this was in the Latitude of Eighteen

teen Degrees, or thereabouts : They were very shy of us here, as having been much upon the r Guard for some Years past, for fear of *Buccaniers*, and *English* Privateers; but when they understood we were *French*, and our *French* Captain sent Two Recommendations to them from a Merchant at *St. Jago*, they were then very well satisfy'd, and we had full Freedom of Commerce here also.

From hence we came the highth of *Lima*, the Capital Port, if not the Capital City, of *Peru*, lying in the Latitude of Twelve Degrees Thirty Minutes. Had we made the least Pretence of trading here, we should, at least, have had Soldiers put on Board our Ships to have prevented it, and the People would have been forbidden to trade with us upon Pain of Death; but Captain *Merlote* having brought Letters to a principal Merchant of *Lima*, he instructed him how to manage himself at his first coming into the Port; which was to ride without the Town of *Callao*, out of the Command of the Puntals or Castles there, and not to come any nearer, upon what Occasion soever, and then to leave the rest to him.

Upon this the Merchant applied himself to the Governor for leave to go on Board the *French* Ship at *Callao*; the Governor understood him, and would not grant it by any means; the Reason was, Because there had been such a general Complaint by the Merchants from *Chartagena*, *Porto Bello*, and other Places, of the great Trade carried on here with *French* Ships from *Europe*, to the Destruction

tion of the Merchants, and to the Ruin of the Trade of the Galleons, that the Governor, or Viceroy of *Peru*, had forbid the *French* Ships landing any Goods.

Now, though this made our Traffick impracticable at *Lima* itself, yet it did, by no Means, hinder the Merchants trading with us under Cover, &c. but especially when they came to understand, that we were not loaden from *Europe*, with Bays, long Ells, Druggets, broad Cloth, Serges, Stuffs, Stockings, Hats, and such like Woollen Manufactures of *France*, *England*, &c. but that our Cargo was the same with that of the *Manilla* Ships at *Acapulco*; and that we were loaden with Callicoes, Muslins, fine wrought *China* Silks, Damasks, *Japan* Ware, *China* Ware, Spices, &c. there was then no with-holding them, but they came on Board us in the Night with Canoes, and staying all Day, went on Shore again in the Night, carrying their Goods to different Places, where they knew they could convey them on Shore without Difficulty.

In this Manner we traded publickly enough, not much unlike the Manner of our Trade at the *Manillaes*; and here we effectually clear'd ourselves of our whole Cargo, as well *English* Goods, as *Indian*, to an immense Sum. Here our Men, Officers as well as Seamen, sold their fine Pearl, particularly one large Parcel, containing One hundred Seventy-three very fine Pearls, but of different Sizes, which a Priest bought, as we were told, to dress up the Image of the blessed *Virgin Mary*, in one of their Churches.

In

In a Word, We came to a Ballance here; for we sold every thing, that we had the least Intention to part with; the chief things we kept in Reserve were, some Bales of *English* Goods; also all the Remainder of our Beads and Bugles, Toys, Iron-work, Knives, Scizars, Hatchets, Needles, Pins, Glass Ware, and such Things as we knew the *Spaniards* did not regard, and which might be useful in our farther Designs, of which my Head was still very full. Those, I say, We kept still.

Here, likewise, we sold our *Brigantine*, which, though an excellent Sea-boat, as may well be suppos'd, considering the long Voyage we had made in her, was yet so Worm-eaten in her Bottom, that unless we would have new sheath'd her, and, perhaps, shifted most of her Planks too, which would have taken up a great deal of Time; she was, by no Means, fit to have gone any further, at least, not so long a Run as we had now to make, (*viz.*) round the whole *Southern* Part of *America*; and where we should find no Port to put in at (I mean, Where we should have been able to have got any thing done for the Repair of a Ship) 'till we had come home to *England*.

It was propos'd here, To have gone to the Governor or Viceroy of *Peru*, and have obtained his License or Pass, to have travers'd the *Isthmus* of *America*, from Port *St. Maria*, to the River of *Darien*; this we could easily have obtain'd under the Character that we then bore (*viz.*) of having the King of *France's* Commission, and had we been really  
all



all *French*, I believe I should have done it ; but as we were so many *English* Men; and as such were then at open War with *Spain*, I did not think it a safe Adventure, I mean, not a rational Adventure, especially considering what a considerable Treasure we had with us.

On the other Hand, As we were now a strong Body of able Sea-men, and had Two stout Ships under us, we had no Reason to apprehend either the Toil or the Danger of a Voyage round *Cape Horn*, after which, we should be in a very good Condition to make the rest of our Voyage to *England*; whereas, if we travell'd over the *Isthmus* of *America*, we should be all like a Company of Freebooters, and Buccaneers, loose and unshipp'd, and should, perhaps, run some one Way, and some another, among the Log-wood Cutters at the Bay of *Campeachy*, and other Places, to get Passage, some to *Jamaica*, and some to *New England*; and, which was worse than all, should be expos'd to a Thousand Dangers on Account of the Treasure we had with us, perhaps, even to that of murdering and robbing one another; and, as Captain *Merlote* said, who was really a *French* Man, It were much more eligible for us, as *French*, or if we had been such, to have gone up to *Acapulco*, and there to sell our Ships, and get License to travel to *Mexico*, and then to have got the Viceroy's *Assiento*, to have come to *Europe* in the Galleons; but as we were so many *Englishmen*, it was impracticable; our Seamen also being Protestants, such as Seamen generally

rally are, and bold mad Fellows, they would never have carry'd on a Disguise, both of their Nation, and of their Religion, for so long a Time as it would have been necessary to do for such a Journey and Voyage.

But besides all these Difficulties, I had other Projects in my Head, which made me against all the Proposals of passing by Land to the *North-Sea*; otherwise, had I resolv'd it, I should not have much concern'd myself about obtaining a License from the *Spaniards*; for, as we were a sufficient Number of Men to have forced our Way, we should not much have stood upon their giving us leave, or not giving us leave, to go.

But, as I have said, my Views lay another Way, and my Head had been long working upon the Discourse my Men had had with the *Spaniards* at *Baldivia*; I frequently talk'd with the Two *Chilian Indians* which I had on Board, and who spoke *Spanish* pretty well, and who we had taught to speak a little *English*.

I had taken care that they should have all the good Usage imaginable on Board; I had given them each a very good Suit of Cloaths, made by our Taylor, but after their own Manner, with each of them a Bays Cloak; and had given them Hats, Shoes, Stockings, and every thing they desir'd, and they were mighty well pleas'd, and I talk'd very freely with them about the Passage of the Mountains, for that was now my grand Design.

While

While I was coming up the *Chilian Shore*, as you have heard, that is to say, At *St. Fago*, at the *Conception*, at *Arica*, and even at *Lima* itself, we enquir'd, on all Occasions, into the Situation of the Country, the Manner of travelling, and what kind of Country it was beyond the Mountains? and we found them all agreeing in the same Story; and that passing the Mountains of *Les Cordelieras*, for so they call them in Peru, though it was the same Ridge of Hills as we call the *Andes*, was no strange Thing; that there were not One or Two, but a great many Places found out, where they pass'd as well with Horses and Mules, as on Foot, and even some with Carriages; and in particular, they told us at *Lima*, That from *Potosi*, and the Towns thereabouts, there was a long Valley, which ran for One hundred and Sixty Leagues in Length *Southward*, and *S. E.* and that it continued, 'till, the Hills parting, it opened into the main level Country on the other Side; and that there were several Rivers which began in that great Valley, and which all of them run away to the *S.* and the *S. E.* and afterwards, went away *E.* and *E. N. E.* and so fell into the great *Rio de la Plata*, and empty'd themselves into the *North-Seas*; and that Merchants travell'd to those Rivers, and then went down in Boats as far as the Town or City of the *Ascension*, and the *Buènos Ayres*.

This was very satisfying, you may be sure, especially to hear them agree in it, that the *Andes* were to be pass'd (though passing them hereabouts, where, I knew, the main

Land

Land from the *West* Shore, where we now were, must be at least One thousand Five hundred Miles broad) was no Part of my Project; but I laid up all these Things in my Head, and resolv'd to go away to the *South* again, and act as I should see Cause.

We were now got into a very hot Climate, and, whatever was the Cause, my Men began to grow very sickly, and that to such a Degree, that I was once afraid we had got the Plague among us; but our Surgeons, who we all call Doctors at Sea, assured me, There was nothing of that among them, and yet we buried Seventeen Men here, and had between Twenty and Thirty more sick, and, as I thought, dangerously too.

In this Extremity, for I was really very much concerned about it, one of my Doctors came to me, and told me, He had been at the City (that is at *Lima*) to buy some Drugs and Medicines to recruit his Chest, and he had fallen into Company with an *Irish* Jesuit, who he found was an extraordinary good Physician, and that he had had some Discourse with him about our sick Men, and, he believed, for a good Word or Two, he could persuade him to come and visit them.

I was very loth to consent to it, for, says I to the Surgeon, If he is an *Irish* Man, he speaks *English*, and he will presently perceive, that we are all *English* Men, and so we shall be betray'd; all our Designs will be blown up at once, and our farther Measures be all broken, and therefore I would not consent: This I did not speak from the



Fear of any Hurt they could have done me by Force, for I had no Reason to value that, being able to have fought my Way, clear out of their Seas, if I had been put to it; But, as I had traded all the Way by Stratagem, and had many considerable Views still behind, I was unwilling to be disappointed by the Discovery of my Schemes; or that the *Spaniards* should know upon what a double Foundation I acted, and how I was a *French* Ally and Merchant, or an *English* Enemy and Privateer, just as I pleas'd, and as Opportunity should offer; in which case they would have been sure to have trapann'd me, if possible, under the Pretence of the former, and have used me, if they ever should get an Advantage over me, as one of the latter.

This made me very cautious, and I had good Reason for it too, and yet the Sickness and Danger of my Men press'd me very hard to have the Advice of a good Physician, if it was possible; and especially to be satisfied whether it was really the Plague or no; for I was very uneasy about that.

But my Surgeon told me, That as to my Apprehension of Discovery, he would undertake to prevent it by this Method; First, he said, He found that the *Irish* Man did not understand *French* at all, and so I had nothing to do but to order, That when he came on Board, as little *English* should be spoke in his Hearing as possible; and this was not difficult, for almost all our Men had a little *French* at their Tongues End, by having so many *French* Men on Board of them;  
others

others had the *Levant Jargon*, which they call *Lingua Frank*, so that, if they had but due Caution, it could not be suddenly perceived what Country-men they were.

Besides this, the Surgeon ordered, That as soon as the *Padre* came on Board, he should be surrounded with *French* Seamen only, some of which should be ordered to follow him from Place to Place, and chop in with their nimble Tongues, upon some Occasion or other, so that he should hear *French* spoken where-ever he turn'd himself.

Upon this, which, indeed, appeared very easy to be done, I agreed to let the Doctor come on Board, and accordingly the Surgeon brought him the next Day, where Captain *Merlote* received him in the Cabbin, and treated him very handsomly, but nothing was spoken but *French* or *Spanish*; and the Surgeon, who had pretended himself to be an *Irish* Man, acted as Interpreter between the Doctor and us.

Here we told him the Case of our Men that were sick; some of them, indeed, were *French*, and others that could speak *French*, were instructed to speak to him, as if they could speak no other Tongue, and them the Surgeon interpreted; others who were *English*, were call'd *Irish* Men, and Two or three were allowed to be *English* Sea-men, pick'd up in the *East Indies*, as we had Sea-men, we told him, of all Nations.

The Matter, in short, was so carry'd, that the good Man, for such I really think he was, had no manner of Suspicion; and, to

do him Justice, He was an admirable Physician, and did our Men a great deal of good; for all of them; but Three, recovered under his Hands, and those Three had recovered, if they had not, like mad Men, drank Punch when they were almost well, and by their Intemperance, inflam'd their Blood, and thereby thrown themselves back again into their Fever, and put themselves, as the *Padre* said of them, out of the Reach of *Medicine*.

We treated this Man of Art with a great deal of Respect, made him some very handsome Presents, and particularly such as he could not come at in the Country where he was; besides which, I ordered he should have the Value of One hundred Dollars in Gold given him; but he, on the other Hand, thanking Captain *Merlote* for his Bounty, would have no Money; but he accepted a Present of some Linen, a few Handkerchiefs, some Nutmegs, and a Piece of Black Bays, most of which, however, he said, he made Presents of again in the City among some of his Acquaintance.

But he had a farther Design in his Head, which afterwards he communicated in Confidence to the Surgeon I have mentioned, who convers'd with him, and by him to me, and which was to him, indeed, of the highest Importance. The Case was this;

He takes our Surgeon on Shore with him one Day from the *Madagascar* Ship, where he had been with him to visit some of our sick Men, and drinking a Glass of Wine with him, he told him, He had a Favour to ask  
of

of him, and a Thing to reveal to him in Confidence, which was of the utmost Consequence to himself, though of no great Value to him (the Surgeon) and if he would promise the utmost Secrecy to him on his Faith and Honour, he would put his Life into his Hands, *For, Seignior, says he, it will be no less, nor would any thing less than my Life, says he, pay for it, if you should discover it to any of the People here, or any where else on this Coast.*

The Surgeon was a very honest Man, and carry'd, indeed, the Index of it in his Face, and the *Padre* said afterwards, He inclin'd to put this Confidence in him, because he thought he saw something of an honest Man in his very Countenance: After so frank a Beginning, the Surgeon made no Scruple to tell him, That seeing he inclin'd to treat him with such Confidence, and to put a Trust of so great Importance in him, he would give him all the Assurance that was in his Power, that he would be as faithful to him, as it was possible to be to himself; and that the Secret should never go out of his Mouth to any one in the World, but to such, and at such Time, as he should consent to and direct. In short, He used so many solemn Protestations, that the *Padre* made no Scruple to trust him with the Secret, which, indeed, was no less than putting his Life into his Hands: The Case was this, He told him, He had heard them talk of going to *Ireland* in their Return, and as he had been Thirty Years out of his own Country, in such a



remote Part of the World, where it was never likely, that he should ever see it again, the Notion he had entertain'd, that this Ship was going thither, and might set him on Shore there, that he might once more see his Native Country, and his Family and Friends, had fill'd his Mind with such a surprizing Joy, that he could no longer contain himself; and that, therefore, if he would procure Leave of the Captain, that he might come privately on Board, and take his Passage home, he would willingly pay whatever the Captain should desire of him; but that it must be done with the greatest Secrecy imaginable, or else he was undone; for that if he should be discovered and stopp'd, he should be confin'd in the *Jesuits* House there, as long as he liv'd.

The Surgeon told him, The Thing was easy to be done, if he would give him leave to acquaint one Man in the Ship with it, which was not Captain *Merlote*, but a certain *English* Man, who was a considerable Person in the Ship, without whom the Captain did nothing, and who would be more secure to trust, by far, than Captain *Merlote*. The *Padre* told him, That without asking him any Reasons, since he had put his Life in his Hands, he would trust him with the Management of it, and therefore left it intirely to him.

The Surgeon accordingly brought him on Board to me, and making a Confidence of the whole Matter to me, I turn'd to the *Padre*, and told him in *English*, giving him  
my

my Hand, That I would be under all the Engagements and Promises of Secrecy, that our Surgeon had been in, for his Security and Satisfaction; That he had merited too well of us, for us to wish him any Ill; and, in short, That the whole Ship should be engag'd for his Security. I told him, That as to his coming on Board, and bringing any thing off that belong'd to him, he must take his own Measures, and answer to himself for the Success; but that after he was on Board, we would sink the Ship under him, or blow her up into the Air, before we would deliver him up, on any Account whatever.

He was so pleas'd with my frank Way of talking to him, that he told me, He would put his Life into my Hands, with the same Freedom as he had done before with my Surgeon; so we began to concert Measures for his coming on Board with Secrecy.

He told us, There was no need of any Proposals, for he would acquaint the Head of their House, that he intended to go on board the *French Ship* in the Road, and to go to *St. Fago*, where he had several Times been in the same manner; and that, as they had not the least Suspicion of him, he was very well satisfied, that they would make no Scruple of it.

But his Mistake in this might have been his Ruin; for tho' had it been a *Spanish Ship*, they wou'd not have mistrusted him, yet when he nam'd the *French Ship* in the Road of *Callao*, they began to question him very smartly about it: Upon which he was ob-

lig'd to tell them, That since they were doubtful of him, he would not go at all, telling them withal, That it was hard to suspect him who had been so faithful to his Vows, as to reside for near Thirty Years among them, when he might frequently have made an Escape from them, if he had been so disposed. So for Three or Four Days he made no Appearance of going at all; but having had private Notice from me the Evening before we sail'd, he found Means to get out of their Hands, came down to *Callao* on a Mule in the Night, and our Surgeon lying ready with our Boat about half a League from the Town, as by Appointment, he took him on Board, with a Negro his Servant, and brought him safe to the Ship: Nor had we receiv'd him on Board half an Hour, but, being unmoored and ready to sail, we put out to Sea, and carry'd him clear off.

He made his Excuses to me, That he was come away naked, according to his Profession; that he had purposed to have furnish'd himself with some Provisions for the Voyage, but that the unexpected Suspicions of the Head of their College, or House, had oblig'd him to come away in a Manner that would not admit of it; for that he might rather be said to have made his Escape, than to have been come fairly off.

I told him, He was very welcome; (And indeed so he was, for he had been already more worth to us than ten times his Passage came to) and, That he should be entred into immediate Pay, as Physician to both the  
Ships,

Ships, which I was sure none of our Surgeons would repine at, but rather be glad of; and accordingly I immediately order'd him a Cabbin, with a very good Appartment adjoining to it, and appointed him to eat in my own Mess whenever he pleas'd, or by himself, on his particular Days, when he thought fit.

And now it was impossible to conceal from him, that we were indeed an *English* Ship, and that I was the Captain in Chief; except, as has been said upon Occasion of coming to any particular Town of *Spain*; I let him know, I had a Commission to make Prize of the *Spaniards*, and appear their open Enemy, but that I had chosen to treat them as Friends, in a Way of Commerce, as he had seen. He admir'd much the Moderation I had used, and how I had avoided enriching my self by the Spoil, as I might have done; and he made me many Compliments upon that Head, which I excused hearing, and begg'd him to forbear: I told him, We were Christians, and as we had made a very prosperous Voyage, I was resolv'd not to do any honest Men the least Injustice, if I could avoid it.

But I must observe here, That I did not enter immediately into all this Confidence with him neither, nor all at once, neither did I let him into any Part of it, but under the same solemn Engagements of Secrecy that he had laid upon us, nor till I was come above Eighty Leagues South from *Lima*.

The



The first Thing I took the Freedom to speak to him upon, was this ; Finding his Habit a little offensive to our rude Seamen, I took him into the Cabbin, the very next Day after we came to Sea, and told him, That I was obliged to mention to him what I knew he would soon perceive, namely, That we were all Protestants, except Three or Four of the *Frenchmen* ; and I did not know how agreeable that might be to him : He answer'd, That he was not at all offended with that Part ; That it was none of his Business to enquire into any one's Opinion, any farther than they gave him Leave ; That if it was his Business to cure the Souls of Men on Shore, his Business on Board was to cure their Bodies ; and as for the rest, he would exercise no other Function than that of a Physician on board the Ship, without my Leave.

I told him, That was very obliging ; but that then, for his own Sake, I had a Proposal to make him, which was, Whether it would be disagreeable to him to lay aside the Habit of a Religious, and put on that of a Gentleman, so to accommodate himself the more easily to the Men on board, who, perhaps, might be rude to him in his Habit ; Seamen being not always Men of the most Manners.

He thank'd me very sincerely : He told me, He had been in *England* as well as in *Ireland* ; and that he went dress'd there as a Gentleman, and was ready to do so now, if I thought fit, to avoid giving any Offence ; and added, that he chose to do so ; But then,

smiling,

smiling, said, He was at a great Loss, for he had no Cloaths. I bad him take no Care about that, for I would furnish him: And immediately we dressed him up like an *Englishman*, in a Suit of very good Cloaths, which belong'd to one of our Midship-men that died. I gave him also a good Wig and a Sword, and he presently appear'd upon the Quarter-Deck like a grave Physician, and was called *Doctor*.

From that Minute, by whose Contrivance we knew not, it went current among the Seamen, that the *Spanish Doctor* was an *Englishman*, and a Protestant, and only had put on the other Habit to disguise himself, and make his Escape to us: And this was so universally believ'd, that it held to the last Day of the whole Voyage; for as soon as I met with it, I took Care that no body that had it in their Power would ever contradict it: And as for the Doctor himself, he was very glad of it; and when he first heard of it, said, Nothing could be more to his Advantage, and that he would take Care to humour it among the Men, as far as lay in his Power.

However, the Doctor took Care of one Thing, and earnestly desired we would all be mindful of it, *viz.* That he never offered to go on Shore, whatever Port we came to afterwards, and what he desired of us, was, that none of the *Spaniards* might, by Enquiry, hear, upon any Occasion, of his being on board our Ship; but above all, That none of our Men, *the Officers especially*, would ever come so much in Reach of the *Spaniards*

on Shore, as to put it into their Power to seize upon them by Reprizal, and so oblige us to deliver him up by Exchange.

I went so far with him, and so did Captain *Merlote* also, as to assure him, That if the *Spaniards* should, by any Stratagem, or by Force, get any of our Men, nay, tho' it was our selves, into their Hands, yet he should, upon no Conditions whatever, be delivered up. And, indeed, for this very Reason we were very shy of going on Shore at all; and as we had really no Business any where but just for Water and fresh Provisions, which we also had taken in a very good Store of at *Lima*, so, for our Part, we put in no where at all, in the Coast of *Peru*, because there we might have been more particularly liable to the Impertinencies of the *Spaniards* Inquiry; As to Force, we were furnished not to be in the least apprehensive of that.

Being thus, I say, resolved to have no more to do with the Coast of *Peru*, we stood off to Sea, and the first Land we made, was a little unfrequented Island, in the Latitude of 17 deg. 13 m. where our Men went on Shore in the Boats three or four times to catch Tortoises, or Turtles, being the first we had met with since we came from the *East-Indies*. And here they took so many, and had such a prodigious Quantity of Eggs out of them, that the whole Company of both Ships liv'd on them till within four or five Days of our coming to the Island of *Juan Fernandes*, which was our next Port. Some of these Tortoises were so large and so heavy, that no single Man could

could turn them, and sometimes, as much as Four Men could carry to the Boats.

We met with some bad Weather after this, which blew us off to Sea, the Wind blowing very hard at the *South-East*; but it was not so great a Wind as to endanger us, tho' we lost Sight of one another more in this Storm, than we had done in all our Voyage: However, we were none of us in any great Concern for it now, because we had agreed before, that if we should lose one another, we should make the best of our Way to the Island of *Juan Fernandes*: And this we observ'd now so directly, that all of us shaping our Course for the Island, as soon as the Storm abated, came in Sight of one another long before we came thither; which, you may be sure, was very agreeable to us all.

We were, including the Time of the Storm, Two Hundred and Eighteen Days from *Lima* to the Island of *Juan Fernandes*, having most of the Time cross contrary Winds, and more bad Weather than is usual in those Seas: However, we were all in good Condition, both Ships and Men.

Here we fell to the old Trade of hunting of Goats. And here our new Doctor set some of our Men to Simpling, that is to say, to gather some Physical Herbs, which he let them see afterwards were very well worth their while. Our Surgeons assisted, and saw the Plants, but had never observ'd the same Kind in *England*. They gave me the Names of them; and 'tis the only Discovery in all my Travels which I have not reserv'd so carefully



as to publish for the Advantage of others, and which I regret the Omission of very much.

While we were here, an odd Accident gave me some Uneasiness, which, however, did not come to much: Early in the Gray of the Morning, little Wind, and a smooth Sea, a small Frigate-built Vessel, under *Spanish* Colours, Pennant flying, appear'd off at Sea, at the Opening of the *N. E.* Point of the Island; as soon as she came fair with the Road, she lay by, as if she came to look into the Port only, and when she perceiv'd that we began to loose our Sails to speak with her, she stretch'd away to the Northward, and then altering her Course, stood away *N. E.* using Oars to assist her, and so got away.

Nothing could be more evident to us, than that she came to look at us, nor could we imagine any thing less; from whence we immediately concluded, that we were discover'd, and that our taking away the Doctor had given a great Alarm among the *Spaniards* (as indeed we afterwards came to understand it had done). But we came a little while afterwards to a better Understanding about the Frigate.

I was so uneasy about it, that I resolv'd to speak with her if possible; so I order'd the *Madagascar* Ship, which, of the Two, was rather a better Sailer, than our own, to stand in directly to the Coast of *Chili*, and then to ply to the Northward just in Sight of the Shore, till he came into the Latitude of 22; and if he saw nothing in all that Run, then  
to

to come down again directly into the Latitude of the Island of *Juan Fernandes*, but keeping the Distance of Ten Leagues off farther than before, and to ply off and on in that Latitude Five Days, and then, if he did not meet with me, to stand in for the Island.

While he did this, I did the same at the Distance of near Fifty Leagues from the Shore, being the Distance which I thought the Frigate kept in as she stood away from me. We made our Cruise both of us very punctually, and I found him in the Station we agreed on, and we both stood into the Road again from whence we came.

We no sooner made the Road, but we saw the Frigate, as I call'd her, with another Ship, at an Anchor in the same Road where she had seen us: And it was easy to see that they were both of them in a great Surprize and Hurry at our appearing, and that they were under Sail in so very little Time, as that we easily saw they had slipp'd their Cables, or cut away their Anchors. They fir'd Guns twice, which we found was a Signal for their Boats, which were on Shore, to come on board; and soon after, we saw Three Boats go off to them; tho', as we understood afterwards, they were obliged to leave Sixteen or Seventeen of their Men behind them, who, being among the Rocks catching of Goats, either did not hear the Signals, or could not come to their Boats time enough.

When

When we saw them in this Hurry, we thought it must be something extraordinary, and bore down directly upon them, having the Weather-Gage.

They were Ships of pretty good Force, and full of Men; and when they saw we were resolv'd to speak with them, and that there was no getting away from us, they made ready to fight us; and putting themselves upon a Wind, first stretching a Head to get the Weather-Gage of us, when they thought they were pretty well, boldly tack'd, and lay by for us, hoisting the *English* Antient and Union-Jack.

We had our *French* Colours out till now; but being just, as we thought, going to engage, I told Captain *Merlote*, I scorn'd to hide what Nation I was of when I came to fight for the Honour of our Country; and, besides, as these People had spread *English* Colours, I ought to let them know what I was; that if they were really *English*, and Friends, we might not fight by Mistake, and shed the innocent Blood of our own Countrymen; and that if they were Rogues, and counterfeited their being *English*, we should soon perceive it.

However, when they saw us put out *English* Colours, they knew not what to think of it, but lay by a while to see what we would do. I was as much puzzled as they, for as I came nearer, I thought they seem'd to be *English* Ships, as well by their Bulk as by their Way of Working; and as I came still nearer, I thought I could perceive so plainly  
by

by my Glasses, that they were *English* Seamen, that I made a Signal to our other Ship, who had the Van, and was just bearing down upon them, to bring to ; and I sent my Boat to him, to know his Opinion : He sent me Word, He did believe them to be *English* ; and the more (said he) because they could be no other Nation but *English* or *French*, and the latter he was sure they were not ; but since we were the largest Ships, and that they might as plainly see us to be *English*, as we could see them, he said, he was for fighting them, because they ought to let us know who they were first : However, as I had fir'd a Gun to bring him to, he lay by a little till we spoke thus together.

While this was doing we could see one of their Boats come off with Six Oars, and Two Men (a Lieutenant and a Trumpeter it seems they were) sitting in the Stern, and one of them holding up a Flag of Truce : We let them come forward, and when they came nearer, so that we could hale 'em with a Speaking-Trumpet, we ask'd 'em, What Countrymen they were ? and they answer'd, *Englishmen*. Then we ask'd them, Whence their Ship ? Their Answer was, From *London*. At which we bad them come on Board, which they did ; and we soon found, that we were all Countrymen and Friends, and their Boat went immediately back to let them know it. We found, afterwards, that they were mere Privateers, fitted out from *London* also, but coming last from *Jamaica* ; and we let them know no other of our selves ; but declin'd keeping Company, telling them, We were

C

bound



bound now upon Traffick, and not for Purchase; That we had been at the *East-Indies*, had made some Prizes, and were going back thither again. They told us, They were come into the *South-Seas* for Purchase, but that they had made little of it; having heard there were Three large *French* Men of War in those Seas, in the *Spanish* Service, which made them wish, that they had not come about; and that they were still very doubtful what to do.

We assur'd them, We had been the Heighth of *Lima*; and that we had not heard of any Men of War; but that we had pass'd for such our selves, and perhaps were the Ships they had heard of; for that we were Three Sail at first, and had sometimes carry'd *French* Colours.

This made them very glad; for it was certainly so, that we had pass'd for Three *French* Men of War; and they were so assur'd of it, that they went afterwards boldly up the Coast, and made several very good Prizes. We then found also, that it was one of these Ships that look'd into the Road, as above, when we were here before, and seeing us then with *French* Colours, took us for the Men of War they had heard of: And they added, That when we came in upon them again, they gave themselves up for lost Men, but were resolv'd to have fought it out to the Last, or rather to have sunk by our Side, or blow themselves up, than be taken.

I was not at all sorry that we had made this Discovery before we engag'd; for the Captains were two brave resolute Fellows, and had two  
very

very good Ships under them, one of Thirty-six Guns, but able to have carry'd Forty-four Guns; the other, which we called the Frigate-built Ship, carry'd Twenty-eight Guns, and they were both full of Men. Now, tho' we should not have fear'd their Force, yet my Case differ'd from what it did at first, for we had that on Board that makes all Men Cowards, I mean Money; of which we had such a Cargo as few *British* Ships ever brought out of those Seas; and I was one of those that had now no Occasion to run needless Hazards; so that, in short, I was as well pleas'd without fighting, as they could be: Besides, I had other Projects now in my Head, and those of no less Consequence, than of planting a new World, and settling new Kingdoms to the Honour and Advantage of my Country; and many a Time I wish'd heartily, That all my rich Cargo was safe at *London*; That my Merchants were sharing the Silver, and the Gold, and the Pearl among themselves; and, That I was but safe on Shore, with a Thousand good Families, upon the South of *Chili*, and about Fifteen Hundred good Soldiers, and Arms for Ten Thousand more (of which by-and-by) and with the Two Ships I had now with me, I would not apprehend all the Power of the *Spaniards*; I mean, that they could bring against me in the *South-Seas*.

I had all these Things, I say, in my Head already, tho' nothing like to what I had afterwards, when I saw farther into the Matter myself: However, these Things made me very glad,

that I had no Occasion to engage those Ships.

When we came thus to understand one another, we went all into the Road together, and I invited the Captains of the Two Privateers on board me, where I treated them with the best I had; tho' I had no great Dainties now, having been so long out of *England*. They invited me, and Captain *Merlote*, and the Captain of the *Madagascar* Ship, in Return, and indeed treated us very nobly.

After this, we exchange'd some Presents of Refreshments, and, particularly, they sent me a Hogshhead of Rum, which was very acceptable; and I sent them, in Return, a Runlet of Arrack, excusing myself, that I had no great Store. I sent them also the Quantity of One Hundred Weight of Nutmegs and Cloves; but the most agreeable Present I sent them, was, Twenty Pieces of my *Madagascar* Dryed Beef, cur'd in the Sun, the like of which they had never seen or tasted before; and, without Question, 'tis such an excellent Way of curing Beef, that if I were to be at *Madagascar* again, I would take in a sufficient Quantity of Beef so preserv'd, to victual the whole Ship for the Voyage; and I leave it as a Direction to all *English* Seamen that have Occasion to use *East-India* Voyages.

I bought afterwards Six Hogshheads of Rum of these Privateers, for I found they were very well stor'd with Liquors, whatever else they wanted.

We stay'd here Twelve or Fourteen Days, but took Care, by Agreement, that our Men should

should never go on Shore the same Days that their Men went on Shore, or theirs when ours went; as well to avoid their Caballing together, as to avoid Quarreling; tho' the latter was the Pretence. We agreed also, not to receive on Board any of our Ships respectively any of the Crews belonging to the other: And this was their Advantage, for if we would have given Way to that, half their Men, would, for ought I know, have come over to us.

While we lay here, one of them went a cruizing, finding the Wind fair to run in for the Shore, and in about Five Days she came back with a *Spanish* Prize, laden with Meal, Cocoa, and a large Quantity of Biscuit, ready bak'd; She was bound to *Lima*, from *Baldivia*, or some Port nearer; I do not remember, exactly, which: They had some Gold on Board, but not much, and had bought their Lading at *St. Jago*. As soon as we saw them coming in with a Prize in Tow, we put out our *French* Colours, and gave Notice to the Privateers, that it was for their Advantage that we did so; and so indeed it was, for it would presently have alarmed all the Country, if such a Fleet of Privateers had appear'd on the Coast. We prevail'd with them to give us their *Spanish* Prisoners, and to allow us to set them on Shore; I having assur'd them, I would not land them till I came to *Baldivia*, nor suffer them to have the least Correspondence with any Body till they came thither; the said *Spaniards* also giving their Parole of



Honour, not to give any Account of their being taken, till Fourteen Days after they were on Shore.

This being the farthest Port *South* which the *Spaniards* are Masters of in *Chili*, or indeed on the whole Continent of *America*, they could not desire me to carry them any farther : They allow'd us a Quantity of Meal and Cocoa out of their Booty, for the Subsistence of the Prisoners ; and I bought a larger Quantity more of it, there being more than they knew how to stow ; and they did not resolve to keep the *Spanish* Ship which they took ; By this Means, I was doubly stock'd with Flower and Bread ; but as the first was very good, and well pack'd in Cask, and very good Jars, it was no Burthen.

We bought also some of their Cocoa, and made Chocolate till our Men gorg'd themselves with it, and would eat no more.

Having furnish'd our selves here with Goats Flesh, as usual, and taken in Water sufficient, we left *Juan Fernandes*, and saw the Cruisers go out the same Tide, they steering *N. N. E.* and we *S. S. E.* They saluted us at parting, and we bad them Good-bye in the same Language.

While we were now sailing for the Coast of *Chili*, with fair Wind and pleasant Weather, my *Spanish* Doctor came to me, and told me, he had a Piece of News to acquaint me with, which, he said, he believ'd would please me very well ; and this was, That one of the *Spanish* Prisoners was a Planter,

as 'tis call'd in the *West-Indies*, or a Farmer as we should call it in *England*, of *Villa-Rica*, a Town built by the *Spaniards* near the Foot of the *Andes*, above the Town of *Baldivia*; and that he had entred into Discourse with him upon the Situation of those Hills, the Nature of the Surface, the Rivers, Hollows, Passages, into them, &c. whether there were any Valleys within the Hills, of what Extent, how watered, what Cattle, what People, how disposed, and the like; and, in short, if there was any passing over them: and he told me, in few Words, That he found him to be a very honest, frank, open sort of a Person, who seem'd to speak without Reserve, without the least Jealousy or Apprehension; and that, in a Word, he believ'd, I might have an ample Discovery from him of all that I desir'd to know.

I was very glad of this News, you may be sure; and it was not many Hours before I made him bring the *Spaniard* into the great Cabbin to me, where I treated him very civilly, and gave him Opportunity several Times, to see himself very well used; and indeed all the *Spaniards* in the Ship were very thankful, for my bringing them out of the Hands of the Privateers, and took all Occasions to let us see it.

I said little the first Time, but discours'd in general of *America*, of the Greatness and Opulency of the *Spaniards* there; the infinite Wealth of the Country, &c. and I remember well, discoursing once of the great Riches of the *Spaniards* in *America*, the Silver Mines of

*Potosi*, and other Places, he turn'd short upon me, smiling, and said, We *Spaniards* are the worst Nation in the World, that such a Treasure as this could have belong'd to, for if it had fallen into any other Hands than ours, says he, they would have search'd farther into it before now. I ask'd him, What he meant by that? I said, I thought they had search'd it thoroughly enough; for that I believ'd no Nation in the World could ever have spread such vast Dominions, and planted a Country of such a prodigious Extent, and have not only kept the Possession of it, but have maintain'd the Government also, and even inhabited it, with so few People.

Perhaps, Seignior, says he, you think, notwithstanding that Opinion of yours, that we have many more People of our Nation in *New-Spain* than we have. I do not know, said I, how many you may have; but if I should believe, you have as many here as in *Old-Spain*, it would be but a few in Comparison of the infinite Extent of the King of *Spain's* Dominions in *America*: And then, added he, I assure you, Seignior, there is not one *Spaniard* to a Thousand Acres of Land, take one Place with another throughout *New-Spain*.

Very well, said I, then I think the Riches and Wealth of *America* is very well searched, in Comparison to the Number of People you have to search after it: No, says he, it is not neither; for the greatest Number of our People live in that Part where the Wealth is not greatest; and where even the Governor and  
 Viceroy,

Viceroy, enjoying a plentiful and luxurious Life, they take no Thought for the Encrease, either of the King's Revenues, or the National Wealth : This he spoke of the City of *Mexico*, whose Greatness, and the Number of its Inhabitants, he said, was a Disease to the rest of the Body : And what think you, Seignior, said he, that in that one City, where is neither Silver or Gold but what is brought from the Mountains of *St. Clara*, the Mines at *St. Augustine's* and our *Lady*, some of which are an Hundred Leagues from it, and yet there are more *Spaniards* in *Mexico* than in both these two prodigious Empires of *Chili* and *Peru* ?

I seem'd not to believe him ; and indeed I did not believe him at first, till he return'd to me with a Question, Pray, Seignior Capitain, says he, how many *Spaniards* do you think there may be in this vast Country of *Chili* ? I told him, I could make no guess of the Numbers ; but, without Question, there were many Thousands ; intimating, that I might suppose near an Hundred Thousand : At which he laugh'd heartily, and assur'd me, That there were not above Two Thousand Five Hundred in the whole Kingdom, besides Women and Children, and some few Soldiers, which they look'd upon as nothing to Inhabitants, because they were not settled any where.

I was indeed surpriz'd, and began to name some large Places, which I thought had singly more *Spaniards* in them than what he talk'd of. He presently ran over some of them ; and naming *Baldivia* first, as the most *Southward*, he ask'd me, How many I thought were there ?

And



And I told him, About Three Hundred Families: He smil'd at me, and assur'd me, there were not above Three or Four and Fifty Families in the whole Place, and about Twenty-five Soldiers; altho' it was a Fortification, and a Frontier. (At *Villa Rica*, or the Rich Town) where he liv'd, he said, There might be about Sixty Families, and a Lieutenant with Twenty Soldiers. In a Word, we pass'd over the many Places between, and came to the Capital St. *Jago*, where after I had supposed there were Five Thousand *Spaniards*; he protested to me, there were not above Eight Hundred, including the Viceroy's Court, and including the Families at *Valpariso*, which is the Sea-Port, and excluding only the Soldiers, which, as he said, being the Capital of the whole Kingdom, might be about Two Hundred, and excluding the Religious, who, he added, laughing, signify'd nothing to the planting a Country, for they neither cultivated the Land, nor increased the People.

Our Doctor, who was our Interpreter, smil'd at this, but merrily said, That was very true, or ought to be so; intimating, that tho' the Priests do not cultivate the Land, yet they might chance to increase the People a little; but that was by the Way. As to the Number of Inhabitants at St. *Jago*, the Doctor agreed with him, and said, he believ'd he had said more than there was, rather than less.

As then to the Kingdom or Empire of *Peru*, in which there are many considerable Cities and

and Places of Note, such as *Lima*, *Quitto*, *Cusco la Plata*, and others ; besides the great Number of Towns on the Sea-Coasts, such as *Port Arica*, *St. Miguel*, *Payta*, *Guyaquil*, *Truxillo*, and many others.

He answered, That it was true, that the City of *Lima*, with the Town of *Callao*, was much increased within a few Years ; and, particularly, of late, by the settling of between Three and Four Hundred *French* there, who came by the King of *Spain's* License ; but that before the coming of those Gentlemen, at which he shook his Head, the Country was richer, tho' the Inhabitants were not so many ; and that, take it as it was now, there could not be reckoned above Fifteen Hundred Families of *Spaniards*, excluding the Soldiers, and the Clergy, which, as above, he reckoned nothing as to the planting the Country.

We came then to discourse of the Silver-Mines at *Potosi*, and here he supposed, as I did also, a very great Number of People ; But, Seignior, says he, What People is it you are speaking of ? There are many Thousands of Servants, but few Masters ; there is a Garison of Four Hundred Soldiers, always kept in Arms, and in good Order, to secure the Place, and keep the Negroes and Criminals, who work in the Mines, in Subjection ; but, that there were not besides Five Hundred *Spaniards*, that is to say Men, in the whole Place and its Adjacents. So that, in short, he would not allow above Seven Thousand *Spaniards* in the whole Empire of *Peru*, and Two Thousand Five Hundred in *Chili* ; at the  
same

same Time allowing Twice as many as both these in the City of *Mexico* only.

After this Discourse was over, I ask'd him, What he inferr'd from it, as to the Wealth of the Country not being discover'd? He answer'd, It was evident that it was for want of People that the Wealth of the Country lay hid; That there was infinitely more lay unenquir'd after, than had yet been known; That there were several Mountains in *Peru* equally rich in Silver with that of *Potosi*; And as for *Chili*, says he, and the Country where we live, there is more Gold at this Time in the Mountains of the *Andes*, and more easy to come at, than in all the World besides: Nay, says he, with some Passion, there is more Gold every Year wash'd down out of the *Andes* of *Chili* into the Sea, and lost there, than all the Riches that go from *New Spain* to *Europe* in Twenty Years, amount to.

This Discourse fir'd my Imagination, you may be sure, and I renewed it upon all Occasions, taking more or less Time, every Day, to talk with this *Spaniard* upon the Subject of Cultivation of the Lands, Improvement of the Country, and the like; always making such Enquiries into the State of the Mountains of the *Andes*, as best suited my Purpose, but yet so as not to give him the least Intimation of my Design.

One Day, conversing with him again about the great Riches of the Country, and of the Mountains and Rivers, as above, I asked him, That seeing the Place was so rich, why were

were they not all Princes, or as rich as Princes, that dwelt there?

He shook his Head, and said, It was a great Reproach upon them many Ways; and when I press'd him to explain himself, he answered, It was occasioned by Two Things; namely, Pride and Sloth. *Seignior*, says he, we have so much Pride, that we have no Avarice, and we do not covet enough to make us work for it: We walk about sometimes, says he, on the Banks of the Streams that come down from the Mountains, and if we see a bit of Gold lie on the Shore, it may be we will vouchsafe to lay off our Cloak and step forward to take it up; but if we were sure to carry home as much as we could stand under, we would not strip and go to work in the Water to wash it out of the Sand; or take the Pains to get it together; nor, perhaps, dishonour ourselves so much as to be seen carrying a Load, no, not for all the Value of the Gold itself.

I laugh'd then, indeed; and told him, He was disposed to jest with his Countrymen, or to speak Ironically; meaning, That they did not take so much Pains as was required, to make them effectually rich; but that, I supposed, he would not have me understand him as he spoke: He said, I might understand as favourably as I pleased, but I should find the Fact to be true, if I would go up with him to *Villa Rica*, when I came to *Baldivia*; and with that, he made his Compliment to me, and invited me to his House.

I asked



I asked him, with a *Con Licentia, Seignior*, that is, With Pardon for so much Freedom, That if he lived in so rich a Country, and where there was so inexhaustible a Treasure of Gold, how he came to fall into this State of Captivity ? and what made him venture himself upon the Sea to fall into the Hands of Pyrates ?

He answered, That it was on the very Foot of what he had been complaining of ; and that having seen so much of the Wealth of the Country he lived in, and having reproached himself with that very Indolence which he now blamed all his Country-men for, he had resolved, in Conjunction with Two of his Neighbours the *Spaniards*, and Men of good Substance, to set to work in a Place in the Mountains where they had found some Gold, and had seen much wash'd down by the Water, and to find what might be done in a thorough Search after the Fund or Mine of it, which they were sure was not far of ; and that he was going to *Lima*, and from thence, if he could not be supplied, to *Panama*, to buy Negroes for the Work, that they might carry it on with the better Success.

This was a feeling Discourse to me, and made such an Impression on me, that I secretly resolved, That when I came to *Baldivia*, I would go up with this sincere *Spaniard* (for so I thought him to be, and so I found him) and would be an Eye-Witness to the Discovery, which, I thought, was made to my Hand, and which I found now, I could make  
more

more effectual than by all the Attempts I was like to make by Second Hand.

From this Time I treated the *Spaniard* with more than ordinary Courtesy, and told him, If I was not Captain of a great Ship, and had a Cargo upon me of other Gentlemens Estates, he had said so much of those Things, that I should be tempted to give him a Visit, as he had desired, and see those monstrous Mountains of the *Andes*.

He told me, That if I would do him so much Honour, I should not be obliged to any long Stay; that he would procure Mules for me at *Baldivia*, and that I should go, not to his House only, but to the Mountain itself, and see all that I desired, and be back again in Fourteen Days at the farthest. I shook my Head, as if it could not be, but he never left importuning me; and once or twice, as if I had been afraid to venture myself with him, he told me, He would send for his Two Sons, and leave them in the Ship as Hostages for my Safety.

I was fully satisfied as to that Point, but did not let him know my Mind yet; but every Day we dwelt upon the same Subject, and I travelled through the Mountains and Valleys so duely, in every Day's Discourse, with him, that when I afterwards came to the Places we had talk'd of, it was as if I had look'd over them in a Map before.

I asked him, If the *Andes* were a mere Wall of Mountains, contiguous and without Intervals and Spaces like a Fortification or Boundary to a Country? Or, Whether they  
lay

lay promiscuous and distant from one another? And, Whether there lay any Way over them into the Country beyond them.

He smil'd when I talk'd of going over them: He told me, They were so infinitely high, that no human Creature could live upon the Top; and withal so steep, and so frightful, that if there was even a Pair of Stairs up on one Side, and down on the other, no Man alive would dare to mount up, or venture down.

But that, as for the Notion of the Hills being contiguous, like a Wall that had no Gates, that was all fabulous; that there were several fair Entrances in among the Mountains, and large, pleasant, and fruitful Valleys among the Hills, with pleasant Rivers and Numbers of Inhabitants, and Cattle and Provisions of all Sorts; and that some of the most delightful Places to live in, that were in the whole World, were among those Valleys, in the very Center of the Highest and most Dreadful Mountains.

Well, said I, *Seignior*, but how do they go out of one Valley into another? And whither do they go at last? He answered me, Those Valleys are always full of pleasant Rivers and Brooks, which fall from the Hills, and are form'd generally into one principal Stream to every Vale; and that as these must have their Outlets on one Side of the Hills, or on the other, so, following the Course of those Streams, one is always sure to find the Way out of one Valley into another, and at last, out of the whole into the open Country; so that it was very frequent to pass from one  
Side

Side to the other of the whole Body of the Mountains, and not go much higher up Hill, or down Hill, compared to the Hills in other Places. It was true, he said, There was no abrupt visible Parting in the Mountains, that should seem like a Way cut through from the Bottom to the Top, which would be, indeed, frightful; but that as they pass from some of the Valleys to others, there are Ascents and Descents, Windings and Turnings, Sloaping up, and Sloaping down, where we may stand on those little Ridges, and see the Waters on one Side run to the *West*, and on the other Side, to the *East*.

I asked him, What kind of a Country was on the other Side? and how long Time it would take up to go through from one Side to the other? He told me, There were Ways, indeed, that were more mountainous and uneasy, in which Men kept upon the Sides or Declivity of the Hills; in which the Natives would go, and guide others to go, and so might pass the whole Ridge of the *Andes* in Eight or Nine Days; but that those Ways were esteemed very dismal, lonely and dangerous, because of wild Beasts; but that through the Valleys, the Way was easy and pleasant, and perfectly safe, only farther about; and that those Ways a Man might be Sixteen or Seventeen Days going through.

I laid up all this in my Heart, to make use of as I should have Occasion; but I acknowledge, That it was surprizing to me, as it was so perfectly agreeing with the Notion that I always entertained of those Moun-



tains, of the Riches of them, the Facility of Access to and from them, and the easy Passage from one Side to another.

The next Discourse I had with him upon this Subject, I began thus; Well, *Seignior*, said I, We are now come quite through the Valleys and Passages of the *Andes*, and, methinks, I see a vast open Country before me on the other Side; pray tell me, Have you ever been so far as to look into that Part of the World, and what kind of a Country is it?

He answered gravely, That he had been far enough several Times, to look at a Distance into the vast Country I spake of; And such indeed it is, said he; and as we come upon the rising Part of the Hills, we see a great way, and a Country without End; but as to any Descriptions of it, I can say but little, added he, only this, That it is a very fruitful Country on that Side next the Hills: What it is farther, I know not.

I asked him, If there were any considerable Rivers in it? and which Way they generally run? He said, It could not be, but that from such a Ridge of Mountains as the *Andes*, there must be a great many Rivers on that Side, as there were apparently on this; and that, as the Country was infinitely larger, and their Course, in proportion, longer, it would necessarily follow, That those small Rivers would run one into another, and so form great Navigable Rivers, as was the Case in the *Rio de la Plata*, which originally sprung from the same Hills, about the City

*La Plata* in *Peru*, and swallowing up all the Streams of less Note, became, by the meer Length of its Course, one of the greatest Rivers in the World: That, as he observed, most of those Rivers ran rather *South-Eastward*, than *Northward*, he believed they ran away to the Sea, a great way farther to the *South*, than the *Rio de la Plata*; but as to what Part of the Coast they might come to the Sea in, that he knew nothing of.

This Account was so rational, that nothing could be more; and was, indeed, extremely satisfactory.

It was also very remarkable, That this agreed exactly with the Accounts before given me by the Two *Chilian Indians*, or *Natives*, which I had on Board, and with whom I still continued to discourse as Occasion presented; but who, at this Time, I removed into the *Madagascar Ship*, to make Room for these *Spanish Prisoners*.

I observed the *Spaniard* was made very sensible by my Doctor of the Obligation both he and his Fellow-Prisoners were under to me, in my persuading the Privateers to set them at Liberty, and in undertaking to carry them home to that Part of *Spain* from whence they came; for as they had lost their Cargo, their Voyage seemed to be at an End; The Sense of the Favour, I say, which I had done him, and was still doing him, in the civil Treatment which I gave him, made this Gentleman; for such he was in himself, and in his Disposition, whatever he was by Family, for that I knew nothing of; I say, it made him

exceeding importunate with me, and with my Doctor, who spoke *Spanish* perfectly well, to go with him to *Villa Rica*.

I made him no Promise, but talked at a Distance; I told him, If he had lived by the Sea, and I could have sailed to his Door in my Ship, I would have made him a Visit. He returned, That he wished he could make the River of *Baldivia* Navigable for me, that I might bring my Ship up to his Door, and he would venture to say, That neither me, nor all my Ship's Company, should starve while we were with him. In the Interval of these Discourses, I asked my Doctor his Opinion, Whether he thought I might trust this *Spaniard*, if I had a Mind to go up and see the Country for a few Days?

*Seignior*, says he, the *Spaniards* are, in some Respects, the worst Nation under the Sun; They are cruel, inexorable, uncharitable, voracious, and, in several Cases, treacherous; but in Two Things, they are to be depended upon beyond all the Nations in the World, that is to say, When they give their Honour to perform any thing; and when they have a Return to make for any Favour received; and here he entertained me with a long Story of a Merchant of *Chartagena*, who, in a Sloop, was Shipwreck'd at Sea, and was taken up by an *English* Merchant, on Board a Ship bound to *London* from *Barbadoes*, or some other of our Islands; That the *English* Merchant, meeting another *English* Ship bound to *Jamaica*, put the *Spanish* Merchant on Board him, paid him for his Passage, and obliged

obliged him to set him on Shore on the *Spanish* Coast, as near to *Chartagena* as he could. This *Spanish* Merchant could never rest 'till he found Means to Ship himself from *Chartagena* to the *Havana*, on the *Galleons*; from thence to *Cadiz* in *Old-Spain*; and from thence to *London*, to find out the *English* Merchant, and make him a Present to the Value of a Thousand Pistoles, for saving his Life, and for his civil returning him to *Jamaica*, &c. Whether the Story was true or not, his Inference from it, was just; namely, That a *Spaniard* never forgot a Kindness; But take it withal, says the Doctor, that I believe 'tis as much the Effect of their Pride, as of their Virtue; for at the same Time, said he, they never forget an ill Turn, any more than they do a good one; and they frequently intail their Enmities on their Families, and prosecute the Revenge from one Generation to another; so that the Heir has, with the Estate of his Ancestors, all the Family Broils upon his Hands as he comes to his Estate.

From all this he inferred, That as this *Spaniard* found himself so very much obliged to me, I might depend upon it, that he had so much Pride in him, that if he could pull down the *Andes* for me to go through, and I wanted it, he would do it for me; and that nothing would be a greater Satisfaction to him, than to find some way or other how to requite me.

All these Discourses shortned our Voyage, and we arrived fair and softly (for it was very good Weather, and little Wind) at *Tuca-*



*pel*, or the River *Imperial*, within Ten Leagues of *Baldivia*, that is to say, Of *Cape Bonifacio*, which is the *North* Point of the Entrance into the River of *Baldivia*; and here I took one of the most unaccountable, and, I must needs acknowledge, unjustifiable Resolutions, that ever any Commander, intrusted with a Ship of such Force, and a Cargo of such Consequence, adventured upon before; and which I, by no means, recommend to any Commander of a Ship to imitate; and this was, To venture up into the Country above One hundred and Fifty Miles from my Ship, leaving the Success of the whole Voyage, the Estates of my Employers, and the richest Ship and Cargo, that ever came out of those Seas, to the Care and Fidelity of Two or Three Men. Such was the unsatisfied Thirst of New Discoveries, which I brought out of *England* with me, and which I nourish'd at all Hazards, to the End of the Voyage.

However, though I condemn myself, in the main, for the Rashness of the Undertaking, yet let me do myself so much Justice, as to leave it on Record too, That I did not run this Risque without all the needful Precautions for the Safety of the Ship and Cargo.

And, first, I found out a safe Place for the Ships to ride; and this, neither in the River of *Tucapel*, nor in the River of *Baldivia*, but in an Opening or Inlet of Water without a Name, about a League to the *South* of *Tucapel*, embayed and secured from almost all the Winds that could blow: Here the Ships lay

lay easy, with Water enough, having about Eleven Fathoms good holding Ground, and about half a League from Shore.

I left the *Supra-Cargo*, and my chief Mate, also a Kinsman of my own, a true Sailor, who had been a Midship-man, but was now a Lieutenant: I say, To those I left the Command of both my Ships, but with express Orders not to stir, nor unmoor, upon any Account whatever, Life and Death excepted, 'till my Return; or 'till, if I was dead, they heard what was become of me; no, though they were to stay there Six Months, for they had Provisions enough, and an excellent Place for watering lay just by them; and I made all the Men swear to me, that they would make no Mutiny or Disorder, but obey my said Kinsman in one Ship, and the *Supra-Cargo* in the other, in all Things, except removing from that Place; and that if they should command them to stir from thence, they would not so much as touch a Sail or a Rope.

When I had made all these Conditions, and told my Men, That the Design I went upon, was for the Good of their Voyage, for the Service of the Owners, and should, if it succeeded, be for all their Advantages; I asked them, If they were all willing I should go? to which they all answered, That they were very willing, and would take the same Care of the Ships, and of all Things belonging to them, as if I were on Board. This encouraged me greatly, and I now resolved nothing should hinder me.

Having thus concluded every thing, then, and not till then, I told my *Spaniard*, That I had almost resolved to go along with him, at which he appeared exceedingly pleased, and, indeed, in a Surprize of Joy. I should have told you, That before I told him this, I had set all the rest of the Prisoners on Shore, at their own Request, just between the Port of *Tucapel*, and the Bay of the *Conception*, except Two Men, who, as he told me, liv'd in the Open Country beyond *Baldivia*, and, as he observed, were very glad to be set on Shore with him, so to travel home, having lost what little they had in the Ship, and to whom he communicated nothing of all the Discourse we had had of the Affair of the Mountains.

I also dismissed now the Two *Chilian Indians*, but not without a very good Reward, proportioned to, not their Trouble and Time only, but proportioned to what I seemed to expect of them, and filling them still with Expectations, that I would come again, and take a Journey with them into the Mountains.

And now it became necessary, that I should use the utmost Freedom with my new Friend the *Spaniard*, being, as I told him, to put my Life in his Hands, and the Prosperity of my whole Adventure, both Ship and Ship's Company.

He told me, He was sensible that I did put my Life in his Hands, and that it was a very great Token of Confidence in him, even such a one, that he, being a Stranger to me, had no Reason to expect; but he de-

fired

fired me to consider, that he was a *Christian*, not a *Savage*; That he was one, I had laid the highest Obligation upon, in voluntarily taking him out of the Hands of the Freebooters, where he might have lost his Life; And, in the next Place, he said, It was some Argument, that he was a Gentleman, and that I should find him to be a Man of Honour; and, lastly, That it did not appear, that he could make any Advantage of me, or that he could get any thing by using me ill; and if even that was no Argument, yet I should find, when I came to his House, that he was not in a Condition to want any thing, that might be gained, so much as to procure it by such a Piece of Villainy and Treachery, as to betray and destroy the Man that had sav'd his Life, and brought him out of the Hands of the Devil, safe to his Country and Family, when he might have been carried away, God knows whither. But, to conclude all, He desired me to accept the Offer he had made me at Sea (*viz.*) That he would send for his Two Sons, and leave them on Board the Ship as Hostages for my Safety, and desired they might be used on Board no otherwise than I was used with him in the Country.

I was ashamed to accept such an Offer as this; but he pressed it earnestly, and importuned the Doctor to move me to accept it, telling him, That he should not be easy if I did not; so that, in short, the Doctor advised me to agree to it; and accordingly he hired a Messenger and a Mule, and sent away  
for



for his Two Sons to come to him; and such Expedition the Messenger made, that in Six Days he returned with the Two Sons, and Three Servants, all on Horseback. His Two Sons were very pretty well behaved Youths, who appeared to be Gentlemen in their very Countenances; the Eldest was about Thirteen Years old, and the other about Eleven. I treated them on Board, as I had done their Father, with all possible Respect; and having entertained them Two Days, left Order, that they should be treated in the same Manner when I was gone; and to this I added aloud (that their Father might hear it) That whenever they had a Mind to go away, they should let them go: But their Father laid a great many solemn Charges upon them, that they should not stir out of the Ship<sup>s</sup> till I came back safe; and that I gave them leave; and he made them promise, that they would not; and the young Gentlemen kept their Word so punctually, that when our *Supra-Cargo*, who I left in Command, offered to let them go on Shore several Times, to divert them with Shooting and Hunting, they would not stir out of the Ship, and did not, 'till I came back again.

Having gone this Length, and made every thing ready for my Adventure, we set out, Captain *Merlote*, the *Spanish* Doctor, the old Mutineer, that was my Second Mate, and who was now the Captain of the *Madagascar* Ship, and myself, with Two Midship-men, who we took as Servants, but who I resolved to make the Directors of the main Enterprize.

As

As to the Number, I found my *Spaniard* made no Scruple of that, if it had been half my Ship's Company.

We set out, some on Horses, and some on Mules, as we could get them, but the *Spaniard* and myself rode on Two very good Horses, being the same that his Two Sons came on. We arrived at a Noble Country-Seat about a League short of the Town, where, at first, I thought we had been only to put in for Refreshment; but I soon found, that it was really his Dwelling-House, and where his Family and Servants resided.

Here we were received like Princes, and with as much Ceremony as if he had been a Prince that entertained us: The *Mayor Domo*, or Steward of his House, received us, took in our Baggage, and ordered our Two Servants to be taken care of.

I need not tell you, that the *Spaniard* did all, that Pride and Ostentation was capable of inspiring him with, to entertain us; and the Truth is, He could not have lived in a Country in the World more capable of gratifying his Pride; for here, without any thing uncommon, he was able to shew more Gold Plate, than many good Families, in our Country, have of Silver; and as for Silver, it quite eclipses the Appearance, or rather took away the very use of Pewter, of which, we did not see one Vessel, no, not in the meanest Part of his House: It is true, I believe, the *Spaniard* had not a Piece of Plate, or of any Household Furniture, which we did not see, except what belonged to the Apartment

ment of his Wife; and it is to be observed, That the Women never appeared, except at a Distance, and in the Gardens, and then being under Veils, we could not know the Lady from her Women, or the Maids from the Mistrefs.

We were lodged every one in separate Apartments, very well furnished, but Two of them very nobly, indeed; though all the Materials for Furniture must be there at an excessive Price. The way of lodging upon Quilts, and in Beds, made *Pavillion*-wise, after the *Spanish* Custom, I need not describe; but it surprized me to see the Rooms hung with very rich Tapestries, in a Part of the World where they must cost so dear.

We had *Chilian* Wine served us up in round Gold Cups, and Water in large Silver Decanters, that held, at least, Five Quarts a Piece, these stood in our Chamber. Our Chocolate was brought us up in the same Manner, in deep Cups, all of Gold, and it was made in Vessels all of Silver.

It would be troublesome to the very Reader, to interrupt my Account with the Relation of all the fine Things he had in his House, and I could not be persuaded, but that he had borrowed all the Plate in the Town to furnish out his Side-board and Table; but my Doctor told me, It was nothing but what was very usual among them that were Men of any Substance, as it was apparent he was; and that the Silver-Smiths at *St. Jago* supplied them generally with their Plate ready wrought, in Exchange (with Allowance for the  
the

the Quality) for the Gold which they found in the Mountains, or in the Brooks and Streams which came from the Mountains, into which the hasty Showers of Winter Rain frequently washed down pretty large Lumps; and others, which were smaller, they washed out of the Sands by the ordinary Methods of washing of Oar.

I was better satisfied in this Particular, when, the next Day, talking to our new Landlord about the Mountains, and the Wealth of them, I asked him, If he could shew me any of the Gold which was usually washed out of the Hills by the Rain, in the natural Figure in which it was found? He smiled, and told me Yes, he would shew us a little; and with that, carried us up into a kind of a Closet, where he had a great Variety of odd Things, gathered up about the Mountains and Rivers, such as fine Shells, strange Stones in the Form of Stars, heavy Pieces of Oar, but such as neither he, or any of us, could tell what they were, and the like; and after this, he pulled out a great Leather Bag, which had, I believe, near Fifty Pounds weight in it, Here, *Seignior*, says he, here is some of the Dirt of the Earth, and turning it out upon the Table, it was easy to see that it was all Gold, though the Pieces were of different Forms, and some scarce looking like Gold at all, being so mixed with the Sparr, or with Earth, that it did not appear so plain; but in every bit, there was something of the clear Gold to be seen, and the smaller the Lumps, the purer the Gold appeared.

I was



I was surprized at the Quantity, more than at the Thing itself, having, as I have said, seen the Gold which the *Indians* found in the Countries I have described, which seemed to have little or no Mixture; but then I was to have considered, That what those *Indians* gathered, was farther from the Hills which it came from, and that those rough, irregular Pieces would not drive so far in the Water, but would lodge themselves in the Earth and Sand of the Rivers nearer home; and also, that the *Indians*, not knowing how to separate the Gold by Fire from the Dross and Mixture above, did not think those rough Pieces worth their taking up, whereas the *Spaniards* here understood much better, what they were about.

But to return to the Closet; When he had shewn us this Leather Pouch full, he sweeps it by to one Side of the Table, which had Ledges round it, to keep it from running off, and takes up another Bag full of large Pieces of Stone, great Lumps of Earth, and Pieces of various Shapes, all of which had some Gold in them, but not to be gotten out but by Fire: These, he told us, their Servants bring them home as they find them in the Mountains, lying loose here and there, when they run after their Cattle.

But still I asked him, If they found no Pieces of pure Gold? upon this, he turned to a great old Cabinet full of pretty large Drawers, and pulling out one Drawer, he shewed us a surprizing Number of Pieces, of pure clean Gold, some round, some long, some flat, some  
thick,

thick, all of irregular Shapes, and worked roundish at the Ends, with rolling along, some of these weighed a quarter of an Ounce, some more, and some less, and as I lifted the Drawer, I believe there could not be less than between Twenty and Thirty Pound weight of it.

Then he pulled out another Drawer, which was almost full of the same kind of Drug, but as small as Sand, the biggest not so big as Pins Heads, and which might very properly be called Gold Dust.

After this Sight, a Man was to be surpriz'd at nothing he could see; I ask'd him, How long such a Treasure might be amassing together in this Country? He told me, That was according to the Pains they might take in the Search; That he had been Twelve Years here, and had done little or nothing; but had he had Twenty Negroes to have set on Work, as he might have had, he might have had more than this in one Year. I ask'd him, How much Gold in Weight he thought there might be in all this he had shewn me? he told me, He could not tell; That they never troubled themselves to weigh, but when the Silver-smith at St. *Jago* came to bring home any Vessel, or, when the Merchants from *Lima* came to *Baldivia* with *European* Goods, then they bought what they wanted of them; That they were sensible they gave excessive dear for every Thing, even Ten or Twenty for One: But as Gold, he said, was the Growth of that Country, and the other Things, such as Cloth, Linnen, fine Silks, &c. were the Gold  
of

of *Europe*, they did not think much to give what they ask'd for those Things. In short, I found, that the People in this Country, though they kept large Plantations in their Hands, had great Numbers of Cattle, *Ingenios*, as they call them, for making Sugar, and Land, under Management, for the Maintenance of themselves and Families; yet did not wholly neglect the getting Gold out of the Mountains, where it was in such Plenty; and therefore it seems the Town adjacent is called *Villa Rica*, or *The Rich Town*, being seated, as it were, at the Foot of the Mountains, and in the richest part of them.

After I had sufficiently admir'd the vast Quantity of Gold he had, he made Signs to the Doctor, That I should take any Piece or any Quantity that I pleas'd; but thought, I might take it as an Affront, to have him offer me any particular small Parcel. The Doctor hinted it to me, and I bad him return him Thanks; but to let him know, that I would by no Means have any of that, but that I would be glad to take up a Piece or Two, such as Chance should present to me in the Mountains; that I might shew in my own Country, and tell them, that I took it up with my own Hands: He answer'd, He would go with me himself; and doubted not, but to carry me where I should fully satisfy my Curiosity, if I would be content to clamber a little among the Rocks.

I now began to see plainly, that I had no manner of Need to have taken his Sons for Hostages, for my Safety; and would fain have  
sent

sent for them back again ; but he would by no Means give me Leave ; so I was oblig'd to give that over. A Day or two after, I desir'd of him, That he would give me Leave to send for one Person more from the Ships, who I had a great Mind should see the Country with me, and to send for some few Things that I should want, and, withal, to satisfy my Men, that I was safe and well.

This he consented to; so I sent away one of the two Midship-Men, who I call'd my Servants, and with him Two Servants of the *Spaniard*, my Landlord, as I call'd him, with Four Mules and Two Horses: I gave my Midship-Man my Orders and Directions under my Hand, to my *Supra-Cargo* what to do; for I was resolv'd to be even with my *Spaniard* for all his good Usage of me; the Midship-Man was gone Ten Days, for they came back pretty well laden, as you shall hear, and the Men were oblig'd to come all on Foot.

All the while they were gone, my Landlord and I spent in surveying the Country, and viewing his Plantation: As for the City of *Villa Rica*, it was not the most proper to go there in Publick; and the Doctor knew that as well as the *Spaniard*; and therefore, tho' we went several Times *incognito*, yet it was of no Consequence to me, neither did I desire it.

One Night I had a very strange Fright here, and behav'd myself very much like a Fool about it: The Case was this; I wak'd in the Middle of the Night, and chancing to open my Eyes, I saw a great Light of Fire, which to me



feem'd as if the House, or some Part of it, had been on Fire; I, as if I had been at *Wapping* or *Rotherhitb*, where People are always terrify'd with such Things, jump'd out of Bed, and call'd my Friend Captain *Merlote*, and cry'd out, Fire, Fire! The first Thing I should have thought of, on this Occasion, should have been, that the *Spaniard* did not understand what the Words Fire, Fire! meant; and, that if I expected they should understand me, I should have cry'd *Fuego, Fuego!*

However, Captain *Merlote* got up, and my *Madagascar* Captain, for we all lay near one another, and with the Noise they waked the whole House; and my Landlord, as he afterwards confess'd, began to suspect some Mischief; his Steward having come to his Chamber-Door, and told him, that the Strangers were up in Arms; in which Mistake we might all have had our Throats cut, and the poor *Spaniard* not to blame neither.

But our Doctor coming hastily in to me, unriddled the whole Matter, which was this, That a Volcano, or Burning Vent among the Hills, being pretty near the *Spanish* Side of the Country, as there are many of them in the *Andes*, had flam'd out that Night, and gave such a terrible Light in the Air, as made us think the Fire had at least been in the Out-Houses, or in part of the House, and accordingly had put me in such a Fright.

Upon this, having told me what it was, he ran away to the *Spanish* Servants, and told them what the Meaning of it all was; and bad them go and satisfy their Master, which

which they did, and all was well again ; but as for me, I sat almost all the Night staring out at Window at the Eruption of Fire upon the Hills, and the like Bonfire I had never seen before, I assure you.

I sincerely begg'd my Landlord's Pardon for disturbing his House ; and ask'd him, If those Eruptions were frequent ? he said, No, they were not frequent, for they were constant, either in one Part of the Hills or another ; and that in my passing the Mountains I should see several of them. I ask'd him, If they were not alarm'd with them ? and if they were not attended with Earthquakes ? He said, He believ'd that among the Hills themselves, they might have some Shakings of the Earth, because sometimes they should find Pieces of the Rocks break off, and fall down ; and that it was among those little Fractures that sometimes Pieces of Stone were found which had Gold interspers'd in them, as if they had been melted and run together ; of which he had shewn me some : But that as for Earthquakes in the Country, he had never heard of any, since he came thither, which had been upwards of Fifteen Years, including Three Years that he dwelt at *St. Fago*.

One Day, being out on Horseback with my Landlord, we rode up close to the Mountains, and he shew'd me at a Distance an Entrance, as he call'd it, into them, frightful enough indeed ; as you shall hear in its Place : Then he told me, That was the Way he intended to carry me when he should go to

shew me the highest Hills in the World : But he turn'd short, and, smiling, said, It should not be yet ; for tho' he had promised me a safe Return, and left Hostages for it, yet he had not capitulated for Time.

I told him, He need not capitulate with me for Time ; for if I had not Two Ships to stay my Coming, and between Three and Four Hundred Men eating me up all the while, I did not know whether I wou'd ever go away again, or no, if he would give me House-room. He told me, As to that, he had sent my Men some Victuals, so that they wou'd not starve if I did not come back for some Days. This surpriz'd me a little, and I discovered it in my Countenance. Nay, Seignior, says he, I have only sent them some Victuals to maintain my Two Hostages ; for, you know, they must not want. It was not Good-Manners in me to ask what he had sent ; but I understood, as soon as my Midship-man return'd, that he had sent down Sixteen Cows or Runts, I know not what to call them, but black Cattle ; Thirty Hogs, Thirteen large *Peruvian* Sheep, as big as great Calves ; and Three Casks of *Chilian* Wine, with an Assurance, that they should have more Provisions when that was spent.

I was amaz'd at all this Munificence of the *Spaniard*, and very glad I was, that I had sent my Midship-man for the Things I intended to present him again ; for I was as well able to requite him for a large Present as he was to make it, and had resolv'd it before I knew he had sent any Thing to the  
Ship ;

Ship; so that this exchanging of Presents was but a kind of generous Barter or Commerce: For as to Gold, we had either of us so much, that it was not at all equal in Value to what we had to give on both Sides, as we were at present stated.

In short, my Midship-man return'd with the Horses and Servants; and when we had brought what I had sent for into a Place which I desired the *Spaniard* to allow me to open my Things in, I sent my Doctor to desire the *Spaniard* to let me speak with him.

I told him, first, That he must give me his Parole of Honour not to take amiss what I had to say to him; That it was the Custom in our Country, at any Time, to make Presents to the Ladies, with the Knowledge and Consent of their Husbands or Parents, without any evil Design, or without giving any Offence; but that I knew it was not so among the *Spaniards*: That I had not had the Honour yet either to see his Lady or his Daughter, but that I had heard he had a Lady and a Daughter also: However, that if he pleas'd to be the Messenger of a Trifle I had caus'd my Man to bring, and would present it for me, and not take it as an Offence, he should see before-hand what it was, and I would content my self with his accepting it in their Behalf.

He told me, smiling, He did not bring me thither to take any Presents of me; I had already done enough, in that I had given him his Liberty, which was the most valuable Gift in the World; and as to his



Wife, I had already made her the best Present I was able, having given her back her Husband ; That it is true, it was not the Custom of the *Spaniards* to let their Wives appear in any publick Entertainment of Friends, but that he had resolv'd to break through that Custom ; and that he had told his Wife, What a Friend I had been to her Family, and that she should thank me for it in Publick ; and that then, what Present I had design'd for her, since I would be a Maker of Presents, she should do herself the Honour to take it with her own Hands, and he wou'd be very far from mistaking them, or taking it ill from his Wife.

As this was the highest Compliment he was able to make me, the more he was obliging in the Manner ; for he returned in about Two Hours, leading his Wife into the Room by the Hand, and his Daughter following.

I must confess I was surpriz'd, for I did not expect to have seen such a Sight in *America*. The Lady's Dress indeed I cannot describe, but she was really a charming Woman in her Person, of about Forty Years of Age, and cover'd over with Emeralds and Diamonds, I mean, as to her Head. She was veil'd till she came into the Room, but gave her Veil to her Woman when her Husband took her by the Hand. Her Daughter I took to be about Twelve Years old, which the *Spaniards* count Marriageable ; She was pretty, but not so handsome as her Mother.

After

After the Compliments on both Sides, my Landlord, as I now call him, told her very handsomely what a Benefactor I had been to her Family, by redeeming him from the Hands of Villains : And she, turning to me, thank'd me in the most obliging Manner, and with a modest graceful Way of Speech, such as I cannot represent, and which, indeed, I did not think the *Spaniards*, who are said to be so haughty, had been acquainted with.

I then desired the Doctor to tell the *Spaniard* her Husband, That I desir'd his Lady to accept a small Present which my Midshipman had brought for her from the Ship, and which, *with his Words*, I took in my Hand, and the *Spaniard* led his Wife on to take it : And I must needs say, It was not a mean Present, besides, its being of Ten Times the Value in that Place, as it would have been at *London*, and I was now very glad that, as I mentioned above, I always reserved a small Quantity of all Sorts of Goods unfold, that I might have them to dispose of as Occasion should offer.

First, I presented her with a very fine Piece of *Dutch Holland*, worth, in *London*, about Seven Shillings an Ell, and Thirty-six Ells in Length, and worth in *Chili*, to be sure, Fifteen Pieces of Eight *per* Ell, at least ; or it was rather likely, that all the Kingdom of *Chili* had not such another.

Then I gave her Two Pieces of *China Damask*, and Two Pieces of *China Silks* called *Atlasses*, flowered with Gold ; Two Pieces of

fine Muslin, one flower'd, the other plain, and a Piece of very fine Chints, or printed Callicoe; also a large Parcel of Spices, made up in blue Papers, being about Six Pounds of Nutmegs, and about twice as many Cloves.

And, lastly, To the young Lady I gave One Piece of Damask, Two Pieces of *China* Taffity, and a Piece of fine striped Muslin.

After all this was delivered, and the Ladies had received them, and given them their Women to hold, I pulled out a little Box, in which I had Two Couple of large Pearls, of that Pearl which I mentioned we found at the Pearl Islands, very well matched for Earrings, and gave the Lady one Pair, and the Daughter the other; And now, I think, I had made a Present fit for an Ambassador to carry to a Prince.

The Ladies made all possible Acknowledgment, and we had the Honour that Day to dine with them in Publick. My Landlord, the *Spaniard*, told me, I had given them such a Present, as the Viceroy of *Mexico's* Lady would have gone Fifty Leagues to have received.

But I had not done with my Host; for, after Dinner, I took him into the same Room, and told him, I hoped he did not think I had made all my Presents to the Ladies, and had nothing left to shew my Respect to him; and, therefore, first I presented him with Three Negroe-men, which I had bought at *Callao* for my own Use, but knew I could supply myself again at or in my way home, at a moderate Price; in the next Place, I  
gave

gave him Three Pieces of Black *Colchester* Bays, which, though they are coarse ordinary Things in *England*, that a Footman would scarce wear, are a Habit for a Prince in that Country; I then gave him a Piece of very fine Scarlet *English* Serge, which was really very valuable in *England*, but much more there; and another Piece of Crimson Broad-Cloth, and Six Pieces of fine Silk Druggets for his Two Sons, and thus I finished my Presents. The *Spaniard* stood still, and looked on all the while I was laying out my Presents to him, as one in a Transport, and said not one Word 'till all was over; But then he told me very gravely, That it was now time for him to turn me out of his House; For, Seignior, says he, no Man ought to suffer himself to be obliged beyond his Power of Return, and I have no possible way of making any Return to you equal to such Things as these.

It is true, the Present I had made him, if it was to be rated by the Value of Things in the Country where it then was, would have been valued at Six or Seven hundred Pounds Sterling, but to reckon them as they might cost me, did not all together amount to above One hundred Pounds, except the Three Negroes, which, indeed, cost me at *Lima* One thousand Two hundred Pieces of Eight.

He was as sensible of the Price of those Negroes, as I was of the Occasion he had of them, and of the Work he had to do for them; and he came to me about an Hour after, and told me, He had looked over all the Particulars



lars of the noble Presents which I had made them; and though the Value was too great for him to accept, or for any Man to offer him, yet, since I had been at so much Trouble to send for the Things, and that I thought him worthy such a Bounty, he was come back to tell me, That he accepted, thankfully, all my Presents, both to himself, and to his Wife and Daughter, except only the Three Negroes, and as they were bought in the Country, and were the particular Traffick of the Place, he could not take them as a Present; but would be equally obliged, and take it for as much a Favour, if I would allow him to pay for them.

I smiled, and told him, He and I would agree upon that; for he did not yet know what Favours I had to ask of him, and what Expence I should put him to; That I had a great Design in my View, which I was to crave his Assistance in, and which I had not yet communicated to him, in which he might, perhaps, find, that he would pay dear enough for all the little Presents I had made him; and, in the mean time, to make himself easy as to the Three Negroe-men, I gave him my Word, that he should pay for them; only not yet.

He could have nothing to object against an Offer of this kind, because he could not guess what I meant; but gave me all the Assurances of Service and Assistance that lay in his Power, in any thing that I might have to do in that Country.

But

But here, by the way, you are to understand, that all this was carry'd on with a Supposition, that we acted under a Commission from the King of *France*; and though he knew many of us were *English*, and that I was an *Englishman* in particular, yet, as we had such a Commission, and produced it, we were *Frenchmen*, in that Sense, to him, nor did he entertain us upon any other Foot.

The Sequel of the Story will also make it sufficiently appear, That I did not make such Presents as these in meer Ostentation, or only upon the Compliment of a Visit to a *Spanish* Gentleman, any more than I would leave my Ship, and a Cargo of such Value, in the manner I had done, to make a Tour into the Country, if had not had Views sufficient to justify such Beginnings; and the Consequence of these Things, will be the best Apology for me, to those who shall have Patience to put them all together.

We had now spent a Fortnight, and something more, in Ceremony and Civilities, and in, now and then, taking a little Tour about the Fields, and towards the Mountains. However, even in this way of living, I was not so idle as I seem'd to be, for I not only made due Observations of all the Country which I saw, but inform'd myself sufficiently of the Parts which I did not see. I found the Country not only fruitful in the Soil, but wonderful temperate and agreeable in its Climate. The Air, though hot, according to its proper Latitude, yet that Heat so moderated

derated by the cool Breezes from the Mountains, that it was rather equal to the plain Countries in other Parts of the World, in the Latitude of Fifty, than to a Climate in Thirty-eight to Forty Degrees.

This gave the Inhabitants the Advantages, not only of pleasant and agreeable living, but also of a particular Fertility, which hot Climates are not blessed with, especially as to Corn, the most necessary of all Productions, such as Wheat, I mean *European* Wheat, or *English* Wheat, which grew here as well and as kindly, as in *England*; which in *Peru*, and in the *Isthmus* of *America*, will by no means thrive for want of Moisture and Cold.

Here were, also, an excellent middling Breed of Black Cattle, which they fed under the Shade of the Mountains, and on the Banks of the Rivers, 'till they came to be very fat. In a Word, here were, or might be produced, all the Plants, Fruits, and Grain, of a temperate Climate. At the same Time, the Orange, Limon, Citron, Pomegranate, and Figs, with a moderate Care, would come to a very tolerable Perfection in their Gardens; and even Sugar-Canes, in some Places, though these last but rarely, and not without great Art in the Cultivation, and chiefly in Gardens.

They assured me, That farther *Southward* beyond *Baldivia*, and to the Latitude of Forty-seven to Forty-nine, the Lands were esteemed richer than where we now were; the Grass more strengthening and nourishing  
for

for the Cattle; and that, consequently, the Black Cattle, Horses, and Hogs, were all of a larger Breed; but that, as the *Spaniards* had no Settlement beyond *Baldivia* to the *South*, so they did not find the Natives so tractable as where we then were; where, though the *Spaniards* were but few, and the Strength they had, was but small, yet, as upon any Occasion, they had always been assisted with Forces sufficient from *St. Jago*, and, if need were, even from *Peru*, so the Natives had always been subdued, and had found themselves obliged to submit; and that now they were intirely reduced, and were, and had been, for several Years, very easy and quiet: Besides the plentiful Harvest which they made of Gold from the Mountains (which appeared to be the great Allurement of the *Spaniards*) had drawn them rather to settle here, than farther *Southward*, being naturally addicted, as my new Landlord confessed to me, to reap the Harvest which had the least Labour and Hazard attending it, and the most Profit.

Not but that, at the same Time, he confessed, That he believed, and had heard, that there was as much Gold to be found farther to the *South*, as far as the Mountains continued; but that, as I have said, the Natives were more troublesome, and more dangerous, than where they now lived; and that the King of *Spain* did not allow Troops sufficient to civilize and reduce them.

I asked



I asked him concerning the Natives in the Country where we were? he told me, They were the most quiet, and inoffensive People, since the *Spaniards* had reduced them by Force, that could be desired; That they were not, indeed, Numerous, or Warlike, the Warlike and Obstinate Part of them having fled farther off to the *South*, as they were overpowered by the *Spaniards*; That for those that were left, they lived secure, under the Protection of the *Spanish* Governor; That they fed Cattle, and planted the Country, and sold the Product of their Lands very much to the *Spaniards*; but that they did not covet to be rich, only to obtain Cloaths, Arms, Powder and Shot; which, however, they let them have but sparingly, and with good Assurance of their Fidelity. I asked him, If they were not treacherous and perfidious? And if it was not dangerous trusting themselves among them in the Mountains, and among the retired Places where they dwelt? he told me, That it was quite the contrary; that they were so honest, and so harmless, that he would at any Time venture to send his Two Sons into the Mountains a Hunting, with each of them a *Chilian* for his Guide, and let them stay with the said Natives Two or Three Nights and Days at a Time, and be in no Uneasiness about them; and that none of them were ever known to do any foul or treacherous thing by the *Spaniards*, since he had been in that Country.

Having

Having thus fully informed myself of Things, I began now to think it was high Time to see the main Sight which I came to enquire after (*viz.*) The Passages of the Mountains, and the Wonders that were to be discovered on the other Side; and accordingly I took my Patron the *Spaniard* by himself, and told him, That as I was a Traveller, and was now in such a remote Part of the World, he could not but think I should be glad to see every thing extraordinary, that was to be seen; that I might be able to give some Account of the World when I came into *Europe*, better, and differing from what others had done, who had been there before me; and that I had a great mind, if he would give me his Assistance, to enter into the Passages and Valleys which he had told me so much of in the Mountains, and, if it was possible, *which, indeed, I had always thought it was not*, to take a Prospect of the World on the other Side.

He told me, It was not a light Piece of Work, and, perhaps, the Discoveries might not answer my Trouble, there being little to be seen but steep Precipices, inhospitable Rocks, and unpassable Mountains, immuring us on every Side, innumerable Rills and Brooks of Water falling from the Clifts, making a barbarous and unpleasant Sound; and that Sound echo'd and reverberated from innumerable Cavities and Hollows among the Rocks, and these all pouring down into one Middle Stream, which we should always find on one Side or other of us as we went,  
and

and that sometimes, we should be obliged to pass those middle Streams, as well as the Rills and Brooks on the Sides, without a Bridge, and at the Expence of pulling off our Cloaths.

He told us, That we should meet, indeed, with Provisions enough, and with an innocent harmless People, who, according to their Ability, would entertain us very willingly; but that I who was a Stranger, would be forely put to it for Lodging, especially for so many of us.

However, he said, as he had, perhaps, at first, raised this Curiosity in me, by giving me a favourable Account of the Place, he would be very far from discouraging me now; and that if I resolved to go, he would not only endeavour to make every thing as pleasant to me as he could, but that he and his *Mayor Domo* would go along with me, and see us safe through, and safe home again; but desired me, not to be in too much haste, for that he must make some little Preparation for the Journey, which, as he told us, might, perhaps, take us up Fourteen or Sixteen Days forward, and as much backagain; Not, he said, that it was necessary that we should be so long going and coming, as that he supposed I would take time to see every thing which I might think worth seeing, and not be in so much haste, as if I was sent Express. I told him, He was very much in the right; That I did not desire to make a thing, which I expected so much Pleasure in, be a Toil to me more than needs must; and above all, that, as  
I sup-

I supposed, I should not return into these Parts very soon, I would not take a cursory View of a Place, which I expected would be so well worth seeing, and let it be known to all I should speak of it to, that I wanted to see it again, before I could give a full Account of it.

Well, *Seignior*, says he, we will not be in haste, or view it by halves; for if wild and uncouth Places will be a Diversion to you, I promise myself your Curiosity shall be fully gratify'd; but as to extraordinary Things, Rarities in Nature, and surprizing Incidents which Foreigners expect, I cannot say much to that. However, what think you, *Seignior*, says he, if we should take a Tour a little way into the Entrance of the Hills, which I shewed you the other Day, and look upon the Gate of this Gulph? Perhaps your Curiosity may be satisfy'd with the First Day's Prospect, which, I assure you, will be none of the most pleasant, and you may find yourself sick of the Enterprize.

I told him, No; I was so resolv'd upon the Attempt, since he, who, I was satisfy'd, would not deceive me, had represent'd it as so feazible, and especially since he had offer'd to conduct me through it, that I would not, for all the Gold that was in the Mountains, lay it aside. He shook his Head at that Expression, and smiling at the Doctor, says he, This Gentleman little thinks that there is more Gold in these Mountains, nay, even in this Part where we are, than there is now above Ground in the whole World: Partly un-



derstanding what he said, I answered, My Meaning was, To let him see, that nothing could divert me from the purpose of viewing the Place, unless he himself forbid me, which, I hoped he would not; and that as for looking a little way into the Passage, to try if the Horror of the Place would put a Check to my Curiosity, I would not give him that Trouble, seeing the more terrible and frightful, the more difficult and impracticable it was, provided it could be master'd at last, the more it would please me to attempt and overcome it.

Nay, nay, Seignior, *said he pleasantly*, there's nothing difficult or impracticable in it, nor is it any thing but what the Country-People, and even some of our Nation, perform every Day; and that, not only by themselves, either for Sport in pursuit of Game, but even with Drovers of Cattle, which they go with from Place to Place, as to a Market, or a Fair; and, therefore, if the Horror of the Clifts and Precipices, the Noises of the *Volcanos*, the Fire, and such Things as you may see and hear above you, will not put a Stop to your Curiosity, I assure you, you shall not meet with any thing unpassable or impracticable below, nor any thing but what, with the Assistance of God, and the Blessed Virgin (*and then he crossed himself, and so we did all*) we shall go chearfully over.

Finding, therefore, that I was thus resolutely bent upon the Enterprize, but not in the least guessing at my Design, he gave Order to have Servants and Mules provided,  
for

for Mules are much fitter to travel among the Hills than Horses; and in Four Days he promised to be ready for a March.

I had nothing to do in all these Four Days, but to walk abroad, and, as we say; look about me; but I took this Opportunity to give Instructions to my Two Midship-men, who were called my Servants, in what they were to do.

First, I charged them to make Land-marks, Bearings, and Beacons, as we might call them, upon the Points of the Rocks above them, and at every Turning in the Way below them, also at the Reaches and Windings of the Rivers or Brooks, Falls of Water, and every thing remarkable; and to keep each of them separate and distinct Journals of those Things; not only to find the Way back again by the same Steps; but that they might be able to find that Way afterwards by themselves, and without Guides, which was the Bottom and true Intent of all the rest of my Undertaking; and as I knew these were both capable to do it, and had Courage and Fidelity to undertake it, I had singled them out for the Attempt, and had made them fully acquainted with my whole Scheme, and, consequently, they knew the Meaning and Reason of my present Discourse with them: They promised not to fail to shew me a Plan of the Hills, with the Bearings of every Point, one with another, where every Step was to be taken, and every Turning to the Right Hand, or to the Left, and such a Journal, I believe, was never seen before, or since; but

'tis too long for this Place. I shall, however, take out the Heads of it as I go along, which may serve as a general Description of the Place.

The Evening of the Fourth Day, as he had appointed, my Friend the *Spaniard* let me know, That he was ready to set out, and accordingly we began our Cavalcade: My Retinue consisted of Six, as before, and we had Mules provided for us; my Two Midship-men, as Servants, had Two Mules given them also for their Baggage: the *Spaniard* had Six also, *viz.* His Gentleman, or, *as I called him before*, his M A Y O R D O M O, on Horse-back, that is to say, On Mule-back, with Mules for his Baggage, and Four Servants on Foot. Just before we set out, his Gentleman brought every one of us a Fuzee, and our Two Servants, each a Harquebush, or short Musket, with Cartouches, Powder and Ball, and adjoined a Pouch with small Shot; such as we call Swan-Shot, for Fowls, or Deer, as we saw Occasion.

I was as well pleased with this, as with any thing, because I had not so intire a Confidence in the Native *Chilians*, as he had; but I saw plainly, some Time after, that I was wrong in that, for nothing could be more honest, quiet, and free from Design, than those People, except the poor honest People where we dressed up the King and Queen, as above.

We were late in the Morning before we got out, having all this Equipage to furnish, and travelling very gently, it was about Two  
Hours

Hours before Sun-set, when we came to the Entrance of the Mountains, where, to my Surprize, I found we were to go in upon a Level, without any Ascent, at least, that was considerable: We had, indeed, gone up upon a pretty sharp Ascent, for near Two Miles, before we came to the Place.

The Entrance was agreeable enough, the Passage being near Half a Mile broad. On the Left Hand, was a small River, whose Channel was deep, but the Water shallow, there having been but little Rain for some Time; the Water ran very rapid, and, as my *Spaniard* told me, was sometimes exceeding fierce; the Entrance lay inclining a little *South*, and was so straight, that we could see near a Mile before us; but the prodigious Height of the Hills on both Sides, and before us, appearing one over another, gave such a Prospect of Horror, that, I confess, it was frightful at first to look on the stupendous Height of the Rocks: Every thing before us looking one higher than another, was amazing; and to see how, in some Places, they hung over the River, and over the Passage, it threatned a Man with being, some Time or other, swallowed up.

The Rocks and Precipices on our Right Hand, had, here and there vast Clefs and Entrances, which looked as if they had been different Thorough-fairs; but when we came to look full into them, we could see them close up at the farther End, and go off in Slopes, and with Gullies made by the Water, which, in hasty Rains, came pouring down



from the Hills, and which, at a Distance, made such Noises, as 'tis impossible to conceive, unless by having seen and heard the like; for the Water falling sometimes from a Height Twenty Times as high as the Monument, and, perhaps, much more, and meeting in the Passage with many Dashes and Interruptions, 'tis impossible to describe how, the Sound crossing, and interfering, mingled itself, and the several Noises sunk one into another, increasing the Whole, as the many Waters joining, increased the main Stream.

We entred this Passage about Two Miles the first Night: After the first Length, which, as I said, held about Three Quarters of a Mile, we turned away to the *South*, short on the Right Hand; the River leaving us, seemed to come through a very narrow, but deep, Hollow of the Mountains, where there was little more Breadth at the Bottom, than the Channel took up, though the Rocks gave back as they ascended, as placed in several Stages, though all horrid and irregular, and we could see nothing but Blackness and Terror all the Way. I was glad our Way did not turn on that Side, but wondred, that we should leave the River, and the more, when I found, that in the Way we went, having first mounted gently a green pleasant Slope, when it declined again, we found, as it were, a New Rivulet began in the Middle, and the Water ran *S. E.* or thereabouts: This made me begin to ask, If the Water went away into the New World beyond the Hills? My Patron smiled, and said, No, Seignior, not yet;

yet; we shall meet with the other River again very quickly; and so we found it the next Morning.

When we came a little farther, we found the Passage open, and we came to a very pleasant Plain, which declined a little gradually, widening to the Left, or *East* Side; On the Right Side of this, we saw another vast Opening like the first, which went in about Half a Mile, and then clos'd up as the first had done, sloping up to the Top of the Hills a most monstrous, inconceivable Height.

My Patron stopping here, and getting down, or alighting from his Mule, gave him to his Man, and asking me to alight, told me, This was the first Night's Entertainment I was to meet with in the *Andes*, and hoped I was prepared for it. I told him, That I might very well consent to accept of such Entertainment, in a Journey of my own contriving, as he was content to take up with in Compliment to me.

I looked round me, to see if there were any Huts or Cots of the Mountaniers thereabouts, but I perceived none; only I observed something like a House, and it was really a House of some of the said Mountaniers upon the Top of a Precipice as high from where we stood, as the Top of the Cupulo of *St. Paul's*, and I saw some living Creatures, whether Men or Women, I could not tell, looking from thence down upon us: However, I understood afterwards, That they had Ways to come at their Dwelling, which were very easy and agreeable, and had Lanes and

Plains where they fed their Cattle, and had every thing growing that they desired.

My Patron making a kind of an Invitation to me to walk, took me up that dark Chasm, or Opening on the Right Hand, which I have just mentioned; Here, Sir, said he, if you will venture to walk a few Steps, 'tis likely we may shew you some of the Product of this Country; but as it grew towards Night, he added, But I see it is too dark; perhaps we may do it in the Morning: And with this, we walked back towards the Place where we left our Mules and Servants, and when we came thither, there was a complete Camp fixed, Three very handsome Tents raised, and a Bar set up at a Distance, where the Mules were tyed one to another to graze, and the Servants, and the Baggage, lay together with an open Tent over them.

My Patron led me into the First Tent, and told me, He was obliged to let me know, That I must make shift with that Lodging, the Place not affording any better.

Here we had Quilts laid very artificially and clever, for me and my Three Comerades, and we lodged very comfortably; but before we came to that, we had the Third Tent to go to, in which there was a very handsome Table, covered with all Conveniencies, and, in a Word, with a cold Treat, that is to say, Cold roasted Mutton and Beef, very well dress'd; and after that, some Potted or Baked Venison, with Pickles, Conserves, and very fine Sweetmeats.

Here

Here we eat very freely, but he bid us depend upon it, That we should not fare so well the next Night; and so it would be worse every Night, 'till we came to lie intirely at a *Mountainier's*; but he was better to us than he pretended.

In the Morning, we had our Chocolate as regularly as we used to have it in his own House, and we were up, and ready to travel, in a Moment. We went winding now from the *S. E.* to the Left, 'till our Course looked *E. by N.* when we came again to have the River in View. But I should have observed here, That my Two Midship-men, and Two of my Patron's Servants, had, by his Direction, been, very early in the Morning, clambering up the Rocks in the Opening on the Right Hand, and had come back again about a Quarter of an Hour after we set out; when, missing my Two Men, I enquired for them, and my Patron said, They were coming; for, it seems, he saw them at a Distance, and so we halted for them.

When they were come almost up to us, he call'd to his Men in *Spanish* to ask, If they had had *Una bon Vejo*? They answer'd, *Poco, Poco*: And when they came quite up, one of my Midship-Men shew'd me Three or Four small Bits of clean perfect Gold, which they had pick'd up in the Hill or Gullet where the Water trickled down from the Rocks; and the *Spaniard* told them, That had they had Time, they should have found much more, the Water being quite down, and no Body having been



been there since the last hard Rain. One of the *Spaniards* had Three small Bits in his Hand also; I said nothing for the present, but charg'd my Midship Men to mark the Place, and so we went on:

We follow'd up the Stream of this Water for Three Days more, encamping every Night as before; in which Time we pass'd by several such Openings into the Rocks, on either Side. On the Fourth Day we had the Prospect of a very pleasant Valley and River below us on the *North* Side; keeping its Course almost in the Middle; the Valley reaching near Four Miles in Length, and in some Places near Two Miles broad.

This Sight was perfectly surprizing, because here we found the Vale fruitful, level, and inhabited, there being several small Villages or Clusters of Houses, such as the *Chilians* live in, which are low Houses, cover'd with a Kind of Sedge, and shelter'd with little Rows of thick grown Trees, of what Kind we knew not.

We saw no Way thro', nor which Way we were to go out; but saw it every where bounded with prodigious Mountains, look to which Side of the Valley we would: We kept still on the Right, which was now the *South-East Side* of the River, and, as we followed it up the Stream, it was still less than at first, and lessened every Step we went, because of the Number of Rills we left behind us: And here we encamped the Fifth Time, and all this while the *Spanish* Gentleman victualled us: Then we turned again to the Right, where we had a new and beautiful

tiful Prospect of another Valley, as broad as the other, but not above a Mile in length.

After we were thro' this Valley, my Patron rides up to a poor little Cottage of a *Chilian Indian*, without any Ceremony, and calling us all about him, told us, That there we would go to Dinner : We saw a Smoke indeed *in* the House, rather than come *out* of it ; and it smother'd thro' a Hole in the Roof instead of a Chimney : However to this House, as to an Inn, my Patron had sent away his *Mayor Domo* and another Servant, and there, they were as busy as Two Cooks, boiling and stewing Goats Flesh, and Fowls, making us Soup, Broth, and such Hodge-Podge, as it seems they were us'd to provide, and which, however homely the Cottage was, we found very favoury and good.

Immediately a loose Tent was pitch'd, and we had our Table set up, and Dinner serv'd in, and within about Two Hours, we had eaten it, repos'd ourselves after it (as the Custom there is) and were ready to travel again.

I had Room all this while to observe, and wonder at the admirable Structure of this Place, which may serve, in my Opinion, for the Eighth Wonder of the World ; that is to say, supposing there were but Seven before. We had in the Middle of the Day, indeed, a very hot Sun, and the Reflection from the Mountains made it still hotter ; but the Heighth of the Rocks on every Side began to cast long Shadows before Three a Clock, except where the Openings look'd toward the West, and as soon as those Shadows reach'd us,

†

the

the cool Breezes of the Air came naturally on, drawing every Way exceeding pleasant and refreshing.

The Place we were in, was green and flourishing, and the Soil well cultivated by the poor industrious *Chilians*, who liv'd here in perfect Solitude, and pleas'd with their Liberty from the Tyranny of the *Spaniards*, who very seldom visited them, and never molested them, being pretty much out of their Way, except when they came for Hunting and Diversion; and then they used the *Chilians* always civilly, because they were oblig'd to them for their Assistance in their Diversions; the *Chilians* of those Valleys being very active, strong, and nimble Fellows.

By this Means, most of them were furnish'd with Fire-Arms, Powder, and Shot, and were very good Marks-Men; but as to Violence against any Body, they entertained no Thought of that Kind, as I could perceive, but were content with their Way of Living, which was easy and free.

The Tops of the Mountains here, the Valleys being so large, were much plainer to be seen, than where the Passages were narrow; for there the Height was so great, that we could see nothing. Here, at several Distances (the Rocks towering one over another) we might see Smoak come out of some, Snow lying upon others, Trees and Bushes growing upon others; and Goats, wild Asses, and other Creatures, which we could hardly distinguish, running about on others.

When

When we had pass'd thro' this second Valley, I perceiv'd we came to a narrower Passage, and something like the first; the Entrance into it indeed was smooth, and above a Quarter of a Mile broad, and it went winding away to the *North*, and then again turn'd round to the *N. E.* afterwards almost due *East*, and then to the *S. E.* and so to *S. S. E.* and this frightful narrow Straight, with the hanging Rocks almost closing together on the Top, whose Height we could neither see or guess at, continued about Three Days Journey more, most of the Way ascending gently upwards: And as to the River, it was by this Time quite lost; but we might see, that on any Occasion of Rain, or of the melting of the Snow on the Mountains, there was a Hollow in the Middle of the Valley, thro' which the Water made its Way, and on either hand the Sides of the Hills were full of the like Gullies, made by the Violence of the Rain, where, not the Earth only, but the Rocks themselves, even the very Stone, seem'd to be worn and penetrated by the continual Fall of the Water.

Here my Patron shew'd me, that in the Hollow, which I mention'd, in the Middle of this Way, and at the Bottom of those Gullies, or Places worn, as above, in the Rocks, there were often found Pieces of Gold, and sometimes, after a Rain, very great Quantities; and that there were few of the little *Chilian* Cottages, which I had seen, where they had not sometimes a Pound or Two of Gold Dust, and Lumps of Gold by them; and he was mistaken, if I was willing to tarry, and make

†

the



the Experiment, if we did not find some, even then, in a very little Search.

The *Chilian* Mountainier, at whose House we had stopp'd, to dine, had gone with us, and he hearing my Patron say thus, runs presently to the hollow Channel in the Middle; there was a Kind of a Fall, or Break in it, where the Water by falling, perhaps, Two or Three Foot, had made a little Place deeper than the rest; and which, tho' there was no Water then running, yet had Water in it, perhaps the Quantity of a Barrel or Two: Here, with the Help of Two of the Servants, and a Kind of Scoop, he presently threw out the Water, with the Sand, and whatever was at Bottom among it, into the ordinary Water-Course; the Water falling thus hard, every Scoop-full upon the Sand or Earth that came out of the Scoop before it, wash'd a great deal of it away; and among that which remain'd, we might plainly see little Lumps of Gold shining as big as Grains of Sand, and sometimes One or Two a little bigger.

This was Demonstration enough to us; I took up some small Grains of it, about the Quantity of Half a Quarter of an Ounce, and left my Midship-Men to take up more, and they staid indeed so long, that they could scarce see their Way to overtake us, and brought away about Two Ounces in all, the *Chilian* and the Servants very freely giving them all they found.

When we had travell'd about Nine Miles more in this winding frightful narrow Way, it began to grow towards Night, and my

my Patron talk'd of taking up our Quarters as we had before ; but his Gentleman put him in Mind of a *Chilian*, one of their Old Servants, who lived in a Turning among the Mountains, about Half a Mile out of our Way, and where we might be accommodated again with the Helps of a House, and Place, at least, for our Cookery: Very true, says our Patron, We will go thither, and there, Seignior, says he, turning to me, You shall see an Emblem of complete Felicity, even in the Middle of this Place of Horror ; and you shall see a Prince greater, and more truly so, than King *Philip*, who is the greatest Man in the World.

Accordingly we went softly on, his Gentleman having advanced before, and, in about Half a Mile, we found a Turning or Opening on our Left, where we beheld a deep, large Valley, almost Circular, and of about a Mile Diameter, and abundance of Houses, or Cottages, interspers'd all over it, so that the whole Valley looked like an inhabited Village, and the Ground, like a planted Garden.

We, who, as I said, had been for some Miles ascending upwards, were so high above them, that the low Valley looked, as the Low Lands in *England* look below *Box-Hill*, in *Surrey* ; and I began to ask, How we should get down? But as we were come into a wider Space than before, so we had more Day-light ; for though the Hollow Way had rendred it near dusk before, now it was almost clear Day again.

Here

Here we parted with the First *Chilian* that I mentioned, and I ordered one of my Midshipmen to give him a Hat, and a Piece of Black Bays, enough to make him a Cloak, which so obliged the Man, that he knew not what way to testify his Joy : But I knew what I was doing in this; and I ordered my Midshipman to do it, that he might make his Acquaintance with him against another Time, and it was not a Gift ill-bestowed, as will appear in its Place.

We were now obliged to quit our Mules, who all took up their Quarters at the Top of the Hill, while we, by Footings made in the Rocks, descended, as we might say, down a Pair of Stairs of Half a Mile long, but with many plain Places between, like Foot-paces, for the Ease of going and coming.

Thus winding and turning, to avoid the Declivity of the Hill, we came very safe to the Bottom, where my Patron's Gentleman, and our New Landlord, *that was to be*, came to pay his Compliment to us.

He was dressed in a Jerkin made of an Otter Skin, like a Doublet, a Pair of long *Spanish* Breeches of Leather, dress'd after the *Spanish* Fashion, Green, and very soft, and which looked very well, but what the Skin was, I could not guess; he had over it a Mantle, of a kind of Cotton, dyed in Two or Three grave Brown Colours, and thrown about him like a *Scotsman's* Plaid; he had Shoes of a particular Make, tied on like Sandals, flat-heeled, no Stockings, his Breeches hanging down below the Calf of his  
Leg,

Leg, and his Shoes lacing up above his Ancles; he had on a Cap of the Skin of some small Beast like a *Rocoon*, with a bit of the Tail hanging out from the Crown of his Head backward, a long Pole in his Hand; and a Servant, as oddly dress'd as himself, carried his Gun; he had neither Spado nor Dagger.

When our Patron came up, the *Chilian* stepped forward, and made him Three very low Bows, and then they talked together, not in *Spanish*, but in a kind of *Mountain Fargon*, some *Spanish*, and some *Chilian*, of which I scarce understood one Word: After a few Words, I understood he said something of a Stranger come to see, *and then, I suppose, added, the Passages of the Mountains; then the Chilian came towards me, made me Three Bows, and bad me welcome in Spanish: As soon as he had said that, he turns to his Barbarian, I mean, His Servant, for he was as ugly a look'd Fellow as ever I saw, and taking his Gun from him, presented it to me, my Patron bad me take it, for he saw me a little at a Loss what to do, telling me, That as it was the greatest Compliment that a Chilian could pay to me, he would be very ill pleased, and out of Humour, if it was not accepted, and would think we did not care to be friendly with him.*

As we had given this *Chilian* no Notice of our coming, no, not a Quarter of an Hour; we could not expect great Matters of Entertainment, and, as we carried our Provision with



us, we did not stand in much need of it ; but we had no Reason to complain.

This Man's Habitation was all the same as the rest ; low, and covered with a Sedge, or a kind of Réed, which we found grew very plentifully in the Valley where he liv'd ; he had several Pieces of Ground round his Dwelling, inclosed with Stone Walls, made very artificially with small Stones, and no Mortar ; these inclosed Grounds were planted with several kinds of Garden-stuff for his Household, such as Plantains, *Spanish* Cabbages, Green Cocoa, and other Things of the Growth of their own Country, and Two of them with *European* Wheat.

He had Five or Six Apartments in his House, every one of them had a Door into the Air, and into one another, and Two of them were very large and decent, had long Tables on one Side made after their own Way, and Benches to sit to them like our Country Peoples long Tables in *England*, and Mattresses like Couches all along the other Side, with Skins of several Sorts of wild Creatures laid on them to repose on in the Heat of the Day, as is the Usage among the *Spaniards*.

Our People set up their Tents and Beds abroad as before ; but my Patron told me, The *Chilian* would take it very ill, if he and I did not take up our Lodging in his House, and we had Two Rooms provided, very magnificent in their Way. The Mattress we lay on, had a large Canopy over it, spread like the Crown of a Tent, and covered with a large Piece of Cotton, white as Milk, and which  
came

came round every way like a Curtain; so that, if it had been in the Open Field, it would have been a complete Covering; the Bed, such as it was, might be as hard as a Quilt, and not more, and the Covering was of the same Cotton as the Curtain-work, which, it seems, is the Manufacture of the *Chilian* Women, and is made very dextrously; it looked wild, but was pleasant enough, and proper to the Place; so I slept very comfortably in it.

But, I must confess, I was surprized at the Aspect of Things in the Night here. It was, as I told you above, near Night when we came to this Man's Cottage (Palace I should have called it) and while we were taking our Repast, which was very pretty; it grew quite Night; we had Wax Candles brought in for Light, which, it seems, my Patron's Man had provided; and the Place had so little Communication with the Air by Windows, that we saw nothing of what was without Doors.

After Supper, my Patron turns to me, Come, Seignior, said he, pray prepare yourself to take a Walk: What, in the Dark, said I, in such a Country as this? No, no, says he, It is never dark here, you are now come to the Country of Everlasting Day; What think you? Is not this *Elisum*? I do not understand you, says I; But you will presently, says he, when I shall shew you, that 'tis now lighter Abroad, than when we came in. Soon after this, some of the Servants opened the Door that went into the next

Room, and the Door of that Room, which opened into the Air, stood open, from whence a Light of Fire shone into the outer Room, and so farther into ours: What are they burning there, says I to my Patron? You will see presently, says he; adding, I hope you will not be surprized; so he led me out to that Door.

But who can express the Thoughts of a Man's Heart, coming on a sudden into a Place where the whole World seemed to be of a light Fire, the Valley was on one Side so exceeding bright, the Eye could scarce bear to look at it; the Sides of the Mountains were shining like the Fire itself; the Flame from the Top of the Mountain on the other Side, casting its Light directly upon them, from thence the Reflection into other Parts look'd Red, and more terrible; for the first was white and clear, like the Light of the Sun; but the other being, as it were, a Reflection of Light mix'd with some darker Cavities, represented the Fire of a Furnace; and, in short, it might well be said, here was no Darknes; But, certainly, at the first View it gives no Traveller any other Idea than that of being at the very Entrance into Eternal Horror.

All this while there was no Fire, that is to say, No real Flame to be seen, only, that where the Flame was, it shone clearly into the Valley; but the *Volcano*, or *Volcanos*, from whence the Fire issued out (for it seems there were no less than Three of them, tho' at the Distance of some Miles from one another) were on the *South* and *East* Sides of the Valley,

Valley, which was so much on that Side where we were, that we could see nothing but the Light, neither on the other Side, could they see any more, it seems, than just the Top of the Flame; not knowing any thing of the Places from whence it issued out, which no mortal Creature, no, not of the *Chilians* themselves, were ever hardy enough to go near; nor would it be possible if any should attempt it, the Tops of the Hills, for many Leagues about them, being covered with new Mountains of Ashes and Stones, which are daily cast out of the Mouths of those *Volcanos*, by which, they grew every Day higher than they were before, and which would overwhelm not only Men, but whole Armies of Men, if they should venture to come near them.

When first we came into the long narrow Way I mentioned last, I observed, That, as I thought, the Wind blew very hard aloft among the Hills, and that it made a Noise like Thunder, which I thought nothing of, but as a Thing usual; But now, when I came to this terrible Sight, and that I heard the same Thunder, and yet found the Air calm and quiet, I soon understood, that it was a continued Thunder, occasioned by the Roaring of the Fire in the Bowels of the Mountains.

It was some Time, you may suppose, before a Traveller, unacquainted with such Things, could make them familiar to him; and though the Horror and Surprize might abate, after proper Reflections on the Nature



and Reason of the Thing, yet I had a kind of Astonishment upon me for a great while; every different Place to which I turned my Eye, presented me with a new Scene of Horror; I was, for a while, frightened at the Fire being, as it were, over my Head, for I could see nothing of it; but that the Air looked as if it were all on Fire, and I could not persuade myself but it would cast down the Rocks and Mountains on my Head; But they laugh'd me out of that Part.

After a while, I asked them, If these *Volcanos* did not cast out a kind of Liquid Fire, as I had seen an Account of on the monstrous Eruptions at Mount *Ætna*, which cast out a prodigious Stream of Fire, and ran Eight Leagues into the Sea? Upon my putting this Question to my Patron, he asked the *Chilian*, How long ago it was since *such a Stream*, calling it by a Name of their own, ran Fire? He answered, It ran now, and if we were disposed to walk but Three Furlongs, we should see it.

He said little to me, but asked me, If I car'd to walk a little way by this kind of Light? I told him, It was a surprizing Place we were in, but I supposed he would lead me into no Danger; he said, He would assure me he would lead me into no Danger; That these Things were very familiar to them; but that I might depend there was no Hazard, and that the Flames which gave all this Light, were Six or Seven Miles off, and some of them more: We walked along the Plain of the Valley about Half a Mile, when another  
great

great Valley opened to the Right, and gave us a more dreadful Prospect than any we had seen before; for at the farther End of this Second Valley, but at the Distance of about Three Miles from where we stood, we saw a livid Stream of Fire come running down the Sides of the Mountain for near Three Quarters of a Mile in Length, running like melted Metal into a Mould, or out of a Furnace, 'till, I supposed, as it came nearer the Bottom, it cooled and separated, and so went out of itself.

Beyond this, over the Summit of a prodigious Mountain, we could see the Tops of the clear Flame of a *Volcano*, a dreadful one no doubt, could we have seen it all; and from the Mouth of which, it was supposed this Stream of Fire came, though the *Chilian* assured us, that the Fire itself was Eight Leagues off, and that the Liquid Fire which we saw, came out of the Side of the Mountain, and was Two Leagues off of the great *Volcano* itself, running like Metal out of a Furnace.

They told me, There was a great deal of melted Gold ran down with the other inflamed Earth in that Stream, and that much Gold was afterwards found there; but this I was to take upon Trust.

This Sight was, as you will easily suppose, best at a Distance, and, indeed, I had enough of it; as for my Two Midship-men, they were almost frighted out of all their Resolutions of going any farther in this horrible Place, and when we came back, they came

mighty seriously to me, and begg'd of me, for God's sake, not to venture any farther upon the Faith of these *Spaniards*, for that they would certainly carry us all into some Mischief or other, and betray us.

I bid them be easy, for I saw nothing in it all, that look'd like Treachery; That it was true, indeed, it was a terrible Place to look on, but it seem'd to be nothing but what was natural and familiar there, and we should be soon out of it. They told me very seriously, That they believed it was the very Mouth of Hell, and that, in short, they were not able to bear it, and begged of me to go back: I told them No, I could not think of going back; but if they could not endure it, I would give Consent that they should go back in the Morning: However, we went, for the present, to the *Chilian's* House again, where we got a plentiful Draught of *Chilian* Wine, for my Patron had taken care to have a good Quantity of it with us, and in the Morning my Two Midship-men, who got very drunk over Night, had Courage enough to venture forward again; for the Light of the Sun put quite another Face upon Things, and nothing of the Fire was then to be seen, only the Smoke.

All our Company lodged in the Tents here, but I and my Patron the *Spaniard*, who lodged within the *Chilian's* House, as I told you: This *Chilian* was a great Man among the Natives, and all the Valley I spoke of, which lay round his Dwelling, was called his own; he lived in a State of perfect Tranquility,  
neither

neither enjoying nor coveting any thing but what was necessary, and wanting nothing that was so; he had Gold, as it might be said, for picking it up off of the Dunghil, for it was found in all the little Gullies and Rills of Water, which, as I have said, come down from the Mountains on every Side; yet I did not find, that he troubled himself to lay up any great Quantity more than serv'd to go to *Villa Rica*, and buy what he wanted for himself and Family; he had, it seems, a Wife, and some Daughters, but no Sons; these lived in a separate House, about a Furlong from this where he lived, and were kept there as a Family by themselves, and if he had had any Sons, they would have lived with him.

He did not offer to go with us any part of our Way, as the other had done; but, having entertained us with great Civility, took his Leave. I caus'd one of my Midship-men to make him a Present, when we came away, of a Piece of Black Bays, enough to make him a Cloak, as I did the other, and a Piece of Blue *English* Serge, enough to make him a Jerkin and Breeches, which he accepted as a great Bounty.

We set out again, though not very early in the Morning, having, as I said, sat up late, and drank freely, over Night, and we found, that after we had been gone to sleep, it had rained very hard, and though the Rain was over before we went out, yet the falling of the Water from the Hills, made such a confused Noise, and was eccho'd so backward  
and



and forward from all Sides, that it was like a strange Mixture of distant Thunder, and though we knew the Causes, yet it could not but be surprizing to us for a while.

However, we set forward, the Way under Foot being pretty good; and first we went up the Steps again, by which we had come down (our last Host waiting on us thither) and there I gave him back his Gun, for he would not take it before.

In this Valley, which was the pleasantest by Day, and the most dismal by Night, that ever I saw, I observed abundance of Goats, as well tame in the Inclosures, as wild upon the Rocks; and we found afterwards, that the last were perfectly wild, and to be had, like those at *Juan Fernandes*, by any body that could catch them; my Patron sent off Two of his Men, just as a Huntsman casts off his Hounds, to go and catch Goats, and they brought us in Three, which they shot in less than Half an Hour, and these we carried with us for our Evening Supply, for we made no Dinner this Day, having fed heartily in the Morning about Nine, and had Chocolate Two Hours before that.

We travelled now along the narrow, winding Passage, which I mentioned before, for about Four Hours, 'till I found, that though we had ascended but gently, yet, that, as we had done so for almost Twenty Miles together, we were got up to a frightful Height, and I began to expect some very difficult Descent on the other Side; But we were made easy about Two a Clock, when the Way not only declined

declined again to the *East*, but grew wider, though with frequent Turnings and Winding about, so that we could seldom see above Half a Mile before us: We went on thus pretty much upon a Level, now rising, now falling; but still I found that we were a very great Height from our first Entrance, and as to the running of the Water, I found that it flow'd neither *East* nor *West*, but run all down the little Turnings that we frequently met with on the *North* Side of our Way, which, my Patron told me, went all into the great Valley where we saw the Fire, and so went away by a general Channel *North West* 'till it found its Way out into the open Country of *Chili*, and so to the *South-Seas*.

We were now come to another Night's Lodging, which we were obliged to take up with on the green Grass, as we did the First Night; but by the Help of our Proveditor-General, my Patron, we fared very well, our Goats-Flesh being reduced into so many Sorts of Venison, that none of us could distinguish it from the best Venison we ever tasted.

Here we slept without any of the frightful Things we saw the Night before, except, that we might see the Light of the Fire in the Air, at a great Distance, like a great City on Fire, but that gave us no Disturbance at all.

In the Morning our Two Hunters shot a Deer, or rather a young Fawn, before we were awake, and this was the first we met with in this Part of our Travel, and thus we were provided for Dinner even before Breakfast-

Breakfast-time; as for our Breakfast, it was always a *Spanish* Breakfast, that is to say, About a Pint of Chocolate.

We set out very merrily in the Morning, and we that were *Englishmen*, could not refrain smiling at one another, to think how we pass'd through a Country where the Gold lay in every Ditch, as we might call it, and never troubled ourselves so much as to stoop to take it up; so certain is it, that 'tis easy to be placed in a Station of Life, where that very Gold (the heaping up of which, is here made the main Business of Man's living in the World) would be of no Value, and not worth taking off from the Ground; nay, not of Signification enough to make a Present of, for that was the Case here. Two or Three Yards of *Colchester* Bays, a coarse Rug-like Manufacture, worth in *London*, about Fifteen-Pence Half-penny *per* Yard, was here a Present for a Man of Quality, when for a Handful of Gold-Dust, the same Person would scarce say, Thank-you; or, perhaps, would think himself not kindly treated to have it offered him.

We travelled this Day pretty smartly, having rested at Noon about Two Hours, as before, and, by my Calculation, went about Twenty-two *English* Miles in all; about Five a Clock in the Afternoon, we came into a broad, plain, open Place, where, though it was not properly a Valley, yet we found it lay very level for a good way together. Our Way lying almost *E. S. E.* after we had marched so about Two Miles, I found the Way

go evidently down Hill, and in Half a Mile more, to our singular Satisfaction, we found the Water from the Mountains ran plainly *Eastward*, and, consequently, to the *North Sea*.

We saw, at a Distance, several Huts, or Houses of the *Mountainier* Inhabitants, but we came near none of them, but kept on our Way, going down Two or Three pretty steep Places, not at all dangerous, though something difficult.

We encamped again the next Night, as before, and still our good Caterer had Plenty of Food for us; But I observed, That the next Morning, when we set forward, our Tents were left standing, the Baggage-Mules tied together to graze, and our Company lessened by all my Patrons Servants, which, when I enquired about, he told me, He hoped we should have good Quarters quickly without them. I did not understand him for the present, but it unriddled itself soon after; for though we travelled Four Days more in that Narrow Way, yet he always found us Lodging at the Cottages of the Mountainiers. The Sixth Day we went all Day up Hill; at last, on a sudden, the Way turn'd short *East*, and opened into a vast wide Country, boundless to the Eye every way, and delivered us intirely from the Mountains of the *Andes*, in which we had wandred so long.

Any one may guess what an agreeable Surprise this was to us, to whom it was the main End of our Travels. We made no Question that this was the open Country extended to  
the



the *North*, or *Atlantick* Ocean, but how far it was thither, or what Inhabitants it was possessed by, what Travelling, what Provisions to be found by the Way, what Rivers to pass, and whether any navigable or not; this our Patron himself could not tell us one Word of; owning frankly to us, That he had never been one Step farther than the Place where we then stood; and that he had been there only once to satisfy his Curiosity, as I did now.

I told him, That if I had lived where he did, and had had Servants and Provisions at Command, as he had, it would have been impossible for me to have restrained my Curiosity so far, as not to have search'd through that whole Country to the Sea-Side long ago: I told him, It seemed to be a pleasant and fruitful Soil, and, no doubt, was capable of Cultivations and Improvements; and if it had been only to have possessed such a Country in his *Catholick* Majesty's Name, it must have been worth while to undertake the Discovery for the Honour of *Spain*; and that there could be no Room to question, but his *Catholick* Majesty would have honoured him that should have undertaken such a Thing, with some particular Mark of his Favour, which might be of Consequence to him and his Family.

He told me, That as to that, the *Spaniards* seemed already to have more Dominions in *America*, than they could keep, and much more than they were able to reap the Benefit of, and still more infinitely than they could improve,

improve, and especially in those Parts called *South America*.

That it was next to miraculous, that they could keep the Possession where they were, and were not the *Natives* so utterly destitute of Support from any other Part of the World, as not to be able to have either Arms or Ammunition put into their Hands, it would be impossible, since, I might easily see, they were Men that wanted not Strength of Body, or Courage; and it was evident, they did not want Numbers, seeing they were already Ten thousand *Natives* to one *Spaniard*, taking the whole Country from one End to the other.

He went on, Then you see, Seignior, says he, how far we are from Improvement in that Part of the Country which we possess, and many more which, you may be sure, are among these vast Mountains, and which we never discovered, seeing all these Valleys and Passages among the Mountains, where Gold is to be had in such Quantities, and with so much Ease, that every poor *Chilian* gathers it up with his Hands, and may have as much as he pleases, are all left open, naked, and unregarded, in the Possession of the wild Mountainiers, who are Heathens and Savages; and the *Spaniards* you see, says he, are so few, and these few so indolent, so slothful, and so satisfied with the Gold they get of the *Chilians* for Things of small Value in Trade, that all this vast Treasure lies unregarded by them. Nay, adds he, Is it not very odd to observe, That when for our Diversion we come out into the Hills,  
and

and among these Places where you see the Gold is so easily found, we come, as we call it, a Hunting, and divert ourselves more with shooting wild Parrots, or a Fawn or two, for which also, we ride, and run, and make our Servants weary themselves more than they would in fishing up the Gold among the Gullies and Holes that the Water makes in the Rocks, and more than would suffice to find Fifty, nay, One hundred times the Value in Gold?

To what Purpose then should we seek the Possession of more Countries, who are already possess'd of more Land than we can improve, and of more Wealth than we know what to do with? Perceiving me very attentive, he went on thus.

Were these Mountains, *said he*, valued in *Europe*, according to the Riches to be found in them, the Viceroy would obtain Orders from the King, to have strong Forts erected at the Entrance in, and at the Coming out of them, as well on the Side of *Chili*, as here; and strong Garrisons maintained in them, to prevent foreign Nations landing, either on our Side in *Chili*, or on this Side in the *North Seas*, and taking the Possession from us; he would then order Thirty thousand Slaves, Negroes, or *Chilians*, to be constantly employed, not only in picking up what Gold might be found in the Channels of the Water, which might easily be formed into proper Receivers, so as that if any Gold washed from the Rocks, it should soon be found, and be so secured, as that none of it would escape;  
also

also others, with Miners and Engineers, might search into the very Rocks themselves, and would, no doubt, find out such Mines of Gold, or other secret Stores of it in those Mountains, as would be sufficient to enrich the World.

While we omit such Things as these, Seignior, *says he*, what signifies *Spain* making new Acquisitions, or the People of *Spain* seeking new Countries? This vast Tract of Land you see here, and some Hundreds of Miles every Way, which your Eye cannot reach to, is a fruitful, pleasant, and agreeable Piece of God's Creation; but perfectly uncultivated, and most of it uninhabited; and any Nation in *Europe*, that thinks fit to settle in it, are free to do so, for any thing we are able to do to prevent them.

But, Seignior, said I, does not his *Catholic* Majesty claim a Title to the Possession of it? And have the *Spaniards* no Governor over it? nor any Ports or Towns, Settlements or Colonies in it, as is the Case here in *Chili*? Seignior, replies he, The King of *Spain* is Lord of all *America*; as well that which he possesses, as that which he possesses not; that Right being given him by the Pope, in the Right of his being a Christian Prince, making new Discoveries for propagating the Christian Faith among Infidels: How far that may pass for a Title among the *European* Powers, I know not. I have heard, that it has always passed for a Maxim in *Europe*, that no Country, which is not planted by any Prince or People, can be said to belong



to them; and, indeed, I cannot say, but it seems to be rational, that no Prince should pretend to any Title to a Country where he does not think fit to Plant, and to keep Possession; for if he leaves the Country unpossessed, he leaves it free for any other Nation to come and possess; and this is the Reason why the former King of *Spain* did not dispute that Right of the *French*, to their Colonies of *Mississipi* and *Canada*; or the Right of the *English* to the *Carribee* Islands, or to their Colonies of *Virginia* and *New-England*.

In like manner from the *Buenos Ayres*, in the *Rio de la Plata*, which lies that Way, says he (pointing N. E.) to the *Fretum Magellanicum*, which lies that Way (pointing S. E.) which comprehends a vast Number of Leagues, is called by us, *Coasta Deserta*, being unpossessed by *Spain*, and disregarded of all our Nation: Neither is there one *Spaniard* in it; nevertheless, you see how fruitful, how pleasant, and how agreeable a Climate it is; how apt for Planting and Peopling it seems to be; and, above all, what a Place of Wealth here would be behind them, sufficient, and more than enough, both for them and us; for we should have no Reason to offer them any Disturbance; neither should we be in any Condition to do it, the Passages of the Mountains being but few and difficult, as you have seen, and our Numbers not sufficient to do any thing more than to block them up, to keep such People from breaking in upon our Settlements on the Coast of the *South-Seas*.

I asked

I asked him, If these Notions of his were common among those of his Country, who were settled in *Chili* and *Peru*? Or, Whether they were his own Private Opinions only? I told him, I believed, the latter, because I found he acted in all his Affairs upon generous Principles, and was for propagating the Good of Mankind; but that I questioned whether their Governor of *Old-Spain*, or the Sub-Governor, and Viceroy of *New-Spain*, acted upon those Notions or no; and since he had mentioned the *Buenos Ayres*, and the *Rio de la Plata*, I should take that as an Example, seeing the *Spaniards* would never suffer any Nation to set Foot in that great River, where so many Countries might have been discovered, and Colonies planted; though at the same Time, they had not possessed, or fully discovered those Places themselves.

He answered me, smiling, Seignior, says he, You have given the Reason for this yourself in that very Part which you think is a Reason against it. We have a Colony at *Buenos Ayres*, and at the City of *Ascension*, higher up in the *Rio de la Plata*; and we are not willing to let any other Nation settle there, because we would not let them see how weak we are, and what a vast Extent of Land we possess there with a few Men: And this for Two Reasons.

First, We are possessed of the Country, and daily increasing there, and may, in Time, extend ourselves farther. The great Rivers *Parano*, and *Paraguay*, being yet left for us to plant in, and we are not willing to put

ourselves out of a Capacity of planting farther, and therefore we keep the Possession.

*Secondly*, We have a Communication from thence with *Peru*. That great River *La Plata* rises at the City *La Plata*, and out of the Mountain *Potosi* in *Peru*, and a great Trade is carried on by that River; and it would be dangerous to let Foreigners into the Secret of that Trade, which they might intirely cut off; especially when they should find that small Number of *Spaniards* which are planted there to preserve it, seeing there are not Six hundred *Spaniards* in all that vast Country, which, by the Course of that River, is more than One thousand Six hundred Miles in Length.

I confess, said I, these are just Grounds for your keeping the Possession of that River. They are so, said he, and the more, because of so powerful a Colony as the *Portuguese* have in the *Brasils*, which bound immediately upon it, and who are always incroaching upon it from the Land Side, and would gladly have a Passage up the *Rio Parana* to the Back of their Colony.

But here, Seignior, says he, the Case differs; For we neither take nor keep Possession here; neither have we one *Spaniard*, as I said, in the whole Country now before you; and therefore we call this Country *Coasta Deserta*; not that it is a Defart, as that Name is generally taken to signify a barren, sandy, dry Country; on the contrary, The infinite, prodigious Encrease of the *European* black Cattle, which were brought by the *Spaniards* to the

*Buenos*

*Buenos Ayres*, and let run loose, is a sufficient Testimony of the Fruitfulness and Richness of the Soil, their Number being such, that they kill above Twenty thousand of them in a Year, for nothing but the Hides, which they carry away to *Spain*, leaving the Flesh, though fat and wholesome, to perish on the Ground, or be devoured by Birds of Prey.

And the Number is so great, notwithstanding all they destroy, that they are found to wander sometimes in Drovers of many Thousands together, over all the vast Country between the *Rio de la Plata*, the City of *Ascension*, and the Frontier of *Peru*, and even down into this Country which you see before us, and up to to the very Foot of these Mountains.

Well, said I, and is it not a great Pity, that all this Part of the Country, and in such a Climate as this is, should lie uncultivated, or uninhabited rather? for I understand there are not any great Numbers of People to be found among them.

It is true, added he, there are some Notions of People spread about in this Country; but as the Terror of our People, the *Spaniards*, drove them, at first, from the Sea Coast towards these Mountains, so the greatest Part of them continue on this Side still; for towards the Coast it is very rare that they find any People.

I would have enquired of him about Rivers, and Navigable Streams, which might be in this Country; but he told me frankly, That he could give me no Account of that; only



thus, That if any of the Rivers went away towards the *North*, they certainly run all into the great *Rio de la Plata*; but that if they went *East*, or *Southerly*, they must go directly to the Coast, which was ordinarily called, as he said, *La Costa Deserta*, or, as by some, *The Coast of Palagonia*; That as to the Magnitude of those Rivers, he could say little, but that it could not be rational, but there must be some very considerable Rivers, and whose Streams must needs be capable of Navigation, seeing abundance of Water must continually flow from the Mountains where we then were; and its being, at least, Four hundred Miles from the Sea Side, those small Streams must necessarily joyn together, and make large Rivers in the plain Country.

I had enough in this Discourse, fully to satisfy all my Curiosity, and sufficiently to heighten my Desire of making the farther Discoveries which I had in my Thoughts.

We pitch'd our little Camp here, and set down to our Repast; for I found, that tho' we were to go back to lodge, yet my Patron had taken care we should be furnished sufficiently for Dinner, and have a good House to eat it in; that is to say, a Tent, as before.

The Place where we stood, though we had come down Hill for a great way, yet seemed very high from the ordinary Surface of the Country, and gave us, therefore, an exceeding fine Prospect of it, the Country declining gradually for near Ten Miles; and we thought, as well as the Distance of the Place  
would

would allow us, we saw a great River, but, as I learned afterwards, it was rather a great Lake, than a River, which was supplied by the smaller Rivers, or Rivulets, from the Mountains, which met there as in a great Receptacle of Waters, and out of this Lake, they all issued again in one River; of which I shall have Occasion to give a farther Account hereafter.

While we were at Dinner, I ordered my Midship-men to take their Observations of every distant Object, and to look at every thing with their Glasses; which they did, and told me of this Lake; but my Patron could give no Account of it, having never been, as he said before, one Step farther that Way, than where we were. However, my Men shewed me plainly, that it was a great Lake, and that there went a large River from it towards the *E. S. E.* and this was enough for me, for that Way lay all the Schemes I had laid.

I took this Opportunity to ask my Midship-men first, If they had taken such Observations in their Passage of the Mountains, as that they were sure they could find their Way through to this Place again without Guides? They assured me they could.

Then I put it to them, Whether they thought it might not be feazible to travel over that vast level Country to the *North Seas*? And to make a sufficient Discovery of the Country, so as that hereafter *Englishmen* coming to the Coast on that Side of the *North Seas*, might penetrate to these Golden-

Mountains, and reap the Benefit of the Treasure without going a prodigious Length about *Cape Horn*, and the *Terra del Fuego*, which was always attended with innumerable Dangers; and without breaking through the Kingdom of *Chili*, and the *Spaniards* Settlements, which, perhaps, we might soon be at Peace with, and so be shut out that way by our own Consents?

One of my Men began to speak of the Difficulties of such an Attempt; The Want of Provisions, and other Dangers which we should be exposed to on the Way; but the other, a bold, brisk Fellow, told me, He made no Question, but it might be easily done, and especially because all the Rivers they should meet with would, of course, run along with us, so that we should be sure to have the Tide with us, *as he called it*; And at last he added, That he would be content to be one of those Men who should undertake it, provided he should be assured, that the Ships would not go away, and pretend that they could not be found. I told him, We would talk farther about it; That I had such a Thing in my Head, and I had a strong Inclination to undertake it myself; but that I could not answer it to leave the Ships, which depended so much upon my Care of the Voyage.

After some Talk of the Reasonableness of such an Undertaking, and the Methods of performing it, my Second Midship man began to come into it, and to think it was practicable enough, and added, That though he  
used

used some Cautions in his first hearing Proposals, yet, if he undertook that Enterprize, I should find, that he would do as much of his Duty in it, as another Man; and so he did at last, as will appear in its Place.

We were, by this Time, preparing to be satisfied with our Journey, and my Patron coming to me, and asking, If I was for returning? I told him, I could not say how many Days it would be before I should say, I had enough of that Prospect; but that I would return when he pleased; only I had one Question to ask him, which was, Whether the Mountains were as full of Gold on this Side, as they were on the Side of *Chili*?

As to that, *Seignior*, says he, the best Way to be certain, is to make a Tryal, that you may be sure we do not speak without Book; so he called his Gentleman, and another Servant that was with him, and desired me to call my Two Midship-men, and speaking something to his own Servants first, in the Language of the Country, as I suppose, he turned to me, and said, Come, let us sit down and repose ourselves, and let them go all together, and see what they can do.

Accordingly they went away, and, as my Men told me afterwards, they search'd in the small Streams of Water, which they found running, and in some larger Gullies or Channels, where they found little or no Water running; but where, upon hasty Rains, great Shoots of Water had been used to run, and where Water stood still in the Holes and Falls,



Falls, as I have described once before on the like Occasion.

They had not been gone above an Hour, when I plainly heard my Two *Englishmen* Hollow, which I could easily distinguish from the Voices of any other Nation, and immediately I ran out of the Tent, Captain *Merlote* followed, and I then saw one of my Midship-men running towards us, so we went to meet him, and what with hollowing, and running, he could hardly speak; but recovering his Breath, said, He came to desire me to come to them, if I would see a Sight which I never saw in my Life. I was eager enough to go, so I went with him, and left Captain *Merlote* to go back to the Tent to my Patron the *Spaniard*, and the *Spanish Doctor*, who had not so much Share in the Curiosity: He did so, and they followed fair and softly.

When we came to the Place, we saw such a Sight, indeed, as I never saw before; for there they were sitting down round a little Puddle, or Hole, as I might call it, of Water, where, in the Time of Rain, the Water running hastily from a Piece of the Rock, about Two Foot higher than the rest, had made a Pit under it with the Fall like the Tail of a Mill, only much less.

Here they took up the Sand, or Gravel, with their Hands, and every Handful brought up with it such a Quantity of Gold, as was surprizing; for there they sat picking it out just as the Boys in *London*, that go with a Broom and a Hat, pick out old Iron, Nails,

Nails, and Pins out of the Channels, and it lay as thick.

I stood and looked at them a while, and, it must be confessed, it was a pleasant Sight enough; But reflecting immediately, that there was no End of this, and that we were only upon the Enquiry, Come away, says I, laughing, to my Men, and do not stand picking up of Trash there all Day: Do you know how far we have to our Lodging?

I can make no guess what Quantity might have been found here in Places, which had, for Hundreds of Years, washed Gold from the Hills, and, perhaps, never had a Man come to pick any of it up before; But I was soon satisfied that here was enough, even to make all the World say they had enough; and so I called off my People, and came away.

It seems, the Quantity of Gold which is thus washed down, is not small, since my Men, enquiring afterwards among the *Chilians*, heard them talk of the great Lake of Water which I mentioned just now that we saw at a Distance, which they call *The Golden-Lake*, and where was, as they said, prodigious Quantities of it; not that our Men supposed any Gold was there in Mines, or in the ordinary Soil, but that the Waters from the Hills, running with very rapid Currents at certain Times in the rainy Seasons, and after the melting of the Snows, had carried the Gold so far as that Lake; and as it has been so, perhaps, from the Days of the General Deluge, no People ever applying themselves to gather the least Grain of it up  
again,

again, it might well be increased to such a Quantity, as might intitle that Water to the Name of *The Golden-Lake*, and all the little Streams and Sluices of Water that run into it, deserved the Name of *Golden-Rivers*, as much as that of *The Golden-Lake*.

But my Business was to know, If the Gold was here, not to trouble myself to pick it up: My Views lay another way, and my End was fully answered; so I came back to my Patron, and brought all my Men with me; You live in a Golden Country, *Seignior*, says I, my Men are stark mad to see so much Gold, and no-body to pick it up: Should the World know what Treasure you have here, I would not answer for it, that they should not flock hither in Armies, and drive you all away. They need not do that, *Seignior*, says he, for here is enough for them, and for us too.

We now packed up, and began our Return, but it was not without Regret that I turned my Back upon this pleasant Country, the most agreeable Place, of its kind, that ever I was at in all my Life, or ever shall be in again: A Country rich, pleasant, fruitful, wholesome, and capable of every thing for the Life of Man, that the Heart could entertain a Wish for.

But my present Work was to return; so we mounted our Mules, and had, in the mean Time, the Pleasure of contemplating what we had seen, and applying ourselves to such farther Measures as we had concerted among us. In about Four Hours we returned to our  
Camp,

Camp, as I called it, and, by the way, we found, to our no little Pain, that though we had come down Hill easily, and insensibly to the Opening, for some Miles, yet we had a hard pull up Hill to go back again: However, we reached to our Tents in good Time, and made our First Encampment with Pleasure enough, for we were very weary with the Fatigue of a hard Day's Journey.

The next Day we reached our good *Cbilian's* Mansion House, or Palace, for such it might be called, considering the Place, and considering the Entertainment; for now he had some Time to provide for us, knowing we would come back again.

He met us with Three Mules, and Two Servants, about a Mile before we came to the Descent going down to his House, of which I took Notice before, and this he did to guide us a Way round to his House, without going down those uneasy Steps; so we came on our Mules to his Door, that is to say, On his Mules, for he would have my Patron the *Spaniard*, to whom, I observed, he shewed an extraordinary Respect, and Captain *Merlote*, and myself, mount his fresh Mules to carry us to his House.

When we came thither, I observed he wanted the Assistance of my Patron's Servants for his Cookery; for though he had provided abundance of Food, he owned, he knew not how to prepare it to our Liking; so they assisted him, and one of my Midshipmen pretending to cook too, made them roast a Piece of Venison, and a Piece of a Kid, or young Goat,



Goat, admirable well, and putting no Garlick or Onions into the Sauce, but their own Juices, with a little Wine, it pleased the *Spaniard* so well, that my Man passed for an extraordinary Cook, and had the Favour asked of him, to dress some more after the same Manner, when we came back to the *Spaniard's* House.

We had here several Sorts of wild Fowl, which the *Chilian* had shot while we were gone, but I knew none of them by any of the Kinds we have in *England*, except some *Teal*. However, they were very good.

The Day was very agreeable and pleasant here; but the Night dreadful, as before, being all Fire and Flame again, and though we understood both what it was, and where, yet I could not make it familiar to me, for my Life. The *Chilian* persuaded us to stay all the next Day, and did his Endeavour to divert us as much as possible: My Two Midship-men went out with him a Hunting, as he called it, that is, a Shooting; but, tho' he was a Man of Fifty Years of Age, he would have killed Ten of them at his Sport, running up the Hills, and leaping from Rock to Rock like a Boy of Seventeen. At his Gun he was so sure a Marksman, that he seldom missed any thing he shot at, whether running, flying, or sitting.

They brought home with them several Fowls, Two Fawns, and full grown Deer, and we had nothing but boiling, stewing, and broiling, all that Evening: In the Afternoon, we walked out to view the Hills, and

to

to see the stupendous Precipices which surrounded us. As for looking for Gold, we saw the Places where there was enough to be had; but that was become now so familiar to us, that we troubled not ourselves about it, as a Thing not much worth while; but our Two Midship-men, I think, got about the Quantity of Five or Six Ounces a-piece while we were chatting, or reposing in the *Chilian's* House.

Here it was, that I entred into a Confidence with my Patron the *Spaniard*, concerning my Grand Design. I told him, in the first Place, That my View of the Open Country beyond these Hills, and the particular Account he had given me of it also, had raised a Curiosity in me, that I could scarce withstand; and that I had thereupon form'd a Design, which, if he would further me with his Assistance, I had a very great Mind to put in Practice, and that, though I was to perish in the Attempt.

He told me very readily, Nothing should be wanting on his Part to give me any Assistance he could, either by himself, or any of his Servants; but, smiling, and with abundance of good Humour, *Seignior, says he, I believe I guess at the Design you speak of; you are fired now with a Desire to traverse this great Country to the Coasta Deserta, and the North-Seas; That is a very great Undertaking, and you will be well advised before you undertake it.*

Truly,

Truly, Seignior, said I, you have guessed my Design, and were it not, that I have Two Ships under my Care, and some Cargo of Value on Board, I would bring my whole Ship's Company on Shore, and make the Adventure, and, perhaps, we might be strong enough to defend ourselves against whatever might happen by the Way.

As to that, Seignior, says he, you would be in no Danger that would require so many Men; for you will find but few Inhabitants any where, and those not in Numbers sufficient to give you any Trouble; Fifty Men would be as many as you would either want or desire, and, perhaps, as you would find Provisions for; and, for Fifty Men, we might be able to carry Provisions with us to keep them from Distress; but if you will accept of my Advice, as well as Assistance, Seignior, says he, choose a faithful strong Fellow out of your Ship, on whom you can depend, and give him Fifty Men with him, or thereabouts, and such Instructions as you may find needful, as to the Place on the Coast where you would have them fix their Stay, and let them take the first Hazards of the Adventure; and as you are going round by Sea, you will, if Success follows, meet them on the Shore; and if the Account they give of their Journey encourage you, you may come afterwards yourself up to these very Mountains, and take a farther View: In which Case, he added, with a solemn Protestation, Cost what it will, I will come and meet you One hundred Miles beyond the Hills,

Hills, with Supplies of Provisions, and Mules for your Assistance.

This was such wholesome and friendly Advice, and he offer'd it so sincerely, that tho' it was very little differing from my own Design, yet I would not be seen so to lessen his Prudence in the Measures of his Friendship, in advising it, as to say, That I had resolv'd to do so. But, making all possible Acknowledgment to him for his kind Offers, I told him, I would take his Advice, and that I would act just according to the Measures he had prescrib'd; and at the same time, I assur'd him, That if I found a convenient Port to Settle and Fortify in, I would not fail to come again from France (*for we pass'd always as acting from France, whatever Nation we were of*) to Relieve and Supply them; and that if ever I returned safe, I would not fail to Correspond with him, by the Passages of the Mountains, and make a better Acknowledgment for his Kindness, than I had been able to do yet.

He was going to break off the Discourse, upon the Occasion of the *Chilian's* returning, who was just come in from his Hunting, telling me, We would talk farther of it by the Way; But I told him, I could not quite dismiss the Subject; because I must bespeak him to make some mention of it to the *Chilian*, that he might, on his Account, be an Assistant to our Men, as we saw he was capable of being, in their passing by those difficult Ways, and for their Supply of Provision, &c.

*Trouble not your self with that, Seignior,* said



he, for when your Men come, the Care shall be mine: I'll come myself as far as this Wealthy Chilian's, and procure them all the Assistance this Place can afford them, and do any thing that offers, to forward them in the Undertaking.

This was so Generous, and so Extraordinary, that I had nothing to say more, but to please myself with the apparent Success of my Attempt, and acknowledge the Happiness of having an Opportunity to oblige so generous a Spirited and grateful a Person.

I would, however, have made some farther Acknowledgment to our *Chilian* Benefactor; but I had nothing left, except a Couple of Hats, and Three Pair of *English* Stockings, One Pair Silk and the other Two Worsted, and those I gave him, and made him a great many Acknowledgments for the Favours he had shewn us, and the next Morning came away.

We made little Stay any where else in our Return; but making much such Stages back as we did forward, we came the Fourteenth Day to our Patron's House, having made the Passage through in something less than Sixteen Days, and the like back in Fifteen Days, including our stay at the *Chilian's* one Day. The Length of the Way, according to the best of my Calculations, I reckon'd to be about One Hundred Seventy Five *English* Miles, taking it with all its Windings and Turnings, which were not a few; but which had this Conveniency with them, That they gave a more easy and agreeable Passage, and made the *English* Proverb abundantly

dantly good, namely, *That the farthest Way was the nearest Way.*

The Civilities I received after this from my Generous *Spaniard*, were agreeable to the rest of his Usage of me; but we, that had so great a Charge upon us at the Sea-side, could not spare long Time in those Ceremonies, any more than I can do now for relating them. It is enough to mention, That he would not be excus'd at parting, from going back with us quite to the Ships, and when I would have excus'd it, he said, *Nay, Seignior*, give me leave to go and fetch my Hostages. In short, there was no resisting him, so we went all together, having stay'd Two Days more at his House, and came all safe to our Ships, having been gone Forty Six Days from them.

We found the Ships in very good Condition, all safe on Board and well, except that the Men seem'd to have contracted something of the Scurvy; which our *Spanish* Doctor, however, soon recovered them of.

Here we found the Two *Spanish* Youths, our Patron's Hostages, very well also, and very well pleased with their Entertainment: One of our Lieutenants had been teaching them Navigation, and something of the *Mathematicks*, and they had made very good Improvement in those Things, considering the Time they had been there; and the *Spaniard*, their Father, was so pleased with it, that having not Gold enough to offer the Lieutenant, as an Acknowledgment for his Teaching them, he gave him a very good Ring

from his Finger, having a fine large Emerald in it of good Value, and made him a long *Spanish* Compliment, for having nothing of better Value to offer him.

We now made Preparations for Sailing, and our Men, in my Absence, had laid in a very considerable Supply of Provisions, particularly excellent Pork, and pretty tolerable Beef, and a great Number of Goats and Hogs alive, as many as we could stow.

But I had now my main Undertaking to manage, I mean that of sending out my little Army for Discovery, and having communicated my Design to the Supra Cargo, and the Person who I intrusted with him in the Command of the Ships, they unanimously approv'd of the Thing. My next Business was, To resolve upon whom to confer the Command of the Expedition; and this, by general Consent, fell upon the Lieutenant of the *Madagascar* Ship, who had taught the young *Spaniards* Navigation; and this the rather, because he was naturally a bold, enterprizing Man, and also an excellent Geographer: Indeed he was a general Artist, and a Man faithful and vigilant in whatever he undertook, nor was it a little Consideration with me, that he was so agreeable to the *Spaniard* and his Sons, of whose Aid we knew he would stand in so much need.

When I had communicated to him the Design, and he had both approv'd the Thing itself, and accepted the Command, we constituted him Captain, and the Two Midshipmen we made Lieutenants for the Expedition,  
pro-

promising each of them Five Hundred Pounds if they perform'd it : As for the Captain, we came to a good Agreement with him for his Reward ; for I engaged to give him One Thousand Pounds in Gold as soon as we met, if the Journey was perform'd effectually.

We then laid open the Undertaking to the Men, and left it to every one's Choice to go, or not to go, as they pleas'd ; but instead of wanting Men to go Voluntier, we were fain to decide it by Lot, among some of them, they were all so eager to undertake it.

Then I gave them Articles and Conditions, which they, who ventur'd, should engage themselves to comply with, and particularly, That they should not Mutiny, upon Pain of being Shot to Death when we met, or upon the Spot, if the Captain thought it necessary ; That they should not straggle from their Company, nor be tempted by the View of picking up Gold, to stay behind, when the Company beat to March ; That all the Gold they found in the Way, should be in common, should be put together in Bulk every Night, and be divided faithfully and equally at the End of the Journey, allowing only Five Shares to each Ship, to be divided as I should direct ; besides which, upon Condition, That every Man behav'd himself faithfully and quietly, and did their Duty, I promised, That besides the Gold they might get by the Way, I would give them every Man One Hundred Pounds at our Meeting ; and if any Man was Sick or Maimed by the Way, they were to engage not to forsake and leave him on



any Account whatsoever, Death only excepted; and if any Man died, except by any Violence from the rest, his Share of the Gold which was gotten, should be faithfully kept for his Family, if he had any; but his Reward of One Hundred Pounds, which was not due, because he did not live to demand it, should be divided among the rest: So that by this Agreement, the Undertaking was not so dear to me as I had expected; for the Pay of the Men amounted to no more than the Sum following, *viz.*

	/.
To the Lieut. now made Captain	1000
To the Midship-men, now made } Lieutenants, each 500 /. - - }	1000
To Fifty Men, each 100 /.	5000
To the Surgeon 200 /. and his } Servant 100 /. over and above } their 100 /. as being part of } the Fifty Men - - - - - }	300
	<hr/> 7300 <hr/>

Having pitch'd upon the Men, I landed them, and made them Encamp on Shore: But first of all, I made them, every one, make Wills or Letters of Attorney, or other Dispositions of their Effects, to such Persons as they thought fit, with an Account under their Hands, Endors'd on the Back of the said Wills, &c. intimating what Chests or

or Cases, or other Things they had on Board, and what was in them, and what Pay was due to them; and those Chests, &c. were Sealed up before their Faces with my Seal, and Writings Sign'd by me, the Contents unknown: Thus they were secure, that all they had left in the Ships, and all that was due to them, should be punctually and carefully kept, and delivered as it was design'd and directed by themselves; and this was greatly to their Satisfaction.

As to the Reward of One Hundred Pounds a Man, and the Articles about keeping together, obeying Orders, gathering up Gold, and the like; I did not read to them 'till they were all on Shore, and 'till I was ready to leave them; because if the rest of the Men had heard it, I should have kept no Body with me to have sail'd the Ships.

There was as stout a Company of bold, young, brisk Fellows of them, as ever went upon any Expedition, Fifty Three in Number, among them a Surgeon, and his Mate, very skilful and honest Men both of them; a Trumpeter and a Drummer, Three Ship-Carpenters, a Cook, who was also a Butcher by Trade, and a Barber; Two Shoemakers, who had been Soldiers among the Pyrates; a Smith, and a Taylor of the same, so that they wanted no Mechanicks, whatever might happen to them.

Give the Fellows their Due, they took but little Baggage with them; but, however, what they had, I took Care, with the Assistance of my good Patron, the *Spaniard*,

should be as much carried for them as possible. I provided them Three large Tents, made of a Cotton Stuff, which I bought in the Country, and which we made up on Board, which Tents were large enough to cover them all, in case of Rain or Heat ; but as for Beds, or Bedding, they had only Seven Hammocks, in Case any Man was Sick ; for the rest, they were to shift as well as they could ; the Season was Hot, and the Climate good ; their Way lay in the Latitude of Forty to Fifty, and they set out in the latter end of the Month of *October*, which, on that Side of the Line, is the same as our *April* ; so that the Covering was more to keep them from the Heat than the Cold.

It was needful, in order to their Defence, to furnish them with Arms and Ammunition ; so I gave to every Man a Musquet or Fusee, a Pistol and a Sword, with Cartouches, and a good Stock of Ammunition, Powder and Shot, with Three small Barrels of fine Powder for Store, and Lead in proportion ; and these Things were, indeed, the heaviest Part of their Baggage, excepting the Carpenters Tools, and the Surgeons Box of Medicines.

As for the carrying all these Things, they might easily furnish themselves with Mules or Horses for Carriage, while they had Money to pay for them, and you may judge how that could be wanting, by what has been said of the Country.

We gave them, however, a good large Pack of *European* Goods, to make agreeable Presents where they received Favours ; such as  
Black

Black Bays, Pieces of Says, Serge, Calamanca, Drugget, Hats and Stockings; not forgetting another Pack of Hatchets, Knives, Sizzers, Beads, Toys, and such Things, to please the Natives of the Plain Country, if they should meet with any.

They desir'd a few Hand-Granadoes, and we gave them about a Dozen, but as they were heavy, it would have been very troublesome to have carried more.

The *Spaniard* stay'd 'till all this was done, and 'till the Men were ready to march, and then told us privately, That it would not be proper for him to march along with them, or to appear openly, to countenance the Enterprize; That my Two Lieutenants knew the Way perfectly well; and that he would go before to his own House, and they should hear of him by the Way.

All the Mules and Horses which he had lent us, to bring us back, he left with them to carry their Baggage, and our new Captain had bought Six more privately in the Country.

The last Instructions I gave to our Men, was, That they should make the best of their Way over the Country beyond the Mountains; That they should take the exact Distances of Places, and keep a Journal of their March, set up Crosses and Marks at all proper Places; and that they should steer their Course, as near as they could, between the Latitude of Forty, where they would enter the Country, and the Latitude of Forty Five *South*; so that they would go an *E. S. E.* Course most of the Way, and that where-ever they  
made



made the Shore, they should seek for a Creek or Port where the Ships might come to an Anchor, and look out Night and Day for the Ships; the Signals also were agreed on, and they had Two Dozen of Rockets to throw up, if they discovered us at Sea; they had all necessary Instruments for Observation also, and Perspective Glasses, Pocket Compasses, &c. and thus they set out, *October 24th, 1715.*

We stay'd Five Days after they began their March, by Agreement, That if any Opposition had been offer'd them in the Country, or any Umbrage taken at their Design, so that it could not be executed, we might have Notice. But as the *Spaniards* in the Country, who are the most supinely negligent People in the World, had not the least Shadow of Intelligence, and took them only to be *French* Seamen, belonging to the Two *French* Ships (such we past for) who had lain there so long, they knew nothing when they went away, much less whither; but, no question, they believ'd, that they were all gone on Board again.

We stay'd Three Days longer than we appointed, and hearing nothing amiss from them, we were satisfy'd that all was Right with them; so we put to Sea, standing off to the *West*, 'till we were out of Sight of the Shore, and then we stood away due *South*, with a fresh Gale at *N. W.* by *W.* and fair Weather, tho' the Wind chopped about soon after, and we had Calms and Hot Weather that did us no good, but made our Men Sick and Lazy.

The

The supposed Journey of our Travellers, their March, and the Adventures they should meet with by the Way, were, indeed, sufficient Diversion; and employ'd us all with Discourse, as well in the Great Cabbin and Round-House, as afore the Mast, and Wagers were very rife among us, who shou'd come first to the Shore of *Patagonia*, for so we call'd it.

As for the Place, neither they nor we could make any Guess at what part of the Country they should make the Sea; but as for us, we resolv'd to make the Port St. *Julian* our first Place to put in at, which is in the Latitude of Fifty Degrees Five Minutes, and that then, as Wind and Weather would permit, we would keep the Coast as near as we could, 'till we came to *Punta de St. Helena*, where we would Ride for some Time, and, if possible, 'till we heard of them.

We had but a cross Voyage to the Mouth of the Straights of *Magellan*, having contrary Winds, as I have said, and sometimes bad Weather; so that it was the Thirteenth of *December* when we made an Observation, and found Ourselves in the Latitude of Fifty Two Degrees Thirty Minutes, which is just the Height of *Cape Victoria*, at the Mouth of the Passage. Some of our Officers were very much for passing the Straights, and not going about by *Cape Horn*; but the Uncertainty of the Winds in the Passage, the Danger of the Currents, &c. made it by no Means advisable, so we resolv'd to keep good Sea-room.

The

The Twenty Fifth of *December*, we found Ourselves in the Latitude of Sixty two Degrees Thirty Minutes, and being *Christmas* Day, I feasted the Men, and drank the Health of our Travellers; our Course was *S. E.* by *S.* the Wind *S. W.* then we chang'd our Course and went away *E.* for Eight Days, and having made fresh Way, stood away, without Observation, *E. N. E.* and in Two Days more, made the Land, on the *East* of the Straight *de la Mare*, so that we were oblig'd to stand away *E. S. E.* to take more Sea-room, when the Wind veering to the *S.* by *E.* a fresh Gale, we stood boldly away due *North*, and running large, soon found that we were entred into the *North* Sea, on *Twelfth* Day; for Joy of which, and to Celebrate the Day, I gave every Mess a Piece of *English* Beef, and a Piece of *Chilian* Pork, and made a great Bowl of Punch afore the Mast, as well as in the Great Cabbin, which made our Men very chearful, and, instead of a *Twelfth*-Cake, I gave the Cook order to make every Mess a good Plumb-Pudding, which pleas'd them all as well.

But while we were at our Liquor, and merry, the Wind came about to the *N. E.* and blew very hard, threatening us with a Storm, and as the Shore lay on our Leeward Quarter, we were not without Apprehensions of being driven on some dangerous Places, and forced to ride upon Life and Death, where we could have no Shelter; I immediately therefore, alter'd my Course, and ran away *East* all Night, to have as much Sea-room as possible;

possible: The next Day the Wind abated, and haling away to the *East*, we stood *Northward* again, and then *N. W.* in Three Days more, and we made Land, which appear'd to be the Head Island of Port St. *Julian*, on the *North* Side of the Port where we run in, and about an Hour before Sun-set, came to an Anchor in Eleven Fathom good holding Ground, Latitude Forty Nine Degrees Eighteen Minutes.

We wanted fresh Water, otherwise we would not have made any stay here at all, for we knew we were a little too far to the *South*; however, we were oblig'd to fill fresh Water here for Three Days together, the watering Place being a good way up the River, and the Swell of the Sea running very high.

During this Interval, Captain *Merlote* and I went on Shore with about Thirty Men, and march'd up the Country near Twenty Miles, getting up to the Top of the Hills, where we made Fires, and at the farthest Hill we Encamped all Night, and threw up Five Rockets, which was our Signal; but we saw nothing to answer it, nor any Sign, either of *English* People or Natives, in all the Country.

We saw a Noble Champian Country, the Plains all smooth, and cover'd with Grass like *Salisbury* Plain, very little Wood to be seen any where, insomuch, that we could not get any thing but Grass to make a Smoke with, which was another of our Signals. We shot some Fowls here, and Five or Six Hares; the Hares are as large as an *English* Fox,



Fox, and Burrow in the Earth like a Rabbet : The Fowls we shot, were Duck and Mallard, Teal and Widgeon, the same as in *England* in Shape and Size, only the Colour generally Grey, with White in the Breast, and Green Heads, the Flesh the same as ours, and very good.

We saw Wild Geese and Wild Swans, but shot none ; we saw, also, Guinacoes or *Peruvian* Sheep, as big as small Mules, but could not come at them neither ; for as soon as we stepp'd towards them, they would call to one another, to give Notice of us, and then troop all together, and be gone.

This is an excellent Country for Feeding and Breeding of Sheep and Horses, the Grass being short, but very sweet and good on the Plains, and very long and rich near the fresh Rivers, and were it Cultivated and Stock'd with Cattle, would, without doubt, produce excellent Kinds of all Sorts of Cattle ; nor could it fail of producing excellent Corn, as well Wheat as Barley and Oats ; and as for Peas, they grow Wild all over the Country, and nourish an infinite Number of a Birdlike Pigeons, which fly in Flights so great, that they seem in the Air like Clouds at a great Distance.

As for the Soil, that of the Hills is Gravel and some Stony, but that of the Plains, is a light, black Mould, and in some Places a rich Loam, and some Marle ; all of which are Tokens of Fruitfulness, such as indeed never fail.

The Fourteenth of *January* (the Weather being hot, and Days long, for this was their *July*) we weighed and stood *Northerly* along the Shore, the Coast running from Port *St. Julian* N. N. E. 'till we arriv'd at the famous Islands called *Penguin* Islands; and here we came to an Anchor again, in the same round Bay which Sir *John Narborough* called *Port Desire*, it being the Seventeenth of *January*.

Here we found a Post, or Cross, erected by Sir *John Narborough*, with a Plate of Copper nailed to it, and an Inscription, signifying, That he had taken Possession of that Country in the Name of King *Charles II.* Our Men raised a Shout for Joy that they were in their own King's Dominions, or, as they said, in their own Country; and, indeed, excepting that it was not inhabited by *Englishmen*, and cultivated, planted, and inclosed, after the *English* Manner, I never saw a Country in the World so like *England*

Here we victualled our Ships with a new kind of Food; for we loaded ourselves with Seals, of which here are an infinite Number, and which we salted and eat, and our Men liked them wonderfully for a while; but they soon began to be weary of them: Also the *Penguins* are a very wholesome Diet, and very pleasant, especially when a little salted; and as for Salt, we could have loaded our Ship with it, being very good and white, made by the Sun, and found in standing Ponds of Salt-water, near the Shore.

The *Penguins* are so easily kill'd, and are found in such vast Multitudes on that Island, (which, for that Reason, is so called) that our Men loaded the Long-boat with them twice in one Day, and we reckoned there were no less than Seven thousand in the Boat each Time.

Here we travelled up into the Country in Search of our Men, and made our Signals, but had no Answer to them, nor heard any Intelligence of them. We saw some People here at a Distance, scattering about; but they were but few, nor would they be brought by any Means to converse with us, or come near us.

We spread ourselves over the Country far and wide; and here we shot Hares and Wild-Fowl again in Abundance, the Country being much the same as before, but something more bushy, and here and there a few Trees, but they were a great way off. There is a large River which empties itself into this Bay.

Finding no News here of our Men, I ordered the *Madagascar* Ship to weigh and stand farther *North*, keeping as near the Shore as he might with Safety, and causing his Men to look out for the Signals, which, if they discovered, they should give us Notice by firing Three Guns.

They sailed the Height of *Cape Blanco*, where the Land falling back, makes a deep Bay, and the Sea receives into it a great River at several Mouths, some of them Twenty Leagues from the other, all farther  
*North.*

*North.* Here they stood into the Bay 'till they made the Land again; for at the first Opening of the Bay, they could not see the Bottom of it, the Land lying very low.

The Captain was doubtful what he should do upon the Appearance of so large a Bay, and was loth to stand farther in, lest the Land, pushing out into the Sea again afterwards, and a Gale springing up from Sea-ward, they might be shut into a Bay where they had no Knowledge of the Ground; and upon this Caution, they resolv'd among themselves to come to an Anchor for that Evening, and to put farther out to Sea the next Morning.

Accordingly, the next Morning, he weigh'd, and stood off to Sea; but the Weather being very fine, and the little Wind that blew, being *S.W.* by *S.* he ventured to stand in for the Shore, where he found Two or Three small Creeks, and one large River, and sending in his *Shallop* to sound, and find out a good Place to ride in, upon their making the Signal to him, that they had found such a Place, he stood in, and came to an Anchor in Eleven Fathom good Ground, Half a League from the Shore, and well defended from the *Northerly* and *Easterly* Winds; which were the Winds we had any Reason to fear.

Having thus brought his Ship to an Anchor, he sent his *Shallop* along the Shore to give me an Account of it, and desire me to come up to him, which accordingly we did; and here we resolv'd to ride for some Time, in hopes



to hear from our little Army. We went on Shore, some or other of us, every Day, and especially when Five of our Men, going on Shore on the *North* Side of the River, had shot Three *Peruvian* Sheep, and a black wild Bull; for after that, they ranged the Country far and near to find more, but could never come within Shot of them, except Three Bulls and a Cow, which they kill'd after a long Chase.

We lay here 'till the Sixteenth of *February*, without any News of our Travellers, as I called them. All the Hopes we had, was, that Five of our Men, asking my Leave to travel, swore to me, They would go quite up to the *Andes*, but they would find them; nay, They would go to the *Spanish* Gentleman himself, if they did not hear of them; and obliged me to stay Twenty Days for them, and no longer. This I promised them, and giving them every thing they asked, and Two of the *Peruvian* Sheep to carry their Ammunition, with Two Dozen of Rockets for Signals, a Speaking-Trumpet, and a good Perspective-Glass, away they went; and from them we had yet heard no News, so that was our present Hope.

They travelled, as they afterwards gave an Account, One hundred and Twenty Miles up the Country, 'till they were at last forced to resolve to kill one of their *Guinacos*, or Sheep, to satisfy their Hunger, which was a great Grief to them; for their Luggage was heavy to carry; but, I say, they only resolved on it, for just as they were going to  
do

do it, one of them rouzed a Deer with a Fawn; and, by great good luck, shot them both; for having killed the Doe, the Fawn stood still by her, 'till he had loaded his Piece again, and shot that also.

This supplied them for Four or Five Days plentifully, and the last Day, one of my Men, being by the Bank of the River, for they kept as near the River as they could, in hopes to hear of them that Way, saw something black come driving down the Stream; he could not reach it, but calling one of his Fellows, their Curiosity was such, that the other, being a good Swimmer, stripped, and put off to it, and when he came to it, he found it was a Man's Hat; this made them conclude their Fellows were not far off, and that they were coming by Water.

Upon this, they made to the first Rising Ground they could come at, and there they encamped, and, at Night, fired some Rockets, (they kept looking out, you may be sure) and after the Third Rocket was fired, they, to their great Joy, saw Two Rockets rise up from the *Westward*, and soon after that, a Third; and in Two Days more, they all joyfully met, as you shall hear.

We had been here, as I have said, impatiently expecting them a great while; but at last, the Man at the Main-Top, who was ordered to look out, called aloud to us below, that he saw a Flash of Fire, and immediately, the Men looking to Land-ward, they saw Two Rockets rise up in the Air at a great Distance, which we answered by firing

Three Rockets again, and they returned by One Rocket, to signify, that they saw our Mens Signal.

This was a joyful Exchange of distant Language to both Sides, but I was not there; for being impatient, I had put out, and sailed about Ten Leagues farther; but our Ship fired Three Guns to give me Notice, which, however, we heard not, and yet we knew they fired too; for, it being in the Night, our Men, who were very attentive with their Eyes, as well as Ears, saw plainly the Three Flashes of the Guns, though they could not hear the Report, the Wind being contrary. This was such certain Intelligence to me, and I was so impatient to know how Things went, that, having also a small Gale of Wind, I weighed immediately, and stood back again to our other Ship; it was not, however, 'till the Second Day after we weighed, that we came up to them, having little or no Wind all the First Day; the next Day, in the Morning, they spied us, and fired the Three Guns again, being the Signal, that they had got News of our Friends.

Nothing could be more to my Satisfaction, than to hear, that they had got News, and it was as much to their Satisfaction as to ours, to be sure, I mean our little Army; for if any Disaster had happened to us, they had been in a very odd Condition; and tho' they might have found Means to subsist, yet they would have been out of all Hope of ever returning to their own Country.

Upon

Upon the Signal, I stood into the Bay, and came to an Anchor at about a League to the *Northward* of our other Ship, and as far from the Shore; and, as it were, in the Mouth of the River, waiting for another Signal from our Men, by which we might judge, which Side of the River to go a Shore at, and might take some proper Measures to come at them.

About Five a Clock in the Evening, our Eyes, being all up in the Air, and towards the Hills, for the appointed Signals, beheld, to our great Surprize, a *Canoe* come rowing to us out of the Mouth of the River; immediately we went to work with our Perspective Glasses. One said it was one Thing, and one said it was another, 'till I fetched out a large Telescope out of the Cabbin, and with that I could easily see they were my own Men, and it was to our inexpressible Satisfaction, that they soon after came directly on Board.

It might very well take up another Volume, as large as this, to give a farther Account of the Particulars of their Journey, or rather their Journey and Voyage; How they got through the Hills, and were entertained by the generous *Spaniard*; and afterwards by the Wealthy *Chilian*: How the Men, greedy for Gold, were hardly brought away from the Mountains: And how, once, they had much ado to persuade them not to rob the honest *Chilian* who had used them so well, 'till my Lieutenant, then their Captain, by a Stratagem seized on all their Weapons, and



threatned to speak to the *Spaniard* to raise all the *Chilians* in the Mountains, and have all their Throats cut; and yet, that even this did not suffice, 'till the Two Midshipmen, then their Lieutenants, assured them, that at the first Opening of the Hills, and in the Rivers beyond, they would have Plenty of Gold; and one of the Midshipmen told them, That if he did not see them have so much Gold, that they would not stoop to take up any more, they should have all his Share to be divided among them, and should leave him behind in the first desolate Place they could find.

How this appeas'd them 'till they came to the outer Edge of the Mountains, where I had been, and where my Patron the *Spaniard* left them, having supplied them with Sixteen Mules to carry their Baggage, and some Guinacoes, or Sheep of *Peru*, which would carry Burthens, and afterwards be good to eat also.

Also, How here they mutiny'd again, and would not be drawn away, being insatiable in their Thirst after the Gold, 'till about Twenty, more reasonable than the rest, were content to move forward; and, after some Time, the rest followed, though not 'till they were assured, that the picking up of Gold continued all along the River, which began at the Bottom of the Mountains, and that it was likely to continue a great way farther.

How they worked their Way down these Streams, with still an insatiable Avarice and Thirst after the Gold, to the Lake called *The Golden-Lake*, and how here they were astonished at the Quantity they found: How, after this, they had great Difficulty to furnish themselves with Provisions, and greater still, in carrying it along with them 'till they found more.

I say, All these Accounts might suffice to make a Volume as large as all the rest: How, at the farther End of this Lake, they found that it evacuated itself into a large River, which, running away, with a strong Current, to the S. S. E. and afterwards to the S. by E. encouraged them to build Canoes, in which they embarked, and which River brought them down to the very Bay where we found them; but that they met with many Difficulties, sunk, and staved their Canoes several Times, by which they lost some of their Baggage, and, in one Disaster, lost a great Parcel of their Gold, to their great Surprise and Mortification: How, at one Place, they split Two of their Canoes, where they could find no Timber to build new ones, and the many Hardships they were put to before they got other Canoes; But I shall give a brief Account of it all, and bring it into as narrow a Compass as I can.

They set out, as I have said, with Mules and Horses to carry their Baggage, and the *Spaniard* gave them a Servant with them for a Guide, who carrying them By-ways, and Unfrequented, so that they might give no

Alarm at the Town of *Villa Rica*, or any where else, they came to the Mouth of the Entrance into the Mountains, and there they pitched their Tent.

N. B. The Lieutenant who kept their Journal, giving an Account of this, merrily, in his Sea Language, expresses it thus; *Being all come safe into the Opening that is in the Entrance of the Mountains, and being there free from the Observation of the Country, we called it our first Port, so we brought too, and came to an Anchor.*

Here the generous *Spaniard*, who, at his own Request, was gone before, sent his Gentleman, and one of his Sons, to them, and sent them Plenty of Provisions, as also caused their Mules to be changed for others that were fresh, and had not been fatigued with any of the other Part of the Journey.

These Things being done, the *Spaniard's* Gentleman caused them to decamp, and march Two Days farther into the Mountains, and then they encamped again, where the *Spaniard* himself came *Incognito* to them, and, with the utmost Kindness and Generosity, was their Guide himself, and their Purveyor also, though Two or Three Times, the Fellows were so rude, so ungovernable, and unbounded in their hunting after Gold, that the *Spaniard* was almost frightened at them, and told the Captain of it: Nor, indeed, was it altogether without Cause; for the Dogs were so ungrateful, that they robbed Two of the Houses

Houfes of the *Chilians*, and took what Gold they had, which was not much indeed, but it hazarded fo much the Alarming the Country, and raifing all the *Mountaineers* upon them, that the *Spaniard* was upon the Point of flying from them, in Spight of all their Fire-Arms and Courage.

But the Captain begged him to ftay one Night more, and promifed to have the Fellows punifhed, and Satisfaction to be made ; and fo he brought all his Men together and talked to them, and enquired who it was : But never was fuch a piece of Work in the World : When the new Captain came to talk of who did it, and of Punifhment, they cryed, They all did it, and they did not value all the *Spaniards* or *Indians* in the Country ; they would have all the Gold in the whole Mountain, ay, that they would, By——and swore to it, and if the *Spaniard* offer'd to fpeak a Word to them, they would whip his Head off, and the like.

However, a little Reasoning with them, brought fome of the Men to their Senses, and the Captain, who was a Man of Senfe and of a fmooth Tongue, managed fo well, that he brought about 22 of the Men, and the Two Lieutenants and Surgeons to declare for his Opinion, and that they would act better for the future ; and with thefe, he clapt in between the other Fellows, and feparated about 18 of them from their Arms, for they had run fcattring among the Rocks to hunt for Gold, and when they were called to this Parley, had not their Weapons with them : By this Stratagem



Stratagem he seized Eleven of the Thieves, and made them Prisoners ; and then he told the rest in so many Words, that if they would not comply to keep Order, and obey the Rules they were at first sworn to, and had promised, he would force them to it, for he would deliver them, bound Hand and Foot, to the *Spaniards*, and they should do the poor *Chilians* Justice upon them ; for that, in short, he would not have the rest murdered for them ; upon this, he ordered his Men to draw up, to shew them he would be as good as his Word, but they considered of it, and submitted.

But the *Spaniard* had taken a wiser Course than this, or, perhaps, they had been all murdered ; for, he ran to the two *Chilian* Houses where the Rogues had plunder'd, and where, in short, there was a kind of little Hubbub about it, and with good Words, promising to give them as much Gold as they lost, and the Price of some other Things that were taken away, he appeased the People ; and so our Men were not ruined, as they would certainly have been, if the Mountaineers had taken the Alarm.

After this, they grew a little more governable, but, in short, the Sight of the Gold, and the easy getting it, for they pick'd it up in abundance of Places ; I say, the Sight of the Gold, made them stark mad ; for now, they were not as they were before, trafficking for the Owners and for the Voyage : But, as I had promised the Gold they got should be their own, and that they were now Working for themselves, there was no getting them to go  
on,

on, but, in short, they would dwell here; and this was as fatal a Humour as the other.

But to bring this part of the Voyage to an End, after Eight Days they came to the Hospitable Wealthy *Chilian's* House, who I mention'd before; and here, as the *Spaniard* had contriv'd it, they found all kind of needful Stores for Provisions laid up, as it were, on purpose; and, in a Word, here they were not Fed only, but Feasted.

Here again, the Captain discovered a cursed Conspiracy, which, had it taken Effect, would, besides the Baseness of the Fact, have ended in their total Destruction; in short, they had resolved to rob this *Chilian* who was so kind to them; but, as I said, one of the Lieutenants discovered and detected this villainous Contrivance, and quash'd it, so as never to let the *Spaniard* know of it.

But, I say, to end this Part; They were One and Twenty Days in this Traverse, for they could not go on so easy and so fast, now they were a little Army, as we did, who were but Six or Seven; At length they came to the View of the open Country, and, being all Encamped, at the Edge of a Descent, the Generous *Spaniard*, and his three Servants, took his Leave, wishing them a good Journey, and so went back, having the Day before, brought them some Deer, Five or Six Cows and some Sheep, for their Subsisting at their Entrance into, and Travel thro' the plain Country.

And

And now they began to descend towards the Plain, but they met with more Difficulty here than they expected ; for, as I observed, that the Way, for some Miles, went with an Ascent, towards the farthest part of the Hill, that continued Ascent, had by Degrees, brought them to a very great, and, in some Places, an unpassable Descent ; so that, however my Guide found his Way down, when I was through, it was not so easy for them to do it, who were so many in Number, and incumbred with Mules and Horses, and with their Baggage, so that they knew not what to do ; and if they had not known that our Ships were gone away, there had been some Odds, but, like the old *Israelites*, they would have murmured against their Leader, and have all gone back to *Egypt*. In a Word, they were at their Wits End, and knew not what Course to take for two or three Days, trying and essaying to get down here and there, and then frightened with Precipices and Rocks, and climbing up to get back again ; the whole of the Matter was, that they had mis'd a narrow Way, where they should have turn'd off to the S. E. the Marks which our Men had made before, having not been so regular and exact just there, as in other Parts of the Way, or some other Turning being so very like the same, that they took one for the other ; and thus going straight forward too far, before they turn'd, they came to an Opening indeed, and saw the plain Country under them, as they had done before ; but the Descent was not so practicable.

After

After they had puzzled themselves here, as I said, two or three Days, one of the Lieutenants and a Man with him, seeing a Hut or House of a *Chilian* at some Distance, rode away towards it ; but passing into a Valley that lay between, he met with a River which he could by no means get over with the Mules ; so he came back again in Despair : The Captain then resolved to send back to the honest rich *Chilian*, who had entertained them so well, for a Guide, or to desire him to give them such Directions, as they might not mistake.

But as the Person sent back, was one of those who had taken the Journal which I mentioned, and was therefore greatly vex'd at missing his Way in such a Manner ; so he had his Eyes in every Corner, and pulled out his Pocket-Book at every Turning, to see how the Marks of Places agreed ; and at last, the very next Morning after he set out, he spied the Turning where they should all have gone in, to have come to the Place which they were at before : This being so remarkable a Discovery, he came back again directly, without going on to the *Chilian's* House, which was two Days Journey farther.

Our Men were reviv'd with this Discovery, and all agreed to march back ; so, having lost about Six Days in this false Step, they got into the right Way, and in Four more, came to the Descent, where I had been before.

Here the Hill was still very high, and the Passage down, was steep and difficult enough ; but still, it was practicable, and our Men could see the Marks of Cattle having pass'd there,



there, as if they had gone in Drifts or Drovers ; also it was apparent, that, by some Help and Labour of Hands, the Way might be led Winding and Turning on the Slope of the Hill, so as to make it much easier to get down than it was now.

It cost them no small Labour, however, to get down, chiefly because of the Mules, which very often fell down with their Loads, and our Men said, they believ'd, they could, with much more Ease, have mounted up from the *East* Side to the Top, than they came from the *West* Side to the Bottom.

They incamped one Night on the Declivity of the Hill, but got up early, and was at the Bottom and on the plain Ground by Noon : As soon as they came there, they incamped and refreshed themselves, *that is to say*, went to Dinner ; but it being very hot there, the cool Breezes of the Mountains having now left them, they were more inclined to Sleep than to Eat ; so the Captain ordered the Tent to be set up, and they made the whole Day of it, calling a Council in the Morning to consider what Course they should steer, and how they should go on.

Here they came to this Resolution, That they should send a Man or two, a considerable Way up the Hill again ; to take the strictest Observation he could of the Plain, with the largest Glasses they had, and to mark which Way the nearest River or Water was to be seen ; and they should direct their Course, first to the Water, and that if the Course of it lay *S.* or any way to the *E.* of the *S.* they would follow

follow on the Bank of it, and as soon as it was large enough to carry them, they would make them some Canoes or Shaloups, or what they could do, with the most Ease, to carry them on by Water; also they directed him to observe if he could see any Cattle feeding at a Distance, or the like.

The Messenger returned, and brought them Word, that all the Way to the *E.* and so on to *S. E.* they could discover nothing of Water, but that they had seen a great Lake or Lough of Water at a great Distance, which looked like a Sea, and lay from them to the *Northward* of the *East*, about two Points; adding, That they did not know, but it might afterwards empty it self to the *Eastward*, and it was their Opinion to make the best of their Way thither.

Accordingly the next Morning they de-camped and marched *E. N. E.* very cheartully, but found the Way much longer than they expected; for though from the Mountains, the Country seemed to lie flat and plain, yet when they came to measure it by their Feet, they found a great many little Hills; Little, I say, compared to the great Mountains, but Great to them who were to Travel over them in the Heat, and with but very indifferent Support as to Provisions; so that in a Word, the Captain very prudently ordered, that they should travel one three Hours in the Morning, and three Hours in the Evening, and incamp in the Heat of the Day, to refresh themselves as well as they could.

The best Thing they met with in that Part of the Country, was, That they had Plenty of Water ; for though they were not yet come to any large considerable River, yet, every low piece of Ground, had a small Rill of Water in it ; and the Springs coming out from the rising Grounds, on the Sides of the Mountains, being innumerable, made many such small Brooks.

It cost them Six Days Travel, with Two Days Resting between, to advance to that River of Water, which, from the Height of the Mountains, seemed to be but a little Way off ; They could not march, by their Computation, above Ten or Twelve Miles a Day, and rest every third Day too, for their Luggage was heavy, and their Mules but few ; also some of their Mules tyred and jaded, by their long March, or fell lame, and were good for nothing.

Besides all this, the Days which I call Days of Rest, were really not so to them, for those Intervals were imployed to range about and hunt for Food ; and it was for that, more than for Want of Rest, that they halted every Third Day.

In this Exercise they did, however, meet with such Success, that they made shift to kill one sort of Creature or another every Day, sufficient to keep them from famishing ; sometimes they met with some Deer, other times with the *Guinacoes* or *Peruvian* Sheep, and sometimes with Fowls of several kinds, so that they did pretty well for Food : At length, *viz.* the Seventh Day, they came to a River, which was at first small, but having received another small River or two from the *Northern* Part of the Country,

Country, began to seem large enough for their Purpose, and as it ran *E. S. E.* they concluded it would run into the Lake, and that they might Fleet down this River, if they could make any thing to carry them.

But their first Discouragement was, the Country was all open, with very little Wood, and no Trees, or very few, to be found large enough to make *Canoes*, or Boats of any Sort ; but the Skill of their Carpenters, of which they had Four, soon conquered this Difficulty ; for coming to a low swampy Ground, on the Side of the River, they found a Tree something like a Beech, very firm good sort of Wood ; and yet soft enough to Work easy ; and they went to Work with this, and, at first, made them some Rafts, ; which they thought might carry them along, till the River was bigger.

While this was doing (which took up two or three Days) the Men straggled up and down ; some with their Guns to shoot Fowls, some with Contrivances to catch Fish, some one thing, some another ; when, on a sudden, one of their Fishermen, not in the River, but in a little Brook, which afterwards run into the River, found a little bit of shining Stuff among the Sand, or Earth, in the Bank ; and one cried, he had found a piece of Gold : Now it seems all was not Gold that glister'd, for the Lump had no Gold in it, whatever it was ; but the Word being given out at first, it immediately set all our Men a Romaging the Shores of every little Rill of Water they came at, to see if there was no Gold ; and they had not looked long, but they found several little

L

Grains



Grains of Gold very small and fine, not only in this Brook, but in several others : So they spent their Time the more chearfully, because they made some Purchase.

All this while they saw no People, nor any Signals of any, except once on the other Side of the River, at a great Distance, they thought they saw about Thirty together, but whether Men or Women, or how many of each, they could not tell, nor would they come any nearer ; only stood and gazed at our People at a Distance.

They were now ready to quit their Camp and embark, intending to lay all their Baggage on the Rafts, with three or four Sick Men, and so the rest to march by the River-Side, and as many as could, to ride upon the Mules ; when, on a sudden, all their Navigation was put to a Stop, and their new Vessels, such as they were, suffered a Wreck : The Case was thus, They had observed a great many black Clouds to hang over the Tops of the Mountains, and some of them even below the Tops, and they did believe it rained among the Hills ; but in the Plain where they lay, and all about them, it was fair, and the Weather fine.

But in the Night, the Carpenters and their Assistants, who had set up a little Tent near the River Side, were alarmed with a great roaring Noise (as they thought) in the River, tho' at a Distance upwards ; presently after, they found the Water begin to come into their Tent ; when, running out, they found the  
River

River was swelling over its Banks, and all the low Grounds on both Sides of them.

To their great Satisfaction it was just break of Day, so that they could see enough to make their Way from the Water; and the Land very happily rising a little to the S. of the River, they immediately fled thither; two of them had so much Presence of Mind with them, as to pick up their Working-Tools, at least some of them, and carry off, and the Water rising gradually, the other two Carpenters ventured back to save the rest; but they were put to it to get back again with them; in a Word, the Water rose to such a Height, that it carried away their Tent, and every Thing that was in it, and, which was worse, their Rafts, (for they had almost finished Four large Rafts) were all lifted off from the Place where they were fram'd, which was a kind of a dry Dock, and dash'd all to Pieces, and the Timber, such as it was, all carried away: The smaller Brooks also swell'd in Proportion to the larger River; so that, in a Word, our Men lay, as it were, surrounded with Water, and began to be in a terrible Consternation; for tho' they lay in a hard dry Piece of Ground, too high for the Land-Flood to reach them, yet had the Rains continued in the Mountains, they might have lain there till they had been oblig'd to eat one another, and so there had been an End of our new Discovery.

But the Weather clear'd up among the Hills the next Day, which hearten'd them up again; and as the Flood rose so soon, so the Current

being furiously rapid, the Waters run off again as easily as they came on, and in Two Days the Water was all gone again. But our little Float was shipwreck'd, as I have said, and the Carpenters finding how dangerous such great unweildy Rafts would be, resolv'd to set to it, and build one large Float with Sides to it like a Punt or Ferry-boat. They work'd so hard at this, Ten of the Men always working with them to help, that in Five Days they had her finished: The only Thing they wanted was Pitch and Tar, to make her Upper-Work keep out the Water; and they made a Shift to fetch a Juice out of some of the Wood they had cut, by Help of Fire, that answer'd the End tolerably well.

But that which made this Disappointment less afflicting, was, That our other Men hunting about the small Streams where this Water had come down so furiously, found that there was more Gold, and the more for the late Flood. This made them run straggling up the Streams; and, as the Captain said, he thought once they would run quite back to the Mountains again.

But that was his Ignorance too, for after a while, and the nearer they came to the Rising of the Hills, the Quantity abated; for where the Streams were so furious, the Water wash'd it all away, and carried it down with it; so that by the End of Five Days the Men found but little, and began to come back again.

But then they discovered, that, tho' there was less in the higher Part of the Rivers, there was more farther down, and they found

it so well worth while, that they went fishing along for Gold all the Way towards the Lake, and left their Fellows and the Boat to come after.

At last, when nothing else would do it, Hunger call'd them off, and so, once more, they got all their Company together again; and now they began to load the Float, indeed it might be call'd a Luggage Boat: However, it answer'd very well, and was a great Relief to our Men; but when they came to load it, they found it would not carry so much by a great deal as they had to put in it; besides, that they would be all oblig'd to march on Foot by the Shore, which had this particular Inconvenience in it, That whenever they came to any small River or Brook, which run into the other, as was very often the Case, they would be forc'd to march up a great Way to get over it, or unload the great Float to make a Ferry-boat of it to waft them over.

Upon this, they resolv'd, that the first Place they came at, where Stuff was to be had for building, they would go to work again, and make Two or Three more Floats not so big as the other, that so they might embark themselves, and their Stuff, and their Provisions too all together, and take the full Benefit of the River, where it would afford them Help, and not some sail on the Water, and some go on Foot upon the Land, which was very fatiguing.

Upon this, as soon as they found Stuff, as I have said, and a convenient Place, they went all Hands to work to build more Floats



or Boats, call them as you will: While this was doing, all the spare Men, and all the Men at spare Hours, spent their Time and Pains in Hunting about for Gold in the Brooks and small Streams, as well those they had been at before, as others; and that after they had, as it were, plundered them at the first Discovery, for as they had found some Gold after the hasty Rain, they were loth to give it over, tho' they had been assured there was more to be found in the Lake where they were yet to come, than in the Brooks.

All this while their making the Floats went slowly on, for the Men thought it a great Hardship to keep chopping of Blocks, as they call'd it, while their Fellows were picking up of Gold, tho' they knew they were to have their Share of what they found, as much as if they had been all the while with them: But, it seems, there is a kind of Satisfaction in the Work of picking up Gold, besides the meer Gain.

However, at Length, the Gold failing, they began to think of their more immediate Work, which was going forward; and the Carpenters having made Three more Floats like flat-bottom'd Barges, which they brought to be able to carry their Baggage and themselves too, if they thought fit, they began to embark and fall down the River, but they grew sick of their Navigation in a very few Days; for before they got to the Lake, which was but Three Days going, they run several Times on Ground, and were oblig'd to lighten them to get them off again, then load again,  
and

and lighten again, and so off and on, till they were so tired of them; that they would much rather have carried all their Baggage, and have travelled by Land: And at last they were forced to cast off Two of them, and put all their Baggage on Board the other Two; which, at best, tho' large, were but very poor crazy Things.

At length, they came in Sight of their beloved Lake, and the next Day they entred into the open Part or Sea of it, which they found was very large, and in some Places very deep.

Their Floats, or what they might be call'd, were by no Means fit to carry them upon this Inland Sea; for as, if the Water had been stirred by the least Gust of Wind, it would presently have washed over them, and have spoiled, if not sunk, their Baggage; so they had no Way to steer or guide them whenever they came into deep Water where they could not reach the Ground with their Poles.

This oblig'd them, as soon as they came into the open Lake, to keep close under one Shore, *that is to say*, to the Right-hand, where the Land falling away to the S. and the S. *and by E.* seem'd to carry them still forward on their Way; the other Side widening to the N. made the Lake seem there to be really a Sea, for they could not see over it unless they went on Shore, and got up upon some rising Ground.

Here, at first, they found the Shore steep too, and a great Depth of Water close to the Land, which made them very uneasy; for if

the least Gale of Wind had disturbed the Water, especially blowing from off the Lake, they would have been shipwreck'd close to the Shore. However, after they had gone for Two Days along the Side, by the Help of Towing and Setting as well as they could, they came to a flatter Shore and a fair Strand, to their great Joy and Satisfaction.

But if the Shore prov'd to their Satisfaction for its Safety, it was much more so on another Account; for they had not been long here, before they found the Sands or Shore infinitely rich in Gold, beyond all they had seen, or thought of seeing, before. They had no sooner made the Discovery, but they resolv'd to fall on, as upon a lasting Spoil that was to enrich them all, and they went to work with such an avaricious Rage, that they seem'd to be as if they were plundering an Enemy's Camp, and that there was an Army at Hand to drive them from the Place; and, as it prov'd, they were in the right to do so; for in this Gust of their greedy Appetite, they consider'd not where they were, and upon what tender ticklish Terms their Navigation stood. They had indeed drawn their Two Floats to the Shore as well as they could, and with Pieces of Wood, like Piles, stuck in on every Side, brought them to ride easy, but had not taken the least Thought about Change of Weather, tho' they knew they had neither Anchor or Cable, nor so much as a Rope large enough to fasten them on the Shore.

But they were taught more Wit to their Cost in Two or Three Days; for the very second Night, they felt a little unusual Rising of the Water, as they thought, tho' without any Wind; and the next Morning, they found the Water of the Lake was swelled about Two Foot perpendicular, and that their Floats, by that Means, lay a great Way farther from the Shore than they did before, the Water still increasing.

This made them, at first, imagine there was a Tide in the Lake, and that after a little Time it would abate again; but they soon found their Mistake; for, after some Time, they perceived the Water, which was perfectly fine and clear before, grew, by Degrees, of a paler Colour, thick, and whitish, till at last it was quite white and muddy, as is usual in Land Floods; and as it still continued rising, so they continued thrusting in their Floats farther and farther towards the Shore, till they had, in short, lost all the fine Golden Sands they were upon before, and found the Lake overflowed the Land so far beyond them, that, in short, they seemed to be in the Middle of the Lake, for they could scarce see to the End of the Water, even on that very Side where, but a few Hours before, they were fast on Shore.

You may easily judge, that this put them into a great Consternation, and they might well conclude, that they should be all drowned and lost; for they were now, as it were, in the Middle of the Sea upon Two open Floats or Rafts, sent'd no where from the  
least



least Surge or Swell of the Water, except by a kind of waste Board, about Two Foot high, built up on the Sides, without any Caulking or Pitching, or any Thing to keep out the Water.

They had neither Mast or Sail, Anchor or Cable, Head or Stern, no Bows to fence off the Waves, or Rudder to steer any Course, or Oars to give any Motion, but, like a flat-bottomed Punt; they thrust them along with such Poles as they had, some of which were about Eight or Ten Foot long, and, which gave them a little Way, but very slowly.

All the Remedy they had in this Case, was to set on with their Poles towards the Shore, and to observe by their Pocket-Compasses which Way it lay: And this they laboured hard at, lest they should be lost in the Night, and not know which Way to go.

Their Carpenters, in the mean Time, with some spare Boards which they had, or rather made, raised their Sides as well as they could, to keep off the Wash of the Sea, if any Wind should rise so as to make the Water rough; and thus they fenced against every Danger as well as they could, tho' all put together, they were but in a very sorry Condition.

Now they had Time to reflect upon their voracious Fury, in ranging the Shore to pick up Gold, without considering where, and in what Condition they were, and without looking out on Shore for a Place of Safety: Nay, they might now have reflected on the  
Madness

Madness of venturing out into a Lake or Inland Sea of that vast Extent, in such pitiful Bottoms as they had under them. Their Business, doubtless, had been to have stopp'd within the Mouth of the River, and found a convenient Place to land their Goods and secure their Lives; and when they had pitched their Camp upon any safe high Ground, where they might be sure they could neither be overflowed or surrounded with Water, they might have search'd the Shores of the Lake as far as they thought fit; But thus to launch out in an unknown Water, and in such a Condition, as to their Vessels, as is described above, was most unaccountably rash and inconsiderate.

Never was a Crew of Fifty Men, all able and experienced Sailors so embarked, nor drawn into such a Snare; for they were surrounded with Water for Three or Four Miles in Breadth on the nearest Shore, and this all on a sudden, the Country lying low and flat for such a Breadth; all which appear'd dry Land, and Green, like the Fields, but the Day before; and, without Question, they were sufficiently surprized.

Now they would have given all the Gold they had got, which was very considerable too, to have been on Shore on the wildest and most barren Part of the Country, and would have trusted to their own Diligence to get Food: But here, besides the imminent Danger of Drowning, they might also be in Danger of Starving; for had their Floats grounded but upon any little Hillock, they might  
have

have stuck there till they had starved and perished for Hunger: Then they were in the utmost Anxiety too, for fear of wetting their Powder, which if it had happened, they could never have made serviceable again, and without it they could not have killed any Thing for Food, if they had got to the Shore.

They had, in this Exigence, some Comforts however, which might a little uphold their Spirits; and without which, indeed, their Condition must have been deplorable and desperate. 1. It was hot Weather, so that, as they had no Shelter against the Cold if it had come, they had no Cold to afflict them; but they rather wanted Aunings, to keep off the Sun, than Houses to keep off the Cold. 2. The Water of the Lake was all fresh and very good, even when it looked white and thick, yet it was very sweet and drank wholesome and good tasted: Had it been salt Water, and they thus in the Middle of it, they must have perished for Thirst. 3. They being now floating over the drowned Lands only, the Water was not very deep, so that they could reach Ground, and set along their Rafts with their Poles; and this, to be sure, they failed not to do with the utmost Diligence.

They had also the Satisfaction to observe, tho' it was not without Toiling in an inexpressible Manner, that they did gain upon the Shore; and there was a high Land before them, which they did draw towards, tho' very slowly, and at a very great Distance.

But then they had another Discouragement, namely, that they saw the Day declined, and  
Night

Night came on apace, and, in short, that it was impossible they could reach the high Land, which they saw, by Daylight, nor did they know what to do, or how to go on in the Night.

At Length, Two bold Fellows offered themselves to strip and go off, either to wade or swim to the Shore, which they had yet Daylight enough to do, being, as they judged, about Three Miles, tho' they found it above Four Miles; and from thence to find Means to make a Fire or Light, to guide them to the Shore in the Dark.

This was, indeed, a desperate Attempt, but the Two Fellows being good Swimmers, and willing to venture, it was not impracticable. They had light Linnen Drawers on, open at the Knees, and their Shirts; and they took a little Bottle each in their Pockets, with some Gun-powder in them close stopped, with other Materials for kindling Fire; Weapons they had none, but each Man a Knife and a Hatchet fasten'd round their Waste in a little Belt, and a light Pole in their Hands to help when they waded, which they expected to do most Part of the Way. They had no Provisions with them, but a Bottle with some good Brandy in their Pockets.

When they went off, you are to suppose the Water about Four Foot to Five Foot deep, so they chose to swim rather than wade, and, as it was very seldom much deeper, they had often Opportunity to stand on the firm Ground to rest themselves.

In this Posture they went on directly towards the Land, and after they had by swimming



ming and wading together, advanced about a Mile, they found the Water grew shallower, which was a Signal to them that they should reach the hard Ground in a little Time; so they walked chearfully on in about Three Foot Water for near a Mile more.

Their Companions soon lost Sight of them, for they being in White, and the Water white too, and the Light declining, they could not see them at a Mile's Distance; after this, they found the Ground falling lower, so that they had deeper Water, for Half a Mile more all the Way; after which, they came to flat Ground again for near Two Miles more, and at length to the dry Land, to their great Satisfaction, tho' it was then quite Night.

Their Comrades had been near an Hour in the Dark, that is to say, with only a dusky Light, and began to be greatly at a Loss, not being able to see the Compass; they had made shift to get over the Half-Mile of deeper Water pretty well; for tho' it was too deep for the Men to wade, as above, yet they could reach the Bottom with their Poles, and at that Time they happened to feel a little Breeze of Wind fair in their Way, which both refreshed them with its cool Breath, and also gave them a Kind of a Jog on their Way towards the Shore.

At Length, to their great Joy, they saw a Light; and it was the more to their Joy, because they saw it just before them, or, as the Seamen call it, Right a Head; by which they had the Satisfaction to know they had not varied their Course in the Dark. It seems their  
their

their Two Men had landed upon a fair rising Ground, where they found some low Bushes and Trees, and where they had good hard dry Standing; and they soon found Means to pick out a few withered dry Sticks, with which they made a Blaze for the present, having struck Fire with the Tools they were furnished with, as above.

By the Light of this Blaze, they gave the first Notice to their Comrades, as above, that they were landed; and they again, as was agreed before Hand, fired Two Guns as a Signal that they saw it, and were all safe; also, by the Light of this Fire, they gave themselves so much Light as to find more dry Wood; and afterwards their Fire was so strong and good, that they made the green Wood burn as well as the dry.

Their Companions were now come into the shoal Water, in which, as I said, the Men waded, but as their Floats did not draw above a Foot or Eighteen Inches Water at most, they went on still; but at length, being within about Half a Mile of the Hillock, where the Two Men were, they found the Water so shallow, that their Floats would not swim. Upon this, more of the Men went over-board with Poles in their Hands, sounding, as we may call it, for deeper Water; and, with long Puddling about, they found the Ground fall off a little in One Place, by which they got their Floats about a Quarter of a Mile farther: But then the Water was shallow again not above a Foot Water. So, in a Word, they were fain to be content, and  
 running

running fast a-Ground, they immediately began, tho' dark, and themselves very much fatigued, to unload their Ships; and carry all on Shore on their Backs.

The first Thing they took Care to land, was their Ammunition, their Gun-powder and Arms; not forgetting the *Ammunition de Bouche*, as the *French* call it, I mean their Victuals; and, with great Joy, they got to their Two Comrades; then they fetched their proper Materials for their Tent, and set it up, and having refreshed themselves, they went all to sleep (as they said) without so much as a Centinel placed for their Guard: For as they saw no Inhabitants, so they feared no Enemies; and, it may be supposed they were weary enough to make them want Rest, even in the extreamest Manner.

In the Morning they had Time enough to reflect upon the Madness of such rash Adventures, as you shall hear: Their Floats, indeed, remained as they had left them, and the Water was ebbd away from them above Two Miles, that is to say, almost to the deep Half-Mile, mentioned above; but they heard a surprizing Noise and Roaring of the Water on the Lake itself, the Body of which was now above Seven Miles from them.

They could not imagine what this Roaring should mean, for they felt no Wind, nor could they perceive any Clouds at a Distance that looked as if they brought any Squawls of Wind with them, as they are often observed to do: But when they came nearer the Water, they found it had a Kind  
of

of a Swell, and that there was certainly some more violent Motion at the farther Distance; and in a little while, looking behind them towards the Shore where their Comrades were, they found the Water began to spread over the flat Ground again; upon which, they hasten'd back, but having a good Way to go, they were obliged to go Knee-deep, before they reached to the Hillock where their Tent stood.

They had not been many Hours on Shore, before they found the Wind began to rise, and the Roaring, which before they heard at a Distance, grew louder and nearer, till at length the Floats were lifted up, and driven on Shore, by the Wind, which increased to a Storm; and the Water swelled and grew rough, and, as they were upon the Lee-Shore, the Floats were soon broken in Pieces, and went some one Way and some another.

In the Evening, it overcast and grew cloudy, and about Midnight they had their Share of a violent Rain, which yet, they could see, was more violent towards the Mountains of the *Andes*, and towards the Course of the River, which they came down in the Floats.

The Consequence of this, was naturally, that, the Third Day, the Waters of the Lake swelled again to a frightful Height, that is to say, it would have been frightful to them, if they had been upon it, for they suppose it rose about Two Fathom perpendicular, and the Wind continuing fresh, the Water was all a white Foam of Froth; so, that had they had a



good large Boat under them, she would scarce have lived there.

Their Tent kept them dry, and as they were on dry Land, and too high to be reached by any Inundation, they had no Concern upon them about their Safety: But, to be sure, took this for sufficient Notice, not to come up the Lake again in Haste, unless they were better provided with Boats to ride out a Storm.

Our Men began now to think they had taken their Leave of the Golden Lake, and yet they knew not how to think of leaving it so soon: They were now Fourteen or Fifteen Leagues off of that fine Golden Shore where they took up so much, nor did they know the Way to it by Land; and as for going by Water, that they were unprovided for, several Ways; besides, the Waters kept up to a considerable Height, and the Winds blew fresh for Six or Eight Days together.

All these Obstruitions joyn'd together, put them upon considering of persuing their March by Land; in which, however, they resolv'd to coast the Lake as near as they could to the Eastward, till, if possible, they should find that the Waters had some Outlet, that is to say, that the Lake emptied itself by some River towards the Sea, as they concluded it certainly must.

They had not yet seen any Inhabitants, or any Sign of them, at least, not near them; they did, or 'tis thought they fancied they did, see some on the other Side of the River, but they would not come within Reach of them

them on any Account; so that 'tis doubtful whether they really saw them or no.

Before they decamped for a March, it was needful to get some Provisions, if possible, and this made them the more desirous of finding out some conversible Creatures, but it was in vain: They killed a wild Cow and a Deer, and this was all they could get for some Time; and with this they set forward, taking their Course East, and rather Northerly, in order to come into the same Latitude they set out in, at their first embarking on the River.

After they had marched thus for about Three Days, keeping the Lake on the North Side of them, and always in View; at length, on the third Day in the Evening, coming to a little Hill, which gave them the Prospect of the Country for some Length N. E. they saw plainly a River issuing out of the Lake, and running first East, then bending to the South, it was also easy to perceive, that this River was at that Time much broader than in its usual Course, for that they could see a great many Trees, which probably grew on the Bank of the River, standing, as it were, in the Middle of the Water, the Banks being overflowed both Ways very considerably.

But as they mounted the Hill, which they stood on, to a greater Height, they discover'd farther North, at the Distance of Five or Six Miles, according to their Account, a much larger River, which looked, compared to the first River, rather like a Sea than a River, which likewise issued out of the Lake and run E. by S. towards the Sea; which River they sup-

posed to be in the same Manner swelled with a Land-Water, or Fresh, as the Lake was, to a prodigious Degree.

This Prospect brought them to a more serious Consultation, as to the Measures they should take to proceed on their Journey; and, as they could easily see, there was little or no Use to be made of the Rivers for their Travelling, while the Water was thus above the ordinary Banks, so that they could not know the proper Channels, and also that the Currents were exceeding swift; so they resolved to stock themselves with Provisions, if possible, and continue their Journey by Land.

To this Purpose, they first made it their Business to catch some more *Guinacos*, or large Sheep, which they knew, would not only feed them, but also carry their Luggage, which was still heavy and very troublesome to them, and yet absolutely necessary too: But all their Endeavour was in vain, for tho' they saw several, and found that the Country was pretty full of them, and some they killed, yet they could not take One alive, (which was the Thing they chiefly wanted) by any Means that they could contrive.

Among the rest of the Creatures they shot for Food, they very often found wild Cows and Bulls, and especially, as they found afterwards, on the North Side of the River; but the most surprizing Thing to them that they had yet met with, was still to come: They had descended from the Hill, where they at first discover'd the smaller River, and where they had set up their Tent,  
resol-

resolving to march on the lower Grounds, as near the River as they could, so as to be out of Danger of the Water, that they might find, if possible, some Way over to come at the great River, which they judg'd to be the Stream most proper for their Business.

Here they found a rich pleasant Country, level and fruitful, not so low as to be exposed to the overflowing of the River, and not so high as to be dry and barren; several little Brooks and Streams of Water, rising on the Side of the Hill they came from, ran winding this Way and that, as if to find out the River, and near the River were some Woods of very large Trees.

The Men, not forgetting the main Chance, fell to washing and searching the Sand and Gravel in these Brooks for Gold; but the Harvest of Gold seem'd to be over, for here they found none. They had also an Occasion to discover, that till the Land-Waters were abated, there was no stirring for them, no, not so much as to cross the first River; nor, if they did, could they find in their Hearts to venture, not knowing, but the Waters might still rise higher, and that the Two Rivers might swell into One, and so they should be swallowed up, or if not, they might be surrounded in some Island, where they should perish for want of Provisions; so they resolv'd to fetch their Baggage from the Hill, as well as they could, and encamp in those pleasant Plains, as near the River as they could, till the Water should abate.



While they stay'd here, they were so far from having Hopes that the Waters would abate, that it rained violently for almost Three Days and Nights together; and one of those rainy Mornings, looking out at their Tent-Door, (for they could not stir abroad for the Rain) they were surprized, when looking towards the River, which was just below them, they saw a prodigious Number of black Creatures in the Water, and swimming towards the Shore where they were.

They first imagined they were Porpusses, but could not suggest any Thing of that Kind at such a Distance from the Sea, when one of the Men, looking at them through a Glass, cried out, they were all black Cattle, and that he could perceive their Horns and their Heads; upon this, others looking with their Glasses also, said the same; immediately, every Man run to his Gun, and, notwithstanding it rained hard, away they march'd down to the River's Side with all the Speed they could make.

By that Time they reach'd the River-Bank, their Wonder increased, for they found it was a vast Multitude of black Cattle, who finding the Waters rise between the Two Rivers, and, by a natural Sagacity, apprehensive of being swept away with the Flood, had, One and All, took the Waters, and were swimming over to this Side for Safety.

You may very well suppose, the Fellows, tho' they wanted a few such Guests as these, yet were terrified with their Multitude, and began to consider what Course to take when the

the Creatures should come to land, for there was a monstrous many of them: Upon the whole, after a short Consultation, for the Creatures came on apace, they resolved to get into a low Ground, where, they perceived, they directed their Course, and, in which, there were a great many Trees, and that they would all get up into the Trees, and so lie ready to shoot among them as they landed.

Accordingly they did so, except that Five of them, cutting down some large Boughs of a Tree, got into a little Thicket close to the Water, which they so fortified with the Boughs of the Trees, that they thought themselves secure within, and there they posted themselves, resolving to expect them and take their Hazard.

When the Creatures came to land, it was wonderful to observe, how they lowed and roared, as it were, to bid one another welcome on Shore, and spreading themselves upon the neighbouring Plain, immediately lay down, and rowling and stretching themselves, gave our People Notice, that, in short, they had swam a great Way, and were very much tired.

Our Fellows, you may suppose, laid about them, and the Five Men that fixed themselves in the Thicket, had the fairest Opportunity, for they killed Eleven or Twelve of them as soon as they set their Foot on Shore, and lamed as many.

And now they had a Tryal of Skill, for as they kill'd as many as they knew what to do with, and had their Choice of Beef, if they kill'd a Bull, they let him lie, as having no Use for him, but chose the Cows, as what they thought was only fit for Eating.

But, I say, now they had a Tryal of Skill, namely, to see if they could maim some of them, so as not to kill them, and might bring them to carry their Luggage: This was a Kind of a fruitless Attempt, as we afterwards told them, to make a Baggage-Horse of a wild Bull.

However, they brought it so far to pass, that having wounded several young Bulls very much, after they had run roaring about with the Hurt, they lay down and bled so, as, that it was likely, they would bleed to Death, as several of them really did; but the Surgeon observing Two of them to be low enough that he might go to them, and do what he would with them, he soon stopped the Bleeding, and, in a Word, healed the Wounds; all the while he was doing this, he caused Food, that is to say, Grass and Boughs of Trees to be brought to them for Food, and in Four or Five Days, the Creatures were very well: Then he caused them to be hamper'd with Ropes and tied together, so that they could neither fight with their Heads or run away with their Heels; and having thus brought them to a Place just by their Tent, he caused them to be kept so hungry, and almost starved, that when Meat was carried them, they were so tame and thankful, that,

at

at last, they would eat out of his Hand, and stretch out their Heads for it, and when they were let a little looser, would follow him about for a Handful of Grass, like a Dog for a Bone.

When he had brought them thus to Hand; he, by Degrees, loaded them, and, taught them to carry; and if they were unruly as they were at first, he would load them with more than they could well carry, and make them stand under that Load Two or Three Hours, and then come himself and bring them Meat, and take the Load off; and thus in a few Days, they knew him so well, that they would let him do any thing with them.

When they came to decamp, they tied them both together, with such Ropes as they had, and made them carry a very great Weight. They tried the same Experiment with Two more, but they failed, one died, and the other prov'd untractable, fullen and outrageous.

They had now lain here Twelve Days, having Plenty of Provision, in which Time the Weather proving fair, the Land-Waters run off and the Rivers came to their old Channels, clear and calm: The Men would gladly have gone back to the Sands and flat Shore of the Lake, or to some other Part to look for Gold; but that was impracticable now, so they march'd on, and in about Two Days, they found the first River seemed to turn so much to the *South*, that they thought it would carry them too far out of their Way, for their Orders were to keep about the Latitude of Forty to  
Fifty



Fifty Degrees, as is said before, so they resolved to get over the first River as soon as they could; they had not gone far, but they found the River so shallow, that they easily forded it, Bulls and all, and being safely landed, they travelled cross the Country directly to the great River, which they found also very low, tho' not like to be forded as the other was.

Now, they thought, they were in the Way of their Business, and here they resolved to see if a Tree or Two might be found, big enough, to make a large Canoe to carry them down this River, which, as it seemed large, so the Current seemed to be less rapid and furious, the Channel being deep and full.

They had not searched long, but they found Three Trees, as they thought, large enough, and they immediately went to work with them, fell'd them, and shap'd them, and in Four Days Time, they had Three handsome Canoes; one larger then the rest, and able to carry, in all, Fifteen or Sixteen Men; but this was not enough, so they were forced to look out farther for Two Trees more, and this took them up more Time. However, in about a Week they launched them all: As for Days, they had lost their Account of Time; so that as they had, sometimes, no Room to distinguish one Day from another, so they, after some Time, quite forgot the Days, and knew not a Sunday from a Working-Day any more.

While these Canoes were making, the Men, according to the old Trade, fell to rummaging the Shores of this River, as they had  
done

done the other, for Gold, nor did they wholly lose their Labour, for in several Places they found a pretty deal; and here it was, that a certain Number of them, taking one of the Canoes that were first made, took a Voyage of their own Heads, not only without Command, but against Command; and having made a little Mast and Sail to it, went up towards the Lake, resolving to go quite into the Lake, to find another Golden Shore or *Gold-Coast*, as they call'd it.

To give a particular Account of this wild Undertaking, would be too long, nor would the Rogues give much Account of it themselves; only, in short, that they found a Sand pretty rich in Gold, work'd upon it Five Days, indefatigably, and got a good deal, sufficient, had they brought it back, to have tempted the rest to have gone all away to the same Place: But at the End of Five Days, some were for returning, and others for staying longer, till the Majority prevailed to come back, representing to the rest, that their Friends would be gone, and they should be left to starve in that wild Country, and should never get home; so they all got into the Canoe again, but quarrelled when they were in, and that, to such an unreasonable Height, that, in short, they fought, over-set the Boat, lost all their Gold and their Arms, except three Muskets which were lashed under the Thouts or Benches of the Canoe, spoiled their Ammunition and Provision, and drowned one of their Company; so they came home to the rest

rest by weeping Cross, wet and almost famished.

This was a Balk to them, you may be sure, and put a Damp to their new Projects; and yet, Six of the same Men were so bold afterwards, as to demand to be dismiss'd, and a Canoe given them, and they would go back, they said, to the Golden Lake, where, they did not doubt, they should load the Canoe with Gold; and if they found, when they came back, we were gone, they would find their Way back thro' the Mountains, and go to the rich *Spaniard*, who, they did not doubt, would get them License to go back to *Europe* with the Galleons, and, perhaps, they said, they might be in *England* before us.

But the Captain quelled this Mutiny, tho' there were Four or Five more come into it, and shewing them the Agreement they had made with me, their Commander; the Obligation they were under, and the Madness of their other Proposal, prevailed with them to go forward with the rest, and pursue the Voyage, which he now represented to be very easy, being, *as it were*, all the Way down Hill, that is to say, with the Stream; for they all knew the River they were in must go to the Sea, and that, in or near, the Latitude which they knew the Ship had appointed to wait for them. However, to soften them a little, and, in some Measure, to please them, he promised, that, if they met with any Success in the Search after Gold, in the River they were in, as he did not question but they should, he would consent to any reasonable Stop that they

they should propose, not exceeding Five Days in a Place, and the Places to be not less than Five Leagues off from one another.

Upon these Terms they consented, and all embarked and came away, tho' extremely mortified for the loss of one of their Companions, who was a brave stout Fellow, very well beloved by all the Company, but there was no Remedy; so they came on in Five Canoes, and with a good Stock of Provisions, such as it was, (*viz.*) good fresh Beef cured in the Sun, and Fifteen *Peruvian* Sheep alive, for when they got into the Country, between the Two Rivers, they found it easy to catch those Creatures, who, before that, would not come near them.

And now they came down the River apace, till they came to another Golden Shore, where, finding some Quantity of Gold, they claim'd their Captain's Promise, and accordingly, they went all on Shore to work, and pretty good Success they had, picking up, from among the Sands, a considerable Quantity of Gold; and having stay'd Four of the Five Days, they found they had cleared the Place, which was not of a long Extent, and so they chearfully came on.

They came on now for Eleven Days together very willingly, but then found the Channel of the River divided itself, and one went away to the left, and the other to the right; they could not judge which was the best to take; but not questioning, but that they would meet again soon, they took the Southmost Channel, as being most direct in their  
Latitude;



Latitude ; and thus they proceeded for Three or Four Days more, when they were oblig'd to put into the Mouth of a little River, that fell into the other, and made a good Harbour for their little Fleet.

Here, I say, they were obliged to put in for want of Provisions, for they had eat up all their *Guinacoes*, and their Two tame Bulls too, the last of which, they soon repented, as you will see presently.

After they had been a Hunting, and shot a couple of Deer and a Cow, with a Kind of a Hare, as big as an *English* Fox, they set forward again very merry, and the more, because they had another little Piece of a Gold Coast, where, for Two Days, they had very good Luck again ; but judge how they were surprized, and in what a Consternation they were, when coming down farther the same River, they heard a terrible Noise in the River, as of a mighty Cataract, or Water-fall, which increased as they came forward, till it grew so loud, that they could not hear themselves speak, much less hear one another.

As they approached, it was the more frightful ; so at length, lest they should be hurried into it before they were aware, they went all on Shore, doing all by Signs and dumb Postures, for it was impossible to hear any Sound.

Notwithstanding this, it was near Six Miles to the Place, which, when they perceived, some of them went back to bring on the Boats, and so brought them as near the Place as they durst, and run them on Shore into a  
little

little hollow Part of the Bank, just big enough to hold them: When they had thus secured the Boats, they went to view the Water-fall; but, how was they astonished? when they found, that there were not One, but Five Water-falls, at the Distance of about Two Miles from one another, some more, some less, that the Water fell a prodigious Height; so that it was impossible any Boat could bear to launch down the Cataract and not be dashed in Pieces.

They now saw there was no Remedy, but that they must lose the Benefit of their Five Canoes, which had been so comfortable to them, and by which, they had come above Four Hundred Miles in a little Time, with Safety and Pleasure.

These Cataracts made the River perfectly useless to them for above Twenty Miles, and it was impossible to drag their Canoes that Length over Land; so in short, they unloaded them, and for their own Satisfaction, they turned one, the biggest, of them a-drift, and let it go to the first Cataract, placing themselves so beyond, that they might see it come down, which they did, and had the Pleasure of seeing it dashed in Pieces on the Rocks below.

Well, there was no Remedy, but they must leave their Boats behind them; and now, as I have said, they had Time to repent killing their Two tame Bulls, who would have done them good Service; but it was too late to look back upon what was done and over, so many Days before; they had now no Remedy,

dy, if they would go forward, but to take up their Baggage upon their Shoulders, and walk on Foot; the only Help they had, was, that they had gotten Five *Guinasoes* more, which, tho' they were hungry, and would fain have eaten, yet, as they carried, at least, Five Hundred Weight of their Luggage, they chose to fast and walk, rather than feast and work; so they went on as well as they could, till they got past these Falls, which, tho' not above Twenty Miles, cost them Five Days Labour.

Then they encamped again to refresh themselves, and consider of what was next to be done: They were thus long upon this short Journey for many Reasons.

1. Because they were obliged to employ the best Part of Two Days in Hunting for their Food, in which Time, Five of them swimming over the River to shoot at some black Cattle, extremely fatigued themselves in pursuing them, but did, however, shoot Five Cows and Bulls; but then it was at such a Distance, that it was more Pains to drag the Flesh along to the River's Side, than it was worth to have it, only, that they were, indeed hunger-starved, and must have it.

2. They found still some little Quantity of Gold in the Water, that is to say, below the Falls, where the Water, after, by falling with such Force, it had made a Pit or Hole of a vast Depth, as is usual at a Mill-Tail, had thrown up a Shoal again, at, perhaps, a Mile Distance, there they took up some Gold,  
whenever

whenever the Water was low enough to come to the Shoal.

3. The Weight of their Baggage made them travel heavy, and seldom above Five or Six Miles a Day.

Being now come to the open River, they thought of building more Floats, but they were discouraged from this Consideration; That they did not know, but in few Days March, there might be more Water-falls, and then all their Labour would be lost; so they took up their Tent, and began to travel again.

But here, as they kept the River close on Board, as the Seamen call it, they were at a full Stop, by the coming in of another River from the S. W. which, when it joined, the River they went along by, was above a Quarter of a Mile broad, and how to get over it they knew not; they sent Two Men up the additional River some Length, and he brought Word, that it was, indeed, narrower by much, but no where fordable, but deep and rapid.

At the same Time, they sent Two more nimble Fellows down the Coast of the great River, to see if there were no more Water-falls, who brought them Word, there were none for Sixty Miles.

While they lay here, at the Point of the Influx, expecting the Return of their Scouts, they used what Diligence they could in getting Provisions; and among the rest, they killed Three Cows and a Bull on the other Side of the biggest River; but not knowing how to bring them over, they concluded to go over, as



many as could swim, which was the better Half of them, and sit down by it, and roast and broil upon the Spot, as much as they could eat, and then bring over as much as they could for their Fellows.

They got Boughs of Trees, and bound them together, then wrapt the Meat in the Hides, and laid it on the Wood, and made a Hundred little Contrivances to get it over; so that on one Side or other, they got all the Meat eaten or brought over: what they got on their own Side the River, they made better shift with.

On the Return of their Scouts, they found there was no Remedy, but to build some new Vessels of one Kind or another, to take in their Baggage and Provision which they did, after the Manner of their first Floats; for they found no Trees big enough to make Canoes; when therefore, they had made one great Float, they resolved to make Two small Boats like Yauls or Skiffs, with which they might tow their large Float or Barge; and as this they might do with small Stuff, so they found Means to line them within and without with the Bulls Hides, and that, so dextrously joined, and lapped or rolled one over another, that no Water came thro', or but very little.

With these Two Boats they ferried over the small Rivers with Ease, each Boat carrying Six Men, besides Two to row; and when they were over the small Rivers, the Two Boats served to tow their great Punt or Barge close by the Shore.

The

The greatest Difficulty was for Tow-Lines to draw the Boats by, and that they supplied, by twisting a strong tough Kind of Flag or Rush, which they found in the River, of which, with great Application, they made a Kind of Rope-yarn, and then twisting it again, made it very strong.

This was the Voiture with which they carried themselves down quite to the Sea, and one of these Boats it was, that we spied, *as above*, coming to us in the Bay.

They had yet above Four Hundred and Fifty Miles to the Sea, nor could they at any Time tell or guess how far off it might be. They went on more or less every Day, but 'twas but slowly, and not without great Labour, both of Rowing and Towing: Their Provisions also cost them much Labour, and it was a great deal of Difficulty, that they were obliged, first to hunt and kill it, and then to bring it to the Camp, which was always close to the River's Side.

After they had travelled thus some Time, following the Course of the River, behold they came to a Place, where, of a sudden, they could see no farther Bank of the River, but it looked all Water like the Sea; they could not imagine what it must be, so, the next Day, they rowed towards it with one of their little Boats, when they were surprized, to find that it was the Northern Branch of the River, which they had seen go off before they came at the Water-falls, which River being now increased with many other great Waters, was now so great, that the Mouth of it might

be said to be, Four or Five Miles over, and rather received this River, which they were on, into it, than ran into this; but after this, it contracted itself again, tho' still it was to be supposed near a Mile and Half over.

They were not glad of this Conjunction of the Waters at all, because the great Water being thus joined, they found the Stream, or Current, more violent, and the Water, upon the least Stirring of the Wind, much more turbulent than it was before; and, as their great Float drew but little Water, and swam flat upon the Surface, she was ready to founder upon every Occasion: This obliged them, almost every Night, to seek for some little Cove or Creek to run her into, as into a Harbour to preserve her; for if the Wind blew off Shore, they had enough to do to keep her from driving off, if it blew off from the River, tho' it were, otherwise, little Wind enough, yet it made a Rippling or Chopping of the Waves, that they had much Difficulty to keep it from filling her.

All the Country, on the Side of this River, was a little higher Ground than ordinary, which was its Security from Land-Floods, and their Security too; for sometimes the River was seen to rise, and that so as to overflow a great Extent of Land on the other Side. Hence, perhaps, the other Side might be esteemed the most fruitful, and, perhaps, might be the better Land, if it had but Half of the Art and Industry of an *European* Nation to assist the natural Fertility of the Soil, by keeping the Water in its Bounds, banking and  
fencing

fencing the Meadows from the Inundations, and Freshes, which were frequently sent down from the *Andes*, and from the Country adjoining.

But as it now was, those Lower Lands lay; great Part of the Year, under Water; whether it was the better or the worse for the Soil, that no Judgment can be made of, till some People come to settle there, to whom it shall be worth while to make Experiments of that Kind.

This Part of the Country, they were now in, resembled, as they hinted, the County of *Dorsetshire*, and the Downs about *Salisbury*, only, not lying so high from the Surface of the Water, and the Soil being a good fruitful dark Mould, not a chalky solid Rock, as in the County about *Salisbury*, &c.

Here they found a greater Quantity of Deer than they had seen in all their Journey, which they often had the good Luck to kill for their Supply of Food, the Creatures not being so shy and wild, as they had found farther within the Country.

It may be noted here, and 'tis very observable, that in all this Journey, I do not learn, that they saw either Wolf or Fox, Bear or Lyon, or, indeed, any other ravenous Creature, which they had the least Reason to be shy or afraid of, or which, indeed, were frightful to the Deer; and this, perhaps, may be the Reason, why the Number of those Creatures is so great, which, as I have said, is greater there than at other Places.



After they had feasted themselves here, as above, for some Days, they resolved to begin their New Kind of Navigation, and see what they could make of it; but they went very heavily along, and every now and then, *as I have said above*, the Water was too rough for them, and they were fain to put into Harbour, and sometimes lie Two or Three Days: However, they plyed their Time as well as they could, and sometimes the Current setting over to their Side, and running strong by the Shore, they would go at a great Rate, insomuch, that one Time, they said, they went above Thirty Miles in a Day, having, besides the Current, a little Gale of Wind right a Stern.

They reckoned, that they went near Two Hundred Miles in this Manner, for they made the best of it; and at the End of this Two Hundred Miles, it was, by their Reckoning, that our Five Men, who travelled into the Country so far, found them, when they saw the Hat swimming down the Stream; which Hat, it seems, one of them let fall overboard in the Night.

They had, I say, travelled thus far with great Difficulty, the River being so large; But, as they observed it growing larger and larger, the farther they went, so, they said, they did not doubt, but that, in a little more, they should come to the Sea.

They also observed, that now, as they found the Waters larger, and the Rivers wider, they killed more Fowls than formerly, and particularly, more of the Duck-foot Kind,

Kind, tho' they could not perceive any Sea-Fowls, or such as they had been used to. They saw a great many wild Swans, and some Geese, as also Duck, and Mallard, and Teal; and these, I say, increased as they drew nearer the Sea.

They could give very little Account of the Fish which the Rivers produced, tho' they sometimes caught a few in the smaller River; but, as they had neither Fishing-hook or Nets, which was the only Omission, in my fitting them out, they had no Opportunity to furnish themselves.

They had, likewise, no Salt, neither was it possible to furnish them with Salt, so they cured their Meat in the Sun, and seasoned it with that excellent Sauce called Hunger.

The Account they gave, of discovering our Five Men, was thus, in short; They had been for Two Days, pretty successful in their Navigation, as I have described it; but were obliged to stop, and put in at the Mouth of a little River, which made them a good Harbour; the Reason of their Stay was, they had no Victuals, so by consent, they all went a hunting, and at Night, having shot Two *Guinacoes* and a Deer, they came to Supper together in their great Tent; and having fed heartily, you may suppose, on such good Provisions, they began to be merry, and the Captain and Officers, having a little Store left, tho' not much, they pulled out their Bottles, and drank every one a Dram to their

good Voyage, and to the merry Meeting of their Ships, and gave every Man a Sup.

But their Mirth was increased beyond expressing, when Two of the Men, who were without the Tent-Door, cried out, it lightened; one said, he saw the Flash, he was sure, and the other said, he thought he saw it too; but, as it happened, their Backs were towards the *E.* so that they did not see the Occasion.

This Lightning was certainly the first Flash of one of our Five Mens Rockets, or the Breaking of it, and the Stars that were at the End of it, up in the Air.

When the Captain heard the Men say it light'ned, he jumped off of his Seat, and called aloud to them, to tell which Way; but they foolishly replied, to the *N. W.* which was the Way their Faces were, when they saw it; but the Word was no sooner spoken, but the Two Fellows, fell a Hollowing and Roaring, as if they were distracted, and said, they saw a Rocket rise up in the Air to the *Eastward.*

So nimble were the Men, at this Word, that they were all out of the Tent in a Moment, and saw the last Bounce or Flash of the Rocket with the Stars, which spreading themselves in the Air, shone with the usual bright Light, that 'tis known those Things give.

This made them all set up a Shout of Joy, as if they imagined their Fellows, who were yet many Miles from them, should hear them; but the Captain and Officers, who knew what they were to do on this Occasion, ran to their  
Bag-

Baggage, and took out their own Rockets and other Materials, and prepared to answer the Signal.

They were on a low Ground, but at less than a Mile's Distance, the Land went ascending up to a round Crown or Knowl pretty high; away they ran thither, and set up a Frame in an instant: But, as they were making these Preparations, behold, to confirm their News, they saw a Third Rocket rise up in the Air, in the same Place as before.

It was near an Hour from the first Flash, as they called it, before they could get all Things ready; but then they fired Two Rockets from the adjoining Hill, soon after one another, and after that, at about Ten Minutes Distance of Time, a third, which was just as by Agreement, and was perfectly understood, the Rockets performing very well.

Upon this, they saw another single Rocket rise up, which was to let them know, that their former was seen and understood.

This was, you will conclude, a very joyful Night; and the next Morning, they went all Hands to work at the Boats, getting out of the Creek early, and made the best of their Way; however, with all they could do, they could not go above Twelve Miles that Day, for, the Current setting over to the other Shore, had left them, and in some Places, they would rather have an eddy Stream against them; and this discouraged them a little, but depending that they were near their Port, and that their Friends were  
not



not far off, they were very chearful. At Night they looked out again for Rockets, which failed not to rejoyce their Hearts again; and, with this Addition, that it appeared, their Friends were not above Four or Five Miles off; they answered the Rockets punctually, and proceeding early the next Day, they met in the Morning, joyfully enough, as has been said.

We were overjoyed at meeting, you may be sure; but to see the pitiful Boat, or *Periagua*, they came on Board in, a little surprized us, for, indeed, it was a Wonder they should be able to make it swim under them, especially when they came out into the open Sea.

As soon as we had the Boat on Board, we hal'd it up into the Ship for a Relick, and taking Two of the Men with us, we Mann'd out all our Ships Boats to go and fetch the rest, for they were, as these Men told us, about Seventeen Miles up the River still, and could not come any farther, their Boats being not able to bring them along, and the River growing very broad and dangerous. The Eldest of my Midshipmen came in this First Boat, but the Captain and the other staid with the Men, who were very unruly, and ever and anon quarrelling and wrangling about their Wealth, which, indeed, was very considerable; but they were above twice as far up the River as the Men told us, having halted after the Boat left them.

When our Boats came to them, and took them in, I ordered they should be set on Shore, and their Tents put up on the Shore,  
 'till

'till I had settled Matters a little with them, having had an Account how Mutinous and Fractious they had been; and I made them all stay there 'till I had fully adjusted every thing with them about their Treasure, which, indeed, was so much, that they scarce knew how to govern themselves under the Thought of it.

Here I proposed Conditions to them at first, That all the Gold should be shared before they went on Board, and that it should be put on Board the Ship, as Goods for every Man's single Account; that I would give them Bills of Lading for it, and I offered to swear to them, to deliver it into every Man's Possession, separately, at the First Port we should come to an Anchor at in *England*, or *France*; and that, at that said Port, they should every Man have the One hundred Pounds I had promised them, as above, for the undertaking this Journey, delivered to them in Money, that is to say, In *Gold-Dust*; and that they alone, should have full Liberty to go on Shore with it, and go whither they would, no Man whatever, but themselves, being allowed to set Foot on Shore in the same Place, *Distress excepted*. This they insisted on, because they had done some Things, which, if I would, I might have pursued some of them, for perhaps, to the Gallows; but that I promised to forgive them, and to enquire no more after it.

In a Word, There had been a Scuffle among 'em, in which one of their Canoes was overset, *as was said*, and one of their Number drowned,

at

at the same Time when they lost a great Part of their Gold; and some were thought to have done it maliciously too.

However, as I had no Occasion to trouble them on that Score, not being upon the Spot when it was done; so having made this Capitulation with them, I performed it punctually, and set them all on Shore, with their Wealth, in the River of *Garonne* in *France*; Their Gold, their One hundred Pounds Reward for their Journey; their Wages, and their Share of Pearl, and other Advantages, made them very rich; for their Cargo, when cast up on Shore, might, perhaps, amount to about Four hundred Pounds a Man: How they disposed of themselves, or their Money, I never gave myself the Trouble to enquire, and, if I had, 'tis none of my Business to give an Account of it here.

We dismissed also, near Four-score more of our Men, afterwards, in a little Creek, which was at their own Request; for most of them having been of the *Madagascar* Men, and, by Consequence, Pyrates, they were willing to be easy, and I was as willing to make them so, and, therefore, cleared with as many of them as desired it. But I return to our Ship.

Having thus made a long Capitulation with our Travellers, I took them all on Board, and had Leisure enough to have a long Narration from them of their Voyage, and from which Account, I take the Liberty to recommend that Part of *America*, as the best, and most advantageous Part of the whole Globe  
for

for an *English* Colony, the Climate, the Soil, and, above all, the easy Communication with the Mountains of *Chili*, recommending it beyond any Place that I ever saw, or read of, as I shall farther make appear by itself.

We had nothing now to do, but to make the best of our Way for *England*, and setting Sail from the Mouth of the River *Camerones*, so the *Spaniards* call it, the Eighteenth of *January* in which, we had a more difficult and unpleasant Voyage, than in any other Part of our Way, chiefly because, being a rich Ship, and not knowing how Affairs stood in *Europe*, I kept to the Northward; as far as the Banks of *Newfoundland*, steering thence to the Coast of *Galitia*, where we touch'd, as above; after which, we went through the Channel, and arrived safe in *Dunkirk-Road*, the Twelfth of *April*; and from thence gave private Notice of our good Fortune to our Merchants and Owners; Two of whom came over to us, and received at our Hands, such a Treasure, as gave them Reason to be very well satisfied with their Adventure: But, to my great Grief, my particular Friend, the Merchant, who put us upon all the Curiosity, and all the Discovery you have heard of, was dead before our Return; which, if it had not happened, this New Scheme of a Trade round the World, had, perhaps, never been made Publick, till it had been put in Practice, by a Set of Merchants designed to be concerned in it, from the *New Austrian Netherlands*.



